



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

51

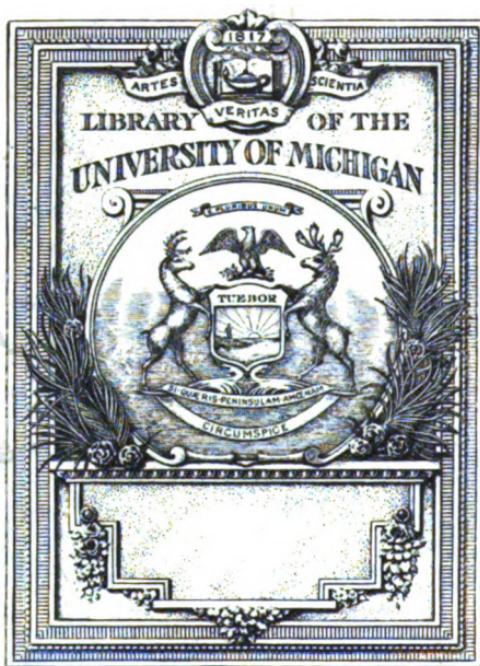
2105

11/107-



Robert Drummond.

DS
7
.B43
1788
V.1



**NON
CIRCULATING**

D S
7
B43
1788
V. 1

T R A V E L S
FROM
S T. P E T E R S B U R G H
I N
R U S S I A,
TO
V A R I O U S P A R T S
O F
A S I A.

I L L U S T R A T E D W I T H M A P S.

I N T W O V O L U M E S.

B Y J O H N B E L L,
O F A N T E R M O N Y.

V O L U M E F I R S T.

E D I N B U R G H :
P R I N T E D F O R W I L L I A M C R E E C H ,
A N D S O L D B Y
G E O . R O B I N S O N S A N D C O . L O N D O N .

M D C C L X X X V I I I .

TO THE
GOVERNOUR,
COURT OF ASSISTANTS,
AND FREEMEN,
OF THE
RUSSIA COMPANY,
AND TO THE
BRITISH FACTORIES
IN RUSSIA,
THE FOLLOWING
RELATION OF TRAVELS, &c.

Are respectfully inscribed,
As a testimony of gratitude,
For the favours received,
From many of them,
By their most obedient,
And very-humble servant,

ANTERMONY, }
Oct. 1. 1762. }

THE AUTHOR.

Lebraian
Edwards
4-28-45
5-859

T H E

P R E F A C E.

IN my youth I had a strong desire of seeing foreign parts ; to satisfy which inclination, after having obtained, from some persons of worth, commendatory letters to Dr Arefkine, chief physician and privy-counsellor to the Czar Peter the First, I embarked at London, in the month of July 1714, on board the Prosperity of Ramsgate, Captain Emerson, for St Petersburgh. On my arrival there, I was received by Dr Arefkine in a very friendly manner ; to whom I communicated my intentions

intentions of seeking an opportunity of visiting some parts of Asia, at least those parts which border on Russia. Such an opportunity soon presented itself, on occasion of an embassy, then preparing, from his Czarish Majesty to the Sophy of Persia.

Artemy Petrovich Valenky, a gentleman of a family of distinction, and a Captain of the guards, was appointed ambassador by his Majesty. Upon his nomination, he applied to Dr Arefskine to recommend a person who had some knowledge in physic and surgery, to go in his suite in the embassy. As I had employed some part of my time in those studies, the Doctor recommended me; which he did in so cordial a manner, as produced to me, from the ambassador many marks of friendship and regard, which subsisted not only during the journey, but also continued; from that time, to the end of his days. The Doctor, at the same time, recommended me to the college of foreign affairs at St Peterburgh,
by

P R E F A C E.

by whom I was engaged in the service of Peter the First.

Having acquainted the reader with the manner of my entering on the travels, which are the principal subject of the following sheets, I shall take the liberty to say, that I have, through the whole, given the observations, which then appeared to me worth remarking, without attempting to embellish them, by taking any of the liberties of exaggeration, or invention, frequently imputed to travellers.

I took notes of the subject of the following treatise, by way of diary, from time to time, during the course of my travels, intending nothing further, at that time, than to keep them as helps to my memory, that I might, as occasion offered, communicate, in conversation with my friends, what I had observed worth remarking, and that I might be capable of giving information to others, who might be desirous of it, on their being to make the same journeys.

About

M^r P R E F A C E.

About four years ago, spending some days at the house of a Right Honourable and most honoured friend, the subject of my travels took up a great part of our conversation ; during which, upon his inquiring occasionally, whether I had taken any notes of the places, &c. through which I had passed in my several journeys ? and, upon my answering in the affirmative, he was pleased to take some pains to engage me to promise that I would collect my notes and observations, and form them into journals, as complete as the time elapsed would admit, and communicate them to the world.

It was not without reluctance that I set about this work, which, had I thought it worth the public's acceptance and perusal, I would have done long ago. Such as it is, I now offer it to them ; and flatter myself, (with hopes at least), that the plainness of stile in which it is written will be of no prejudice to it with candid readers, who may find in it some things new, and
of

of which they would choose to be informed.

In regard to the translation of Mr De Lange's Journal, I have given it for two reasons : First, because it continues the negotiation begun by Mr De Ismayloff, in the course of which Mr De Lange furnishes the reader with a distinct detail of the manner of transacting affairs with the ministers of state, of their chicaneries, &c. at the court of Pekin. Secondly, because I do not apprehend it hath ever appeared in the English language ; at least, have made what inquiries I could, to find if it had been translated, which have been all fruitless.

As I well knew the worthiness and integrity of Mr De Lange, and I am fully persuaded that his Journal was genuine, tho' perhaps obtained surreptitiously by the editor, I have closed the translation with the end of Mr De Lange's Journal, on his arrival at Selinginsky on the frontiers of Siberia ; having omitted an addition to it,

b

made

* P R E F A C E.

made by the editor, of the trade and monies of China ; concerning which, the editor, when he enters upon it, acquaints the reader that he had not the means necessary for sufficient information. For the rest, the translation is just, as may be seen by comparing it with the original.

Auchtermony, }
Oct. 1. 1762. }

JOHN BELL.

C O N T E N T S.

VOLUME FIRST.

A Journey from St Petersburgh in Russia,
to Ispahan in Persia Page xv

C H A P. I.

From St Petersburgh to Cazan p. 1

C H A P. II.

*Occurrences during our stay at Cazan ; our
journey thence to Astrachan* p. 19

C H A P. III.

*Occurrences during our stay at Astrachan ;
our journey thence to Shamachy* p. 40

C H A P.

C H A P. IV.

*Occurrences during our stay at Shamachy ;
our journey thence to Tauris* p. 69

C H A P. V.

*Occurrences during our stay at Tauris ; our
journey thence to Ispahan* p. 87

C H A P. VI.

Occurrences during our stay at Ispahan
p. 113

C H A P. VII.

*From Ispahan to Shamachy ; occurrences du-
ring our stay there* p. 151

C H A P. VIII.

From Shamachy to St Petersburgh p. 167

A

A Journey from St Peterburgh in Russia,
to Pekin in China p. 183

C H A P. I.

From St Peterburgh to Tobolsky, the Ca-
pital of Siberia p. 185

C H A P. II.

Occurrences at Tobolsky; observations on the
Kalmucks, &c. and journey continued to
Tomsky p. 220

C H A P. III.

Occurrences at Tomsky; observations on the
Tzulim Tartars, &c. and journey conti-
nued to Elimsky p. 252

C H A P. IV.

Observations on Iakutsky and Kamtzatsky,
&c.; journey continued to Irkutsky; and
occurrences there p. 233

C H A P.

C H A P. V.

*From Irkutsky, cross the Lake Baykall, to
Selinginsky; some account of the Kutuch-
tu, &c.* p. 314

C H A P. VI.

*Occurrences at Selinginsky; several parties
of hunting; and journey continued to Sa-
ratzyn, the boundary between the Russian
and Chinese territories* p. 348

C H A P. VII.

*From passing the Saratzyn, and entering the
Chinese territories, to our arrival at the
wall of China* p. 380

C H A P. VIII.

*From the wall of China to Pekin; our entry
into that city* p. 416

A
J O U R N E Y
F R O M
S T . P E T E R S B U R G H
I N R U S S I A ,
T O
I S P A H A N
I N P E R S I A .
W I T H A N E M B A S S Y
F R O M H I S I M P E R I A L M A J E S T Y ,
P E T E R T H E F I R S T ,
T O T H E
S O P H Y O F P E R S I A ,
S H A C H H U S S E I N ,
I N T H E Y E A R M D C C X V .

Names of the principal persons who composed the train of the Ambassador

Artemii Petrovich Valenky, viz.

Secretary,

Gregory Christopher Venigerkind.

Captain Engineer,

Jaques de Villette.

Gentlemen of the Embassy,

Matphe Parfilich Kartzoff,

Adrian Ivanovich Lopuchin,

The Author of this Journal.

Priest,

Hylarion, a Monk.

Interpreters,

Vassile Kurdeffsky,

Alexie Tulkatzoff,

Demetry Petritz.

Clerks or Writers,

Vassile Shadayoff,

Alexie Buchtaryoff.

With many others, viz. a band of music, consisting of trumpets, kettle-drums, violins, hautboys, &c. carpenters, smiths, taylors, valets, and footmen; amounting in all to above one hundred persons; besides a troop of twenty-five dragoons for our escort, from Istrachan to Isfahan.





A

J O U R N E Y
F R O M
S t P E T E R S B U R G H
T O
I S P A H A N.

C H A P. I.

From St Peterburgh to Casan.

ON the fifteenth of July 1715, I set out from St Petersburgh, in company with Messieurs Venigerkind, De Villette, and Kurdeffsky. That city, which has since grown so considerable, was then in its infancy, having been founded, ten or eleven years before, by that truly great

VOL. I. A man

A JOURNEY

man Peter the first, to whom no undertaking seemed difficult.

St Petersburgh is situated in sixty degrees north latitude, partly on the continent of Ingria and Carelia, and partly on different islands formed by the river Neva, which discharges itself, by four channels, into the Gulf of Finland, a little below the city. It is defended by a strong castle, built with stone and brick, inaccessible to ships of force, there being but eight feet water on the bar. As the Czar had determined to form a city all at once, and not to trust to time for the growth of a place which he had chosen for the seat of government, he assembled inhabitants from every province of his empire, and allured strangers from most parts of Europe; so that the place was even well peopled, and had not the appearance of a city so lately founded.

The adjacent country is generally covered with woods, consisting of various kinds of pines, birch, alder, aspine, and other trees natural to the northern climates.

To

To the southward, especially along the shore towards Peterhoff, the country in summer is very pleasant, with country-seats, corn-fields, and meadows interspersed.

The river Neva falls out of the Ladoga Lake at Slusselburgh, a strong castle, about sixty verst above St Petersburgh. It is a noble stream of clear, wholesome water, with this peculiar quality, that it is seldom muddy. It contains a great variety of excellent fish, which supply the market all the year, and is navigable to the Ladoga by flat-bottomed vessels.

The woods on each side are stored with game; such as hares, which are white as snow in winter, and turn brown in summer; wild-deer, bears, and wolves; the last are so bold that I have known them, in the night-time, carry off a dog from a man's foot, in crossing the river on the ice. There are also elks about the Lake of Ladoga. As for wild-fowl, few places can boast of greater variety. The chief are these;

these; the urhaan, called in French *coq limoge*; this bird is black, with beautiful red streaks about its head and eyes. The cock is about the size of a turkey; the hen is less, and of a brown colour. The heath-cock, in French *coq de bruiere*, of the same colour and marks as the former, but not so large. The partridge, which the French call *gulinot*. These three kinds perch on trees; and in winter feed on fir-tops, and on crane-berries, which they scrape from under the snow. There is also found here the common English partridge; it is however but rare. The tarmachan, a bird well known in the northern parts of England, and in Scotland, are here in plenty.

As soon as the ice goes off in the spring, vast flocks of water-fowl come hither from the Caspian Sea, and other southern regions, to hatch. These consist of swans, geese, a variety of wild ducks, teal, &c.

Snipes and wood-cocks breed here, many of which are catched by the Russians, who are excellent fishers and sportsmen.

From

From St Petersburg we directed our course along the western bank of the Neva, till we came to the brick-works. The weather being very hot, we halted here a few hours, and in the evening pursued our journey to a small river which falls into the Neva, about thirty verft above St Petersburgh. At this place we let our horses go to grafs, and lay in our waggons till the morning ; but were much molested by the gnats and muskitos.

Next morning we continued our jour-
ney, and passed a village called Ishora,
where the inhabitants speak a language,
and wear a dress different from the Russian,
though they profess the same Greek reli-
gion. It is probable they are the descen-
dants of a colony formerly brought hither
from some of the provinces of Livonia.

Next day we came to the Volchova, a
great river issuing from a lake called Ilmen,
not far distant from the city of Novogorod,
which discharges itself into the Ladoga.
Here we left our horses, and, putting our
waggons

waggons and carriages on board barques, went up the river, using oars or sails, by turns, as necessity obliged us. The banks of the Volchova are covered with many villages, and fruitful corn-fields, intermixed with natural woods. We found as we went along plenty of fish and country provisions.

The 19th, we arrived at Novogorod Velikoi, or the Great Novogorod, so called to distinguish it from many lesser towns of the same name. This city stands about two hundred verft south-east from Petersburgh. The Volchova runs through the middle of it, over which there is a wooden bridge defended by a fortress. There are many well built churches in the town, and a great number of monasteries in the neighbourhood, pleasantly situated, which form a very agreeable prospect. It was formerly a place of great note, but is now much decayed. Here is an archbishop who enjoys a very considerable revenue.

July

TO ISPAHAN.

7

July 22d, having put our carriages on board another barque, we sailed up the river to the Lake Ilmen ; and, leaving it on our right hand, entered a small river called Msta, and at night came to Brunitz, a large village, thirty verst from Novogorod. Here we discharged our boats ; and, having procured horses, we proceeded next morning thirty verst to the village of Zaytzoff, from thence to Krasnyftanki, and then to Krestitsky, where we changed horses, with which we travelled to Yashilbitza. Here begin the Valday-hills, which run to a great distance from east to west, but are only about twenty or thirty verst broad. They are mostly covered with wood. We came next to the town of Valday ; this place is pleasantly situated at the foot of the hills, adjoining to a large lake of the same name, in the middle of which is an island, whereon stands a monastery. The country in the neighbourhood is hilly, but not mountainous, exhibiting a beautiful variety of plain and rising grounds.

The

5 A JOURNEY

The next stage is Zimogory, and after that Vishnoy-volotzoke. Here is a canal of considerable extent, cut by Peter the First, which opens a communication by water from St Petersburgh to all the places on the Volga, and many other parts of Russia, and proves a great encouragement to trade, and very advantageous to the merchant, in such extensive tracts of land.

Next day we came to Torshoak, a small town.

The 29th, we arrived at Tweer, a populous and trading town, defended by a castle; it is the capital of a province, and a bishop's seat. It derives its name from a rivulet in the neighbourhood, called Tweertza, and stands on the banks of the famous river Volga.

The Volga, known formerly by the name of Rha, has its source not far to the westward of Tweer. At a small distance from the source of the Volga, two other noble rivers take their rise; the Dnieper, or Borysthenes, which run into the Black Sea

Sea at Ozakof, and the Duina, which falls into the Baltic at Riga.

The Volga, after visiting in its course to the south-east many fruitful countries, discharges itself into the Caspian Sea, about sixty verst below Astrachan ; and, in all this long course, there is not a single cataract to interrupt the navigation. As to fish, no river in the world can afford greater variety, better of their kind, nor in larger quantities.

Here we tasted the sterlett, a fish much and generally esteemed ; it is of the sturgeon kind, but seldom grows above thirty inches long. It is found in other rivers of Russia ; but the Volga produces the best and in greatest plenty. The caviare, or spawn, is very good to eat raw, after being cleaned and dressed. I never could find a fisherman who had seen their fry.

The same day, having changed horses, we proceeded on our journey to Gorodna, a large village, on the west bank of the Volga. From this place is seen a charm-

ing landscape, containing a full view of the windings of that river.

From hence, after passing many villages, we came to Kleen, a pretty large town, and the last stage to Mosco. The country between Kleen and Mosco is pleasant, having many tufts of wood, of unequal bigness, scattered among the corn-fields, that contribute to beautify the country, which had no great appearance of fertility.

About seven verft from Mosco we passed through a large village, called Fse-swatzky, inhabited by Christians of the Eastern church, named Georgians; their ancient country was Gurgistan, now one of the northerly provinces of Persia; they were driven from their native country by the persecution of the Persians; and, flying into Russia, they there found an hospitable reception, many of them being employed in the service of the Emperor.

From this place there is a view of the city of Moscow, and, at this distance, few cities in the world make a finer appearance;

TO ISPAHAN. II

ance ; for it stands on a rising ground, and contains many stately churches and monasteries, whose steeples and cupolas are generally covered either with copper gilt, or tin plates, which shine like gold and silver in the sun.

August 2d we arrived at the city of Mosco. I have omitted the names and distances of many inconsiderable places through which we passed ; let it suffice, that the distance between St Petersburgh and Mosco is about seven hundred and thirty verft ; and, although the hot weather detained us long on the road, in winter the journey is easily performed with sledges in three days.

On the 10th of August, my friends, Messieurs Lange and Girvan, arrived here in their way to China, on a message from the Czar to the Emperor of China : The first was a Swede, and the other a physician, from the county of Air in Scotland.

We stayed in Mosco about three weeks, having many things to prepare for so long a journey. This city, standing on an eminence,

nence, as was already observed, commands an extensive prospect of a fine plain country, adorned with woods and clumps of trees, monasteries, and gentlemen's seats; The river Mosco runs almost through it, which, emptying itself into the Volga, preserves a communication with all the southern parts of Russia, and even with Persia. From these advantages in situation, this place is very convenient for trade, which flourishes here to a considerable degree.

The city is fortified with a strong brick-wall, called Beligorod, having embrasures and a ditch. Within this is another wall, called Kitaygorod : This last incloses what is called the Crimlin, in which is the old imperial palace, compounded of a number of buildings, added to one another at different times. Some of the apartments are very spacious, particularly that called Granavitapallata, where audience was given to foreign ambassadors: Adjoining to the palace are many edifices, where were held
the

the courts of justice: Here also stands a lofty tower, wherein is hung the largest bell in the world, called Ivan Veleke, weighing about ten thousand poods; which, reckoning each pood at near thirty-six pounds English, will amount to about an hundred and sixty ton weight. Besides these, there is a cathedral church, and an arsenal, well furnished with brass cannon, mortars, and other warlike stores. Beyond the brick-walls, already mentioned, there is an earthen one, of great circumference, round the whole; and, without this, the suburbs also are very extensive.

The great plenty of provisions in this place surprised me not a little; I found here fruits of different kinds, which I did not expect, particularly excellent melons, and arboozes, or water-melons.

August the 21st, we shipped our baggage on board six small barques, adapted by their construction, either for sails or oars, as should be most convenient, and fell down the river. The ambassador only remained

at

at Mosco, waiting for some dispatches from court. In the evening we passed Koluminska, a village pleasantly situated on the south side of the Moseo river, near which is a large country-house, with gardens and orchards, belonging to the court.

October 3d, we came to Kolumna, a fortified town. Next day, the wind being favourable, we hoisted sail, and, after going about three verst, entered the river Oka, into which the Mosco falls and loses its name. The Oka rises in the Ukraine, and runs to the south-east; it contains a great quantity of water, and is navigable very far up the country.

The 9th, we arrived at Pereflave-resansky, a large town to the left, situated about a verst from the river Oka; it is the seat of an archbishop, and the country around is very fruitful in corn.

The 16th, we came to Kassimova, formerly the residence of a Tartar Prince; but the family is now converted to Christianity, and retains only the old name of

Kassi-

Kassimofsky Czarevitz. The place is at present inconsiderable. There are still here a few Mahometan Tartars, who are allowed the free exercise of their religion, and have a small oratory. I accompanied our interpreter to visit one of them, an old acquaintance of his: He was a very decent man; we saw a horse newly killed, which they intended to eat; they prefer this kind of food to beef, and invited us to share their repast, which we declined, pretending we had not time.

The 17th we left Kassimova, and the 21st arrived at Murum, a pretty large town, and a bishop's see. The country produces plenty of corn. About this place, there are a few idolatrous Tartars, who live in little dirty cottages, thinly scattered; they are a very simple and harmless people; how or when they settled here is not known.

The 22d we passed a large village, called Paulovo-perevoz, the property of Prince Tzerhaskoy. Its situation is on the south

side

side of the river : Here the banks are much higher than above this place.

We came the 23d to Nishna-novgorod, a great town, defended by a castle, standing on the high banks of the Oka, opposite to where it loses itself in the Volga, which now forms a mighty stream.

The following day we dined at the governor's, where I saw General Creutz, and several other Swedish officers, who had been taken prisoners at Poltava, and lived here at large.

The 25th we sailed from Nishna, and soon entered the Volga. The wind being northerly, we run along at a great rate; but, in the night, the river was suddenly filled with floating ice, which drove us on a sand bank, where we lay a-ground that night and all the next day; however, after much labour and fatigue, we got clear, although the floating ice still continued. At last the wind changed to the south, and the weather turned milder, which enabled us to pursue our voyage.

We

We next passed Vasily-gorod, and then Kosino-deminnsko, small towns, both on the right.

November 3d we came to Zaback-zar, a pretty large town, on the same hand.

In this country are caught the best and largest falcons in the world, much esteemed for their strength and beauty, particularly by the Turks and Persians, who purchase them very dear. The Russians take few young hawks from the nest, preferring the old ones, which they man very dexterously to fly at swan, goose, crane, or heron. The Tartars fly them at antelopes and hares. I have seen them take a wild duck out of the water, when nothing of her could be perceived but the bill, which she was obliged to put up for air. Some of them are as white as a dove. The manner of catching them is very simple: They erect a tall pole upon a hill, free from wood, on a bank of the river, near which is placed a day-net, under the net some small birds are fastened by a cord, which the

hawk-catcher pulls to make them flutter, on the appearance of the hawk, who observing his prey, first perches on the pole, and, when he stoops to seize the birds, the person, who is concealed by the bushes, draws the net and covers him.

The 4th, we passed Kay-gorod, and the 5th, Swiaffsky, the first on the left, and the other on the right hand. This evening we arrived before the town of Cazan, and hauled our boats into the mouth of a small river, from which the town has its name, called Cazanka. We intended to continue our voyage directly to Astrachan; but, before we had made the necessary preparations at Cazan, the winter set in, and, on the 6th of September, the Volga was filled with floating ice; this determined us to winter at that place; we therefore unloaded the boats, and came to the city, where we were hospitably received by the governour.

C H A P.

C H A P. II.

*Occurrences during our stay at Cazan ;
our journey thence to Astrachan.*

C AZAN is about seven hundred and thirty-five verst from Mosco by land, but much more by water : It is situated about five verst to the north of the Volga, on a high bank of the rivulet Cazanka, which is navigable from this place to the river. The town is strong by situation, and defended by a castle, fortified with walls of brick : Within the citadel are the cathedral church, the palaces of the archbishop and governor, and the apartments for the courts of justice : The town is fenced

fenced with a ditch and palisades. The suburbs are inhabited chiefly by mechanics, except a street or two possessed by Mahometan Tartars, the posterity of the ancient natives; they live very decently, have the free exercise of their religion, and many other privileges; some of them are very rich by the trade they carry on to Turkey, Persia, and other places.

Cazan was anciently the capital of a part of Tartary, and the seat of government, where the royal family resided. It was taken from the Tartars by Czar Ivan Vasiloviz, in the year fifteen hundred and fifty-two, in consequence whereof, an extensive country to the southward easily fell into his hands. The conquered Princes were converted to Christianity, and had lands assigned them in their own country, where the family still subsists.

The country adjacent is very pleasant and fertile, producing wheat, rye, barley, oats, and several kinds of pulse. The woods to the south and west consist of state-

ly

ly oaks, sufficient to supply all the navies in the world ; and from hence St Petersburgh is abundantly furnished with timber for all the purposes of ship-building, by an easy conveyance all the way by water. The woods to the north and east, which are of prodigious extent, consist of trees of all sorts.

In the spring, when the snow melts, the Volga overflows all the low grounds, sometimes to a great distance ; the consequence is the same with that produced in Egypt, by the inundations of the Nile ; for the mud, carried down by the stream, fertilizes the country to a great degree ; so that on the islands in the Volga, some whereof are very large, and overgrown with tall trees, I have found plenty of excellent asparagus.

Besides the sterlett there are plenty of sturgeon, and a fish about the size and near the shape of the largest salmon, which is very delicious, and, for the whiteness of its flesh, is called the white fish.

The

The woods afford abundance of game; and, in the spring, great numbers of water-fowl come hither to hatch from the Caspian Sea. At Cazan we found good beef, mutton, and tame poultry, and provisions of all kinds very reasonable.

There is here a considerable manufactory of Russia leather, the hides here being reckoned the best in the empire: Great quantities of this leather are exported to Leghorn, and other parts of Europe, and may be considered among the staple commodities of this country: The strong smell of this leather is acquired in the dressing, for instead of oil, common in other places, they use a kind of tar, extracted by fire from the bark of the birch-tree; which ingredient the Russes call deuggit, and which tree is here in greater abundance than in other parts of the world; and then they dye them with logwood.

Besides the idolatrous Tartars, formerly mentioned, there are two pretty numerous tribes called the Tzerimish and Tzoowash,
they

they speak a language quite different from the Mahometan Tartars in these parts, who use a corrupted dialect of the Arabic. The Mahometans likewise have some learning ; but the Tzerimish and Tzoowash have none. They have a tradition among them, that, in former times, they had a book on religion ; but, as no body could read it, a cow came and swallowed it. They pay great veneration to a bull. From whence they came is unknown ; but, from their complexion, it is probable they are from Asia. They live by agriculture, and seem to be an inoffensive kind of people. Their huntsmen offer in sacrifice, to some deity, the first creature they catch. Hence some curious men have imagined these people part of the ten tribes of the Jews, expelled by Shalmanezer. I advance this only as a conjecture, which every reader may follow, or not, as he pleases.

By accident I met with an Englishman at this place. He was by trade a carpenter,

ter, and had been in the Russian service; but, being suspected of deserting, he was condemned to banishment, to this country, for a certain time; and, notwithstanding that was elapsed, the poor man, deprived of all means of asserting his liberty, remained still in the same situation. He bought a Tzerimish wife, from her father, for six rubles, about thirty shillings Sterling. He brought her to visit me. She was a woman of a cheerful and open countenance, and dressed in the manner of her country; of which, for its singularity, I shall give a short description.

Her hair was plaited round her head, in many locks, but that on the back part longer than the rest, at the end of which was tied a tassel of red silk, and in the middle a small round brass bell. About her head was a fillet set with small shells, instead of jewels, and hung all round with silver pence. Above this was a piece of linen so artfully plaited and done up, that it looked

looked like a grenadier's cap ; at the top was a silk tassel, with another brass bell, which ginged as she turned her head. The rest of her dress was clean, though homely ; and the whole seemed becoming enough.

I think the cold is here more intense than at St Petersburgh, though it is five or six degrees farther south. In going about three miles from town, in a clear day, I had my face, fingers, and toes frozen, notwithstanding I was not half an hour on the road. I applied the common cure, that is, rubbing the numbed parts with snow, which I found perfectly effectual.

December 24th, our ambassador arrived from Mosco. At the same time came an express from court, with the important news of the crown Princess (as she was commonly called) being safely delivered of a son, christened by the name of Peter. She died soon after her delivery, universally lamented for her many rare and excellent virtues. She was of the Wolffenbuttle family, and wife to Alexy Petrovitz, the Cza-

D revitz.

revitz. Besides this young Prince, she left a Princess called Natalia.

At Cazan we found two Swedish generals, Hamilton and Rosen, and many other officers of distinction, taken prisoners at Poltava, who were no farther confined than by having a soldier of the garrison to attend them at their lodgings ; and, by the generosity of the governour, lived as easily as circumstances would allow. These gentlemen were invited to all the public diversions ; and, by their polite and agreeable behaviour, contributed not a little to our passing the winter with a good deal of pleasure, in such a remote part of the world.

Upon the banks of the Cazanka stands a monastery, very pleasantly situated. I accompanied our interpreter to visit the abbot, who received us in a very friendly manner. He would not, however, give the interpreter his blessing, nor admit him into the church, during divine service, unless he pulled off his wig. He, professing

the

the communion of the Greek church, excepted a little with the priest, telling him that their learned bishops at Mosco made no such scruples. The abbot replied, that it was contrary to the rules of discipline to allow any man to enter the church with his head covered.

The time was now come when we expected to leave Cazan. Our boats were ready in the beginning of May, but the Volga was still so high and rapid, that it was reckoned dangerous to proceed till the flood subsided ; for the force of the stream frequently carries vessels from their course into the woods, where the water retiring, leaves them on dry land.

At last, on the 4th of June 1716, we left Cazan in eight barks, and rowed down the river with great velocity. In the night, one of our boats was driven, by the rapidity of the current, among the woods, and stuck fast between two trees, up which the people climbed, being apprehensive of danger.

ger. The consequence, however, was not so fatal as the circumstances were alarming; for the vessel was got off next day with inconsiderable damage.

The 7th, we passed a small town called Tetoosk, and the 9th Sinbirsky, pretty large, and the capital of a province of that name, both to the right. Sinbirsky is defended by a castle. Near this place are evident marks of camps and entrenchments, which I was told were the works of the great Tartar general called Timyrak-sack, or Lame Timyr, or Tamerlane, who came to this place with a great army; but, being informed of an insurrection in his own country, Samarkant, now Bucharia, returned home.

The 10th, we put off from Sinbirsky with the wind contrary, which greatly retarded our progress. We passed two hills, one of them exhibiting a very beautiful prospect, the other containing mines of sulphur, as clear as amber. We passed also a mound of sand, of considerable bigness, in

the

the middle of a plain, where they say was buried a famous Tartar Prince called Maimay.

The 20th, we arrived at the town of Samara, situated to the left, in a fine plain. The place is but small, and fortified only with a ditch and palisades, with wooden towers at proper distances, mounted with cannon, sufficient to defend it against the incursions of the Tartars, called Kara Kal-packs, or Black Caps, who inhabit the desert to the eastward of this place.

This tribe of Tartars is not very considerable, and, when their chiefs are united, which seldom happens, can scarce raise above ten or twelve thousand men, who are all mounted on horseback; because, in their long marches, to rob and plunder their neighbours, nothing but horse could be of any use. They live always in tents, with their flocks, removing from place to place, as led by inclination or necessity. Their weapons are bows and arrows, and sabres; some of them use fire-arms. While we were

were at Samara, the inhabitants were alarmed with the approach of two or three thousand of these people, who encamped about three miles distant. From one of the towers I could plainly see their camp, and them riding about it. As they had not artillery, the garrison was in no danger, tho' so weak, however, that it durst not at this time attack them. The people were obliged to keep a constant watch to defend their cattle. This place is reckoned about three hundred and fifty verst distant from Cazan.

The 21st, having provided fresh hands for the navigation of our barks, we departed from Samara ; and, the weather being calm, rowed down the river, which is here very broad. The western bank is very high, but the eastern quite flat. The fields on both sides are very fruitful, but especially to the west, where the grass grows very high, intermixed with sage, thyme, and other herbs ; there are also some woods of oaks. A few hundred acres of such land would

would be of great value in England, tho' it is here waste and uncultivated.

We came the 25th to the Ismeyovi-gory, or Serpent-hills, so called from the windings of the river at this place ; and, after passing several towns, and many villages, all on the right, we landed at Saratof, a large town on the same side, about eight hundred and fifty verst from Cazan. It is but slightly fortified with a ditch, wooden-walls, and towers mounted with cannon, and defended by a garrison of regular troops and Cossacks.

We dined next day with the Governour, who entertained us with great variety of provisions, particularly fish, and very fine mutton.

After dinner, a party of us crossed the river, to visit a great horse-market, held by the Kalmuck Tartars. We saw about five or six hundred of these people assembled in a field, with a number of horses all running loose, except those on which the Tartars were mounted. The buyers came from

from different parts of Russia. The Tartars had their tents pitched along the river side. These tents are of a conical figure. There are several long poles erected, inclining to one another, which are fixed at the top into something like a hoop, that forms the circumference of an aperture for letting out the smoke, or admitting the light. Across the poles are laid some small rods, from four to six feet long, and fastened to them with thongs : This frame is covered with pieces of felt, made of coarse wool and hair. These tents afford better shelter than any other kind, and are so contrived, as to be set up, taken down, folded, and packed up, with great ease and quickness, and so light, that a camel may carry five or six of them. Where the Chan, or any person of character, resides, they are placed in straight lines. These Tartars are strong made stout men, their faces broad, noses flattish, and eyes small and black, but very quick. Their dress is very simple, consisting of a loose coat of sheep skins tied with

with a girdle, a small round cap, turned up with furr, having a tassel of red silk at the top, leather or linen drawers, and boots. Their heads are all shaved, except a lock behind, which is plaited, and hangs down their backs.

They are armed with bows and arrows, a sabre and lance, which they manage with great dexterity, acquired by constant practice from their infancy. They are men of courage and resolution; but much afraid of cannon, which puts their horses in disorder. As they are almost always on horseback, they are excellent riders.

The dress of the women differs little from that of the men; only their gowns are somewhat longer than the coats of the men, a little ornamented, and bordered with party-coloured cloth. They wear earrings, and their hair all plaited in locks. The better sort dress in silks in summer. It must be observed, for the honour of their women, that they are very honest and sincere, and few of them lewd. Adultery is

a crime scarce ever heard of. The Tartars make very good and faithful servants ; and the more mildly they are used the better they perform their duty ; for their wandering unconfined manner of life naturally inspires them with sentiments of liberty, and aversion and hatred to tyranny and oppression.

All their wealth is their flocks. Like those who lived in the early ages of the world, they have camels, horses, cows, and sheep. The horses are of a good size for the saddle, and very hardy ; as they run wild till they are sometimes six years old, they are generally headstrong. They are sold at this fair at five to fifteen or sixteen crowns ; and the strong well shaped natural pacers much higher. They have few camels, but many dromedaries, who have two protuberances on their backs. Their cows are of a middle size ; the sheep large, having broad tails like those in Turkey ; the wool is coarse, but the mutton very fine.

In

In the preceding century, a Kalmuck prince, named Torgott-Chorluke, came from Alack-Ulla, (which signifies the spotted mountains), a country situated between Siberia on the north, and India on the south, to the borders of Russia; and brought along with him about fifty thousand families, or tents, as they sometimes reckon. In his march westward to the Volga, he defeated Eyball-utzick a Tartar prince, who lived in tents beyond the river Enbo. Advancing forward, he met three other Tartar chiefs, named Kitta-haptzay, Malebashi, and Etzan, whom he also defeated; and at last settled to the east of the Volga, under the protection of the Russians. Chorluke had six sons. Dangtzinq, the eldest, succeeded him in the government or chanship.

The present Chan, named Aijuka, is the fourth from Chorluke, and is much esteemed in the east for his sagacity and justice. I am informed that the reason why Chorluke left his own country, was a dispute about the succession to the chanship. He being

being engaged on the weakest side, and having unsuccessfully tried his fortune in the field, at last took the resolution of abandoning his own country altogether. These people are generally called the Black Kalmucks, though they are not black, but only swarthy.

They have no money, except what they get from the Russians, and their other neighbours, in exchange for cattle. With this they buy meal sometimes, but mostly cloth, silk stuffs, and other apparel, for their women. They have no mechanics, except those who make arms. They avoid all labour, as the greatest slavery ; their only employment is tending their flocks, managing horses, and hunting. If they are angry with a person, they wish he may live in one place, and work like a Russian. Their language contains none of those horrid oaths common enough in tongues of more enlightened nations. They believe virtue leads to happiness, and vice to misery ; for, when desired to do what they think

think wrong, they reply, in a proverb, ' Though a knife be sharp, it cannot cut its own handle.'

On long marches, all their provisions consist of cheese, or rather dried curd, made up into little balls, which they drink when pounded and mixed with water. If this kind of food fails, they have always many spare horses, which they kill and eat. They broil or roast the flesh before the fire, on pieces of broken arrows, and never eat it raw, as is commonly believed, unless compelled by necessity. They have, indeed, large thick pieces of horse flesh, smoked or dried in the sun, which they eat; but this cannot properly be called raw. I have tasted some of it, and thought it not amiss.

As to their religion, I can say little: They are downright heathens; and have many lamas or priests, who can read and write, and are distinguished by their yellow habits. Their high priest is called Delay Lama, and lives far to the eastward.

July

July 1st, we put off from Saratof, and the 2d, 7th, and 9th, passed the towns of Kamoshinka, Czaritza, and Tzorno-yarr, all situated on the west bank, and fortified in the same manner as Saratof. At the first of these places, Captain Perry, an Englishman, with many workmen, was employed in cutting a canal between the Volga and the Don, which would have opened a passage to the Euxine sea; but the ground being very hard, and rising in some places considerably above the level, the enterprise was laid aside, though the distance was not above fifty verft.

From Tzorno-yarr to Astrachan, it is not safe for Russians to travel on the western banks of the Volga, on account of the Cuban Tartars, who are their enemies. To the east, however, there is no danger, as the Kalmucks are friends. On the islands in the Volga I observed great quantities of liquorish growing wild.

The 13th, we arrived safe at Afrachan, and were lodged in the citadel. This place
was

was taken from the Tartars in the year 1554, by the warlike Czar Ivan Vasiliovitz; whereby all his conquests on the Volga were secured, and the way prepared for farther extending the Russian dominion to the south and east, which hath been successfully attempted since his time.

C H A P.

C H A P. III.

Occurrences during our Stay at A-strachan. Our Journey thence to Shamachy.

A STRACHAN is situated about sixty verst from the Caspian Sea, on an island in the Volga, having the main branch of that river to the westward. It is fortified by a strong brick-wall, with embrasures, and square towers at proper distances. In the citadel are the cathedral church, governour's palace, and the public offices. There is a creek or haven for ships that navigate the river and the Caspian Sea. The houses are generally built with wood,

con-

conveyed in rafts along the river; for the neighbouring country produces nothing, being all a barren desert. To the westward there is no water to be found for many miles. The islands, however, adjacent to the town, are very fruitful, and produce excellent grapes, transplanted hither from Persia and other parts; also water-melons, esteemed the best in the world; and various kinds of musk-melons, peaches, cherries, pears, apples, and apricots.

Here are several large vineyards, belonging partly to the court, and partly to private persons. There is a Frenchman who superintends them. The wines are very good when drunk on the spot, but cannot bear carriage, for the least motion renders them insipid. Were it not for this circumstance, Russia would be able, not only to supply itself abundantly with wine, but even other parts of Europe. This pernicious quality is attributed to the nitrous particles of the soil where the vines grow. I have myself seen, in the furrows made

F for

for watering them, a whitish crust of salt : But the grapes, notwithstanding, are very sweet, without the least tincture of tartness.

About a mile below the town are collected great quantities of common salt. The people dig pits, into which they introduce the water ; which, being exhaled by the heat of the sun, the salt is left upon the bottom. After gathering, they transport it along the river, in large barks of about five or six hundred ton. The gun-powder manufactory is a little above the town ; in which, and in the mines of saltpetre, near this place, are employed a great number of workmen for the service of the government.

The climate is healthy, though very hot. The weather is generally calm, during which great numbers of gnats muskitos infest the inhabitants. These vermine indeed are sometimes dispersed by a breeze from the sea, which renders this place very pleasant. They are hatched and sheltered in

the

the marshes towards the sea, which are so overgrown with strong tall reeds that they are altogether impassable.

The Mahometan Tartars here live without the town, and have the same privileges as in other places. I met several of their women in the street with rings in their noses, which were of different value, according to the rank of the person who wore them ; some of gold, and others set with precious stones. On inquiring the reason of such a singular ornament, I was told, that it was the consequence of a religious dedication of these persons to the service of God : It is made by the parents, even while the mother is pregnant ; in token whereof, as soon as the child is born, they put a ring in the right nostril, which continues there till death. I have seen some with two such rings.

Astrachan is a place of considerable trade to Persia, Chiva, Bucharia, and India. The people of these nations have a common

earg-

caravansery, where they live and expose their goods to sale.

The Armenians carry on the greatest part of the Persian trade ; for the Persians themselves seldom go out of their own country. There are a few Indians, or Banians, at this place, who have a streak of yellow down their forehead, made with saffron or some other vegetable. They are a good-natured, innocent kind of people, and live mostly on fruits.

The market is plentifully supplied with provisions of all kinds ; but especially fish, of which no place that I know abounds with such variety. After the sale is over, which is usually about ten o'clock, what remains of the common sorts is thrown to the dung-hill, where the hogs and poultry feed upon them ; and hence it happens that their very pork and fowls taste of fish. It would be tedious to mention all the different kinds this place affords : I cannot however omit the carp, which for size exceeds all of that name I ever heard of. I

have

have seen some of them of more than thirty pound weight, very fat and luscious. Those caught in autumn are carried to Mosco frozen, and sold there and in the places adjacent.

I observed also a great variety of uncommon birds, whereof I shall describe a few that seemed most extraordinary.

The first I shall mention, called by the Russians baba, is of a gray colour, and larger than a swan ; he has a broad bill, under which hangs a bag that may contain a quart or more ; he wades near the edge of the river, and on seeing a shoal of fry, or small fishes, spreads his wings and drives them to a shallow, where he gobbles as many of them as he can into his bag, and then going ashore, eats them, or carries them to his young. This bird I take to be the pelican.

The next is altogether white, except its feet, which are black ; it is somewhat less than a heron, and has a long broad bill.

The

The Germans call this bird leffel-ganze; the Russians kolpeck.

There is another about the same size, also white; but its feet are long and red, and its bill crooked and round, and as red as coral: Its wings are adorned with some bright scarlet feathers.

Besides these, I saw a kind of duck, something bigger than the common sort, called turpan; it is easily tamed, and much admired for its beauty, and a certain kind of noise peculiar to itself. I have eat of all these fowls; but did not much relish them, on account of the fishy taste with which they are all infected.

There are also partridges and bustards, which need no description. The Kal-mucks, who are keen sportsmen, particularly at hawking, in which they have arrived to a great perfection, kill the bustards with bows and arrows: When they see them feeding, they ride in upon them at full speed; and as the bustard is a heavy bird, and mounts slowly, they have an opportunity

portunity of shooting them with broad-headed arrows.

On the banks of the Volga there is a species of deer of a brighter red, and somewhat larger than the fallow-deer ; they have green horns, but not branched, about nine inches long, and covered with circles, rising one above another to the point, which is very sharp. This deer is very swift, and its flesh excellent ; it has a high snout of gristle, which rises very near to the eyes—a circumstance which I have not observed in any other animal.

I saw also a small lively creature, called an Astrachan hare, about the size of a squirrel, and of a reddish colour, remarkable for having the fore-feet very short in proportion to the hind-feet ; its tail is long, with a tuft of hair at the extremity ; it burrows in the earth, and being a very pretty creature, I have sometimes seen them in cages. The Kalmucks eat them very greedily.

While

While we were at Astrachan, an ambassador, arrived there, from the Chan of Chiva, going to St Peterburgh. On his arrival he sent, according to the eastern custom, some small present to our ambassador ; they were brought by part of his retinue, and consisted of a hawking glove, a small knife, an embroidered purse, and some fruits.

Chiva is a large territory, lying about two or three days journey eastward from the Caspian Sea ; bounded by Persia on the south, and Bucharia to the east. The capital, which bears the same name, is large and populous, and governed by a Chan, elected by the people. They are very troublesome and dangerous, both to travellers and their neighbours, being frequently employed either in robbing the former, or making depredations on the latter. And though Chiva is well fortified, its situation, in so sandy and barren a desert, is its best defence.

One day, as I was walking through the streets of Astrachan, I observed a very singular

gular appearance: It was a pretty Tartar lady, mounted astride upon an ox; she had a ring in her nose, and a string drawn through the nose of the ox, which served instead of a bridle: She was dressed better than common, and attended by a footman. The singularity of the equipage, but particularly her extraordinary beauty, drew my attention. The Mahometan must not be confounded with the Kalmuck Tartars; the first are a well-looked civilized people in comparison of the other.

Before I leave Astrachan it may be proper to rectify a mistaken opinion, which I have observed frequently to occur in grave German authors, who, in treating of the remarkable things of this country, relate, that there grows in this desert, or stepp, adjoining to Astrachan, in some plenty, a certain shrub or plant, called in the Russian language Tartarskey barashka, *i. e.* Tartarian lamb, with the skin of which the caps of the Armenians, Persians, Tartars, &c. are faced. They also write, that this Tar-

tarskey barashka partakes of animal as well as vegetative life ; that it eats up and devours all the grass and weeds within its reach. Though it may be thought that an opinion so very absurd could find no credit with people of the meanest share of understanding, yet I have conversed with some who have seemed much inclined to believe it ;—so very prevalent is the prodigious and absurd with some part of mankind.

In search of this wonderful plant I walked many a mile, accompanied by Tartars who inhabit these deserts : But all I could find out were some dry bushes, scattered here and there, which grow on a single stalk, with a bushy top, of a brownish colour ; the stalk is about eighteen inches high, the top consisting of sharp prickly leaves. It is true, that no grass or weeds grow within the circle of its shade ; a property natural to many other plants here and elsewhere. After further inquiry of the more sensible and experienced among the

the Tartars, I found they laughed at it as a ridiculous fable.

At Astrachan they have great quantities of lamb-skins, gray and black ; some waved, others curled, all naturally, and very pretty, having a fine gloss, particularly the waved, which, at a small distance, appear like the richest watered tabby : They are much esteemed, and are much used for the lining of coats, and the turning up of caps, in Persia, Russia, and other parts. The best of these are brought from Bucharia, Chiva, and the countries adjacent, and are taken out of the ewe's belly, after she hath been killed, or the lamb is killed immediately after it is lambed ; for such a skin is equal in value to the sheep.

The Kalmucks, and other Tartars, who inhabit the desert, in the neighbourhood of Astrachan, have also lamb-skins, which are applied to the same purposes ; but the wool of these being rougher, and more hairy, they are far inferior to those of Bucharia or Chiva, both in gloss and beauty, as also in
the

the dressing, consequently in value. I have known one single lamb-skin of Bucharia sold for five or six shillings Sterling, when one of these would not yield two shillings.

On the 5th of August we quitted Astrachan in five vessels, three of them flat-bottomed, and of about an hundred and fifty tons burthen, with three masts and ten guns each; the other two common barks. We sailed from Astrachan about noon; and at night came to an anchor at a fishery, called Utzugg. Both the banks are now flat; to the westward barren sands, and to the east marshy and tall reeds, abounding with vermine; so that we neither eat nor slept in quiet, notwithstanding all the precautions we could use. I must confess this place had an aspect of horror, especially when it is considered, that, besides the wild and dismal appearance of the banks, we were carried down a mighty river, into a great gulf, in many places of dangerous navigation, and whose shores are inhabited by

by inhospitable and barbarous nations ; for such I reckon all of them, except the Russians and Persians.

Next morning, at break of day, we got under sail, and about tea entered the Caspian Sea ; into which the river discharges itself by seven or eight large channels, and many lesser ones : Two only of these channels are navigable by ships of any burthen. At night we cast anchor near four hillocks of dry sand, cast up by the sea, called Tzeterey Bugory, computed to be about thirty verft from the mouth of the Volga : All which distance we had not above six or seven feet water ; and even this depth is very narrow ; so that the passage is extremely dangerous in hard gales of wind.

The 7th, early, we again set sail with a gentle breeze from the shore, which soon drove us into three fathom water, and out of sight of land ; the water however still continued fresh as the river. About noon the wind shifted to the south, which obliged us to come to an anchor, where we lay

lay for near three weeks in calms and contrary winds.

All this time we did not see a single ship, besides our own, except one Russ vessel that came from Guilan in Persia, with some Armenian merchants, who made a present to the ambassador of a basket of oranges, melons, and other fruits, which was the more acceptable, as our own provisions of that kind were all spent. As often as the weather would permit we got under sail, and endeavoured to reach the road of Terky, a small fortified town, belonging to the Russians, on the north-west corner of the Caspian Sea, where we might be supplied with provisions; but the continual calms prevented our success.

On the evening of the 26th of August the wind changed to the north-west; we hoisted all the sail we could, steering our course south south-east, and before night passed the island of Tullen, *i. e.* of Seals; many of which animals haunt this place. It continued to blow hard the whole night;

night ; and next morning we were in sight of the mountains called Shaffkall, which were distant about fifteen leagues. We proceeded the whole day, edging always a little nearer to the shore.

The 28th, in the evening, it fell calm ; and, being about six leagues off the land, we cast anchor. Next day, the wind blowing fair, in the afternoon we passed the town of Derbent. The ambassador ordered the castle to be saluted with nine guns ; but it seems the people are not accustomed to make any return. It is a place considerably large, and the frontier of Persia in this quarter. It is fortified in the ancient manner, with a strong stone-wall, which reaches from the mountains to the shore ; so that no army can pass this way, except mountaineers, or Tartars, who find roads every where. Derbent, being a place of great consequence, is provided plentifully with cannon and ammunition, and a strong garrison, governed by a commandant appointed by the chan, or governor of Shamachy,

on

on which province it depends. It is reported that it was built by Alexander the Great. About the place there still remain several monuments of antiquity ; particularly large stones, with inscriptions in uncommon characters. South from Derbent stands a very high mountain, called Shach-dagh, the top of which is covered with snow the whole year round, though the vallies are exceedingly hot.

August the 30th, we arrived at Niezabatt, the place where we intended to land, on the territories of Persia. It lies about two days journey east from Derbent. There being no harbour, nor creek, we hauled up our ships upon the shore, which we performed with little trouble, as they were all flat-bottomed.

The ship in which was our Secretary, Monsieur Venigerkind, and several other officers, did not arrive till about three o'clock afternoon. The wind was now very high, and a great sea upon the beach, which obliged them to drop an anchor in the open road ;

road ; but the wind blowing still harder, it became dangerous to ride there ; the skipper, therefore, slipt the cable, and stood out to sea. The gentlemen, however, did not like their situation on board ; and, being eager to get to land, ordered the master to run the ship ashore, and they would be accountable for the consequences ; which he, a Hollander, in the Czar's service, unwillingly complied with, under an easy sail, about two miles eastward of the place where we lay. All hands went to their assistance, but without effect ; for, though the ship had received no damage, yet the sea run so high, that the boat could not be hoisted out, to carry them to land.

In the mean time, the secretary, impatient of remaining on board in such circumstances, prevailed with one of the sailors to carry him ashore on his back : which being done, he took his way alone towards the other ships ; but, his cloaths being drenched in the salt-water, and the road lying through deep sands, he was soon fatigued,

VOL. I. H and

and therefore retired nearer to the woods, in hopes of finding a more smooth and easy path. He discovered what he sought ; but, instead of leading him to the ships, it carried him away from the shore, and the right course, into thick incumbered woods ; and in these circumstances night overtook him, utterly ignorant of the dismal and dangerous wild into which he had wandered. Thus destitute of all assistance, he climbed a tree to save himself from the wild beasts with which these woods abound ; and in this situation continued all the night, and till noon next day ; for the people in his own ship never doubted of his having safely reached our tents ; while we, on the contrary, had not the least suspicion of his having come ashore. At last, however, about noon, his servant came, inquiring for his master, who, he told us, left the ship the night before. This account filled us all with anxiety and apprehension ; as we certainly concluded he would either be torn to pieces by the wild beasts,

or

or murdered by the savages who inhabit these coasts. Immediate order was given for all our people to repair to the woods in search of him. He was at last found wandering from path to path, without knowing one direction from another. When he came to the tents he looked ghastly and wild, and related many strange stories of what he had heard in the night. All possible care was taken to alleviate his distress. During his sleep, which was very discomposed, he often started, groaned, and spoke ; and, even after he awaked, he persisted in affirming that there were numbers of people round the tree, in the night, talking different languages. The imagination, no doubt, will naturally have a strong effect on any man in such uncommon circumstances ; for, though the secretary was a man of penetration and sound judgment, in vain did we endeavour to undeceive him, by representing that it was nothing but the jackals which made the noise he had heard. ; and that, to be convinced of
the

the truth of this affirmation, he needed only, at the approach of night, to step a little from the tents, where he would hear the same sounds repeated. All was to no purpose, since he insisted that the noise he heard was quite different from the yelpings of the jackals. He scarce ever recovered his former sagacity and soundness of mind. I must confess the situation of this gentleman moved me not a little, as he was a man of parts and learning, with whom I had contracted an intimate friendship.

Since I have mentioned the jackals, it may not be improper to give a short account of these animals. They are of a size larger than a fox, of the shape and colour of a wolf, with a short bushy tail. They dig burrows in the earth, in which they lie all day, and come out in the night to range for prey. They assemble in flocks among the woods, and frequently near towns and villages, when they make the hideous noise formerly mentioned, resembling, in some measure, a human voice, or
the

the noise of the Tartars and Cossacks when they attack their enemies. They have fine noses ; and hence the vulgar opinion has arisen, that they hunt prey for the lion. They are in great plenty all over Persia, and esteemed harmless creatures.

As soon as we landed, the ambassador despatched an interpreter to Schamachy, to notify his arrival to the governour of that place, and to desire him to send camels and horses to transport him thither. The interpreter was kindly received, and an order was immediately issued out for answering his demands.

September the 1st, the chan of Shamachy sent an officer of distinction to salute the ambassador ; and the next day a present of provisions, consisting of an ox, some sheep, with fruits and confections.

About six or eight leagues to the eastward of Niezabatt is a high rock, called Barmach, or the finger, upon the shore, which a great many of the Armenians visit annually, to pay their devotions. They have

have a tradition, that the prophet Elijah lived some years at this place.

September 2d, we were a little alarmed with intelligence, that a considerable body of mountaineers had plundered some villages in our neighbourhood. We had not yet received any guard from the Persians, and were therefore obliged to take every precaution possible for our defence. We armed all our own people, and all the sailors; and, besides these, we had twenty soldiers from the garrison of Astrachan. Cannon were brought from the ships, and planted in proper places, to prevent a surprise. These preparations seem to have intimidated the undisciplined savages, for they never attacked us.

Two days journey eastward from Niezbatt stand Absheroon and Backu, two considerable towns. At the former is a good harbour, reckoned the best in the Caspian Sea, except that of Astrabatt, which lies in the south-east corner of it. All the rest are
so

so dangerous, that they scarce deserve the name of harbours.

In the neighbourhood of Backu are many fountains of Naphtha ; it is a sort of petroleum, of a brown colour, and inflammable nature. The Persians burn it in their lamps ; no rain can extinguish it ; but the smell is disagreeable. I have seen of it as clear as rock-water.

The Caspian Sea is of an oblong irregular figure, about one hundred and fifty leagues in length, from north to south, and forty or fifty leagues broad. The water is excessively salt, except where it is sweetened by the Volga, which is at least to the distance of ten leagues from the influx of that river.

The navigation of the Caspian belongs solely to the Russians ; the Persians, and other borderers, having nothing but fishing boats. It contains abundance of fish ; but no shell-fish, except a kind of cockle, the shells of which are very pretty. In some places,

places, there is a great depth of water. The Persians observe that, of late, the sea has retired considerably from the shore ; which they reckon ominous, presaging some calamity to the kingdom. It has no tides, but such as are caused by the wind ; and, notwithstanding the great quantities of water daily received, it continues nearly about the same height. Dr Halley has demonstrated, that exhalation, in so hot a climate, is sufficient to account for this phenomenon, without having recourse to subterraneous passages.

The 4th, I was conducted by an Armenian merchant some leagues from our tents, to visit a Persian. We were received in a very complaisant and friendly manner ; the house was clean, and the floor spread with carpets. Our entertainment consisted of coffee and boiled rice.

On the 11th, arrived two Jesuits from India, named Valery and Martinet, on their way to Rome. They petitioned the ambassador for a passage in one of our ships to

to Astrachan, which was granted. About this time many of our retinue began to be seized with different diseases, particularly fevers, fluxes, and agues, which, in a few days, made such progress, that, at the ambassador's table, where seldom fewer than ten dined, he and myself only were present. These distempers exhibited a most disagreeable prospect, and made us wish earnestly to leave a place that threatened our destruction. For this purpose, messengers were daily sent to the chan of Shamachy to despatch the camels, horses, and mules. Some of them, indeed, were already come, but not near the number we needed; for our numerous sick could only be transported on litters carried by mules.

The 12th, a conductor, called Maymander, arrived, with a guard of Persian soldiers, and some more cattle, which were still too few. This officer is appointed by the Shach or King to guide ambassadors to court, and furnish them with provisions,

carriages, and lodgings, at the Shach's expense, from the time they enter the kingdom.

Having accommodated ourselves in the best manner we could, we quitted Niezabatt on the 18th, keeping along the shore; and, at night, came to a small village, about three agatz from Niezabatt. We found the houses all empty, the people having fled to the woods or mountains on our approach.

The 20th, we reached a village about four agatz (an agatz is reckoned to be four English miles) from the former, where we lodged again in empty houses; and the 21st proceeded four agatz further, to a brook of white and muddy water, where we pitched our tents. About noon, next day, we came to a fountain of pure water, under a great oak. Here we halted two hours, to refresh the sick; and, after travelling four agatz further, arrived at an old caravan-ferry; a long day's journey for people in such distress.

The

The caravanseries are generally large square buildings, with a court in the middle. All round there are rooms for lodging travellers, and on one side a stable for horses. They are of different sizes and constructions, according to the bounty or ability of the founder. Some are built by charitable people, others by good kings. They are situated as near fresh water as possible, and about a day's journey from one another.

As there are no inns in the east, these caravanseries in some measure supply that defect, though nothing is found in them but shelter. They are, however, very convenient for travellers; and some of them can contain five hundred men, with their horses. There is commonly an old man, who cleans the rooms, and fetches necessaries from the next town or village.

The 23d, we halted to refresh the sick; and here we buried two of our mechanics.

The 24th, we travelled to a ruinous caravansery, about four agatz from the former.

mer. This was the first instance that occurred of remissness and inattention in the present government of Persia ; for the King, without attending to his own affairs, allows himself to be guided entirely by those whose interest it is to deceive him. Nothing, in the judgment of a foreigner, can render any people more contemptible than the notorious neglect of such useful public edifices. This day we received another supply of provisions from the chan.

The 26th, we travelled to a plain within a league of Shamachy, where we lay all night, to be received into the town the day following, in form and ceremony, according to the custom of Persia. At this place died my friend, Captain Jacques de Villette. He was a gentleman of a good family in France, and a very worthy man. And, besides the Captain, two servants died here.

C H A P.

C H A P. IV.

Occurrences during our Stay at Shamachy. Our Journey thence to Tauris.

THE 27th, in the morning, came the Kalentar and Dorruga, with many of the inhabitants, to pay their compliments to the ambassador. These officers are next in rank under the chan, and have the sole direction of affairs in his absence. They brought some fine horses, richly caparisoned, for the chief of the retinue. As we approached the place, we were met by other officers, particularly the Divan, Begg, and Ish-agassy, and magistrates, all mounted on stately horses, with rich furniture, which made

made a very splendid appearance. Before the ambassador's horse two young fellows tumbled all the way, with great agility. About two o'clock we entered the city.

As we passed along the streets, all the tops of the houses were filled with spectators. At last, the ambassador arrived at the house of one of the principal officers, which was allotted entirely to him and his attendants. The houses in Persia are mostly flat-roofed. As there is but little rain in this country, a very small declivity is sufficient to carry off the water. I compute the distance between Niezabatt and Shamachy to be about twenty-five agatz, or an hundred miles.

October 1st, I had a visit from a gentleman well dressed in the Persian habit, and was not a little surprised to hear him talk good High Dutch. After some conversation, he told me he was born at Dantzick ; that in his youth he came to Persia with a Polish ambassador, who died at Ispahan. That, some differences arising between him and

and his countrymen, to end the dispute he turned Mahometan, and settled in Persia, where he now enjoyed a small salary as a linguist. He had often repented of this rash step ; but, having a wife and children at Shamachy, he could not abandon them.

The day following, the chan, with a numerous retinue, paid a ceremonial visit to the ambassador. The chan is a middle aged man, of a graceful aspect, by birth a Georgian, of Christian parents, but brought up at court from his infancy : And it must be confessed that his treatment of the ambassador was extremely obliging.

The 14th, the chan sent an invitation to the ambassador to go a hunting, with horses for that purpose. We marched about two or three miles to the eastward, till we came to a plain overgrown with short reeds. We sprung a number of pheasants, ten or fifteen whereof were killed by the chan's hawks ; and several hares were run down by the greyhounds, which were all sent to the ambassador's lodgings.

About

About this time, there happened a mis-understanding between the ambassador and secretary, by the imprudence of the latter. It is customary for the Shach to make presents in money, or other things, to all ambassadors, according to the dignity of their respective masters ; and, though no money had yet been granted, the unlucky secretary, poor gentleman ! not quite recovered, by an unseasonable and ill advised claim, pretended a right to part of the future donative. The ambassador, on the contrary, alledged; that the secretary was entitled to nothing from him, except the privilege of his table, and provisions for his servants. Both my situation in the retinue, and an indisposition, prevented my intermeddling in this dispute. I only advised the secretary to postpone his claim till some more favourable opportunity. My advice, however, had no effect, for the difference still increased, till the secretary fell sick, and was confined to his lodgings, where he died suddenly, on the 5th of November.

This

This event was the more melancholy to me, in particular, as it was unexpected. By the death of this gentleman, I was deprived of another worthy friend. He was a Saxon by birth ; was candid, honest, and sincere ; and much esteemed by all his acquaintance, for his learning and capacity.

A few days after, there arrived at Schamachy a Persian ambassador, who had been in France, and had returned homeward thro' Russia. His behaviour in France, and in other places, had been little for the honour of his master. The ministry at Ispahan had perfect intelligence of his whole conduct, which he came to understand ; and, being afraid to undergo a trial at court, went directly to the city of Erivan, the place of his residence when in his own country, where, as it was reported, he poisoned himself. He had treated a French engineer, whom he engaged in the service of his master, so cruelly, that he died two days after coming to Shamachy.

The 25th, I dined with father Peter Ricard, in company with Monsieur Bourgard, a French merchant. This father hath lived as a missionary in different places of Persia for many years: He had studied physic, which he practised occasionally, and thereby introduced himself to an acquaintance with many families of distinction: He is a man of a grave and sober deportment, which procures him great respect: He has a small congregation at this place, consisting only of Christian Armenians, who have been converted from the communion of the Eastern to the Western Church; for it is a capital crime to convert a Mahometan. Bourgard was employed by the English factory at Ispahan, to buy raw silks here to be sent to Aleppo.

The ambassador sent a present to the chan, of sables, and other rich furs, of considerable value; and had, in return, a fine horse, with a saddle, bridle, and other trappings, mounted with gold.

Some

Some time after, there arose a dispute between the ambassador and the chan, about the Shach's gratuity; the first thought the sum offered was too small, while the latter affirmed he had no authority for a greater allowance. The determination of this affair detained us longer than we intended to stay; however, in the mean time, camels and horses were ordered to be got ready. After many messages on both sides, the chan, unwilling to let the Ambassador depart unsatisfied, sent Monsieur Bourgard with an offer of ten tomans (a toman is equal to three pounds Sterling,) a-day, during his journey to Ispahan, and that sum for three days only of the time he continued at Shamachy: This proposal was at last accepted, and the money paid. I shall, before we leave this place, add a few remarks on the city and its environs.

Shamachy is situated in about 40 degrees north latitude: It was anciently part of Media; but now the capital of an extensive province, called Shirvan. The city stands on

on the declivity of a hill, inclining to the south, and rises toward the top in form of an amphitheatre : The place is large, but the houses are meanly built, excepting those of the governour, the chief magistrates, and a few rich merchants ; the streets are narrow and irregular : The greater part of the inhabitants are Persians ; there is also a considerable number of Georgians and Armenians : The vulgar language is Turkish, but the people of distinction speak Persian. The air is more healthy than at places nearer to the Caspian Sea.

Above the town, on the summit of the hill, stands an high edifice, having many windows and a gallery, in which, every day at the rising and setting of the sun, is held a kind of concert of music, composed of long trumpets, large drums, and hautboys, which make a dreadful sound. It is reported, that this custom is as ancient as the time of Alexander the Great.

There are also in the city several mosques, with high pillars adjoining, which the moulla

moulla or priest ascends every day at twelve o'clock, to call the people to prayers ; for the Mahometans use no bells. They have, besides, several public baths, some for men, others for the women, to which both sexes resort daily for ablution, conformably to the law of their religion. The women go generally in companies of five or six, so concealed with a white veil, that nothing of them is visible but the eyes and nose. There are several spacious caravanseries, very convenient for strangers or merchants, who there expose their commodities, for which they pay a small impost.

There is a considerable traffick at this place, particularly in raw silk, which is produced in the neighbourhood ; the greatest part whereof is purchased by the English and Dutch factories at Ispahan, and sent to Aleppo ; also cotton, which indeed is mostly sold to the natives, and consumed in stuffs for their own use. The country about Shamachy, besides many kinds of fruits, produces plenty of wheat, barley, and very fine

fine grapes, from which the Christians make very good wine ; they keep it in great jars resembling the Florence oil ones, which they deposit under ground in their gardens, covering them above with a thin stone, neatly pasted about the edges, for the better preservation of the liquor. When they give an entertainment, they spread carpets round the jar, which is generally placed in a shade, and on these the guests are seated.

About two miles to the northward of the city, stands a high mountain, named Guilistan-dagh, where are seen the ruins of an ancient castle, built of stone ; it appeared not to be of Eastern architecture. I could procure no information who was the founder, or by whom it was demolished. Adjoining to this mountain is another, on which are the tombs of two saints, or heroes ; whither great numbers of devout people come annually to worship. I observed near these tombs, several hallowed rocks covered with small shells brought hither by the worshippers ; I observed likewise,

wife, on the common rocks, many shells imprinted and petrified, which seemed very extraordinary.

December 4th, all things being prepared for our departure, we were furnished by the conductor, or maymander, with one hundred and sixty camels, and near two hundred horses and mules, on which we left Shamachy, travelling along the rising grounds. We halted two days at an Armenian village, called Kalck-anii.

On the 7th, we descended into a desert plain, called by the Russians Mugan, and by the Persians Kurdistān. At mid-night we came to some wells of brackish water, where we lodged in such tents as are used by the inhabitants, which were prepared by the conductor.

We proceeded the 10th five agatz, to a little copse-wood, where was found tolerable water, and the 11th, arrived at the river Kure, or Cyre, which we passed on a bridge of boats, and pitched our tents on the

the other side. The water of the river is sweet and wholesome.

About half a league above the bridge, the river Araxis, now Arras, falls into the Kure, which together form a considerable stream, that discharges itself into the Caspian Sea, about a day's journey below the bridge, running northward all the way; but the mouth of the river is so choaked up with sand, that it is navigable by no vessel of any burden.

The river Kure divides the province of Shirvan from Kurdistan. The Kurdy, probably so called from the name of the river, are a very ancient people, and seem to be the same whom Xenophon, in the Anabasis, calls Karduchi, who so strenuously opposed his passage in his famous retreat from Artaxerxes. They are still reckoned a brave people. Their horses are most esteemed of any in Persia, both for beauty and strength.

We left the Kure on the 13th, and proceeded seven agatz to Chuda-tzoolatzy, where

where the water was very brackish and muddy. The country around appeared plain as the sea.

Setting out early next morning, we travelled ten agatz, and in the evening reached a brook of tolerable water, called Bolgar. This was the last day's journey in the plain of Mugan. The inhabitants, the Kurdy, live in tents all the year. The soil is very dry and barren, notwithstanding the cattle are in good condition, and the mutton particularly very good.

While we halted about noon, some Persian sportsmen, who, by their dress, seemed persons of distinction, pitched their tents near ours: They sent the ambassador a present of wild-fowl, and an antelope. The ambassador invited them to share a traveller's dinner. Three of the gentlemen accepted the invitation, but excused themselves from eating any thing, pretending they had already dined; but it is well known that the Mahometans scruple to eat with Christians; each of them, however, drank a dish

of coffee, and an old man a dram of brandy. They had several greyhounds, and a couple of large hawks, which were trained to fly at antelopes ; the hawks cannot hold indeed so strong a creature as an antelope, but they fly about its head, and thereby retard its velocity, till the greyhounds, or horsemen, overtake it ; for the antelope far out-runs any greyhound I ever saw. In this desert, I have seen flocks of them consisting of two or three hundred.

In manning hawks to fly at antelopes, they stuff the skins of these animals with straw, and feed the hawk between their horns, placing food there for that purpose ; hence they are accustomed to hover round the head, which proves the destruction of these creatures. I was informed, that it is in this manner the Tartars manage hawks to fly at foxes and wolves. These particulars may possibly appear immaterial ; however, as they may contribute to amuse the reader, it was thought not improper to insert them.

After

After resting the 16th, we travelled next day four agatz, to the foot of a very high mountain, where we found a few poor cottages, deserted by their inhabitants on our approach. The water was in plenty and good. The weather was very cold, and no fire-wood could be got, except a little we brought along with us. One of our people straggling too near the rocks, was dangerously wounded with a stone, thrown by some of these cottagers who had retired thither. On these rocks I saw a creature like a goat, called by the Germans Steinbuck; it is much bigger than the common kind of these animals, and its horns are of a prodigious size.

The 18th, we advanced five agatz farther; and the 19th, seven agatz, to a large village, called Katchoochana, where the Chan of Mugan has a good house. The weather being cold and frosty, we continued here all the 20th.

The 21st, we travelled five agatz, to a village under a great mountain, where was

a water mill for grinding corn, the first machine of that sort I saw in Persia.

The 22d, we came to a small town called Aggar. The kalentar ordered the citizens to arm and oppose our entry; and, notwithstanding the remonstrances of our conductor, he persisted unalterable in his purpose, affirming he had no order to admit such a body of armed men. He did not however refuse us provisions, wood and water, for money. We were therefore obliged to content ourselves with these, and lodge in our tents on an open field, in cold weather.

Next day we proceeded two or three a-gatz, to a large populous village, where the people, in imitation of those at Aggar, assembled in arms, and barricadoed all their entries, refusing us admittance; they beat our quarter-master, a Persian officer belonging to the conductor, for offering to force his way into the place. We therefore lodged again in the open air. They sent out some fire-wood, and whatever else they could spare.

spare. I must confess I could scarce blame these people for their behaviour ; because, had we been admitted, the inhabitants must all have left their own houses ; and where could a parcel of poor women and children have found shelter in such extremity of cold.

The 24th, we continued our journey between two great mountains, where the north wind was very piercing. We passed an old ruinous caravansery, and arrived in the evening at an empty village, which the natives had forsook the day before. All next day we halted, being Christmafs.

The 26th we marched about four agatz, to another village. The inhabitants were so hospitable as to afford us lodging, but charged dear for every thing we needed, especially wood, which was bought at the rate of three-pence for seven pounds.

On the 27th we travelled over exceeding high mountains, from whence, I was told by an Armenian merchant in our company, might be seen, in a clear day, the top of the

the famous mount Ararat, called by the Persians Aggry, by the Armenians Messin ; the summit is constantly covered with snow, and often with a cloud : It is the highest of all that chain of mountains in Armenia, on which we then stood.

How far my information might be true, I cannot determine ; but certain it is, that when the Armenians see this mountain, they make a sign of the cross, and say their prayers, as is their custom, when they approach any place which they esteem sacred.

In the evening we arrived at the city of Tauris, Terris, or Tebris, as it is pronounced by some. The ambassador was met, about half a mile from the place, by the kalentar, and chief officers, who, after the common salutations, conducted him to his lodgings. Our baggage was deposited in a large caravansery in the neighbourhood.

C H A P.

C H A P. V.

Occurrences during our stay at Tauris : Our journey thence to Ispahan.

Tauris is a large and populous city, the capital of the province of that name, and the residence of the chan. It is situated in a fruitful plain, encompassed by the high rocks of mount Tauris, about ten days journey from Shamachy, and twenty-five from Ispahan ; I mean to a caravan. It is supposed to be the ancient metropolis of Media. It is still of considerable extent ; but not near what it has been. There are yet to be seen many curious remains of ancient grandeur ; particularly an old temple, converted into a mosque,

mosque, now neglected and ruinous. The roof is supported by many stately pillars of porphyry, almost entire, some whereof are of a greenish colour, with other colours and veins of gold interspersed. The proportions seemed to be regular, and the workmanship very fine and curious. In short, I am unable to describe the symmetry and beauty of these pillars, and wonder how they have escaped the fury of so many barbarians. It is no less surprising where we are got such massive pieces of marble, seeing nothing like them is now to be found in this country. These particulars demonstrate the ancient grandeur and riches of this place. It is, however, a deplorable truth, that this country in general hath undergone so many revolutions since the time of Alexander the Great, her first conqueror, that, a few places excepted, the present names, and descriptions of cities and provinces, bear almost no resemblance to those of antiquity, so that one can scarce imagine them accounts of the same places :

To

To such a degree hath time and barbarous invaders changed the appearances of things. Fire and sword have raged to destroy magnificent cities ; stately temples and palaces are demolished ; whole provinces depopulated ; and fruitful fields converted into a desert, by diverting the springs, or turning the rivers that watered them into other channels. Such are the consequences of lawless ambition on the finest productions of nature and art. The last is a circumstance to which few countries are so much exposed as Persia ; for in the inland part of it there is almost no rain, which obliges the inhabitants to water all their vegetables from springs and brooks. They often convey even rivers several leagues, in channels under ground, for this purpose. The dew indeed is very plentiful, but would be insufficient of itself for the purposes of vegetation.

The streets of Tauris are narrow and irregular. The houses are built with bricks made of mud, mixed with chopped straw,

VOL. I. M and

and dried in the sun ; the governour's palace indeed, and a few more houses, are built of stone, and make a good appearance. The roofs are generally flat, and covered with a terrace. The walls are white-washed on the inside, and look very white and clean. The floors of every house are spread with carpets, or mats, according to the circumstances of the inhabitants. The people of distinction have great halls of audience in their outer courts, arched with square bricks, which are plastered and painted with flowers : This is done at a small expence, and makes a very fine show.

There are several well built mosques, with stately minarets, or pillars, which the moulla ascends to call the people to prayers ; also an high building for the music, that plays evening and morning, as mentioned at Shamachy. There are also some large caravanseries ; so that no stranger can be at a loss for lodging at a small expence. The city is quite open, having no castle,

castle, or fortification to defend it. Indeed one would imagine the desert mountains, scarcity of water, and other obstructions, would be a sufficient defence against all invasions : The fury of the Turks, however, in their wars with Persia, surmounted all these obstacles.

Tauris is supplied with water from a brook, called Shankuy, which runs through the city, and some springs in the neighbourhood. The inhabitants are mostly Persians, though there are among them many Armenians. They have a considerable commerce in raw-silk, and manufactories of carpets, and silk and cotton stuffs. They have great crops of wheat and barley, when at the trouble and expence of watering the fields : But their principal support is rice, brought from the province of Guilan, where it grows very plentifully ; for this kind of grain, which of all other thrives best on wet land, agrees wonderfully with that rich moist soil near the Caspian Sea.

The

The Capuchin missionaries have a convent at this place for the use of the Armenians of the Roman Catholic profession ; which is superintended by two fathers of that order.

About a league from the city, on the road to Ispahan, are seen the ruins of a bridge, on the top of a hill, where, I believe, no water has run since the deluge. It is said that it was built by a whimsical priest, in order to introduce himself to the King, Shach Abbâs, who could not avoid taking notice, when he passed that way, of such an extraordinary appearance.

About four or five leagues from Tauris, in a plain called Roony ; there are several springs of water that petrify wood, and, I have been informed, even reptiles, such as lizards. One thing is certain, that, after a stagnation of this water, for a certain time, there is a substance like marble found at the bottom, which the Persians cut into any breadth or length at pleasure. I have seen of it two or three inches thick. It is easily polished,

polished, and is diaphanous, but not transparent. After sawing it into slabs, they fix them for windows in their bagnios and private apartments. Perhaps, it is not improbable, the large pillars, formerly mentioned, might be hewn out of this kind of marble.

During our stay at Tauris, little material happened. The weather continued very cold, which, together with want of horses and camels, detained us longer than we expected. I could not but pity the poor people of this place ; the cold was so excessive, and bread, and other necessaries so dear, that, I was informed, many of them perished in the streets.

January 2d, 1717, Monsieur Ricard, a French Jesuit, arrived, in his way to Ispahan, with some letters from Rome to the Sophy. He sent Monsieur Duffus, one of his retinue, with his compliments to our ambassador.

The Chan being absent, the Vizir, who is his lieutenant, came the 6th, in great state,

state, to visit the ambassador ; who, on the 11th, returned the compliment, attended with all his retinue. He was received in a magnificent hall, spread with fine carpets. There was a seat placed for the ambassador ; but the rest of the company sat cross-legged on the carpets, in the Persian manner.

The 20th there was a great fall of snow, which very much softened the cold piercing northerly winds.

The 23d, having, with great difficulty, procured horses and camels, we left Tauris, and travelled two agatz through deep snow, which incommoded us not a little ; particularly on account of the camels, who cannot bear deep roads.

The 24th and 25th, the roads were impassable. I saw here a male camel trample one of his keepers under his feet : For, at this season, when the females are rutting, the males are very furious and ungovernable, and must be managed with great caution.

The

The 26th, we travelled two agatz, to a spacious well-built caravansery, founded by Shach Sephy, sufficient to contain some hundreds of men and horses. Here we halted some time, and proceeded in the afternoon five agatz farther. In this day's journey you have the choice of two roads, both leading to Ispahan ; one through the cities of Ardeville and Casbin, and the other by Zengan and Sultany ; the last whereof we choosed, being somewhat shorter.

Ardeville is reported to be a very fine place ; and is famous for the monuments of Shach Sephy the first, and other Persian princes and heroes, esteemed for their virtue and piety. A great many devout people come from all parts of the country to worship at these tombs, where a considerable charity is daily distributed to the poor pilgrims ; to support which, there is a fund settled by the King, with proper officers appointed to superintend the management of it, and prevent frauds. I wanted much
to

to visit this place, but found it impracticable.

The 27th, we advanced three agatz, through deep snow, to a caravansery built of bricks. We were at no loss for water while the snow lay upon the ground. The next day we reached a large village, called Kara-China, inhabited by Persians and Armenians. About a mile from the place we were met by an Armenian priest, attended by a company of country people, who came to welcome us as fellow Christians. One of them carried a painted crucifix, raised on a long pole ; others played on flutes and hautboys, and other musical instruments, to which one or two persons kept time, by beating two thin brass plates against each other ; and many of them sung hymns and psalms. In this manner they accompanied us to our lodgings, where we were better accommodated than we had been hitherto. We received from these people, in particular, very good wine and grapes, which they preserve, through the winter

by

by hanging them in dry and open places.

About this time many of our people had sore eyes, and swelled faces, caused by the strong reflection of the sun-beams from the snow. The Persians themselves are liable to the same disorders. As a remedy, they wear a fillet of net-work, made of black horse hair, over their eyes, which I found, by experience, altogether effectual.

The 31st, we set out early, and travelled four agatz to Turkoma, a large village. The snow continued very deep. Here we were obliged to wait for our camels, some of which did not arrive till next day.

February 2d, we travelled eight agatz to a little town called Mianna, where is a caravansery for horses only. Here we buried another of our people.

The 4th, after two hours march, we passed a river, over which is a fine stone-bridge, standing under an high mountain, called Kaplanton. Leaving that place, we saw, on the left hand, the ruins of an old

VOL. I. N fortifi-

fortification. We repassed the river on another stone-bridge ; thence to a caravansery, called Tzamatura, and at night reached another, called Sartzam, being eight agatz from Mianna. Here we halted till our camels arrived ; the greatest part whereof came not before next day. We perceived the depth of the snow to lessen daily, as we advanced to the south.

The 7th, we travelled five agatz to a small town named Zengan, where we lodged in a good caravansery. The Sultan, or chief magistrate, waited on us, and gave us a friendly and hospitable reception. He has under his jurisdiction both this place and Sultany ; at each he resides half the year by turns.

Here we met a Russian merchant, who had about fifteen or twenty camels loaden with various kinds of merchandise, going to Bucharia.

We halted two days, on account of the deep snow in this neighbourhood ; and the 10th, after travelling six agatz, came to Sultany.

Sultany. This place is at present small and inconsiderable, though it appears to have been a great and famous city in former times. There are still to be seen several stately mosques and minarets; one of these mosques is the tomb of a Persian prince, called Chudabendie, which has a brass gate of lattice work, seemingly of great antiquity. In the same mosque is the tomb of Sultan Bajazat, son to Chudabendie.

On the 12th, we travelled four agatz to a village, where we staid all night; and the 13th, three agatz to another, through deep snow, which prevented our proceeding next day.

The 15th, we travelled five agatz, and the 16th four, to a large village called Guiga Zayn. At this place a Russian youth applied to the ambassador for freedom and protection. He had been carried away by the Tartars, from some of the southern provinces of Russia, and was sold some years before in Persia. He was forced

ced to turn Mahometan ; had almost forgot his mother tongue ; and was obliged to explain himself by an interpreter. The ambassador afforded him the protection he sought. His master claimed either his slave or the money he had paid for him ; neither of which demands could be granted.

The 18th, we arrived at Sexabbatt, a village four agatz from the former, where we quartered that night, and rested all the next day.

The 20th, we advanced three agatz to Arazant, a small village. This district being much pestered with strong gangs of highway-men, we marched with great circumspection ; and in the night the baggage was guarded, both by our own people and the conductor's soldiers.

The 21st, after a journey of three hours, we came to an old caravansery, called Idjoop, where we rested ; then advanced four agatz to another, called Kockera, situated in an extensive plain. The snow was now altogether gone, and the water at this place very

very bad. In an upper room of this caravansery, I saw the names of many Europeans cut on the wall, in different languages : among which was that of Olearius, secretary to the Holstein ambassadors, who published a very exact account of that fruitless embassy.

The 22d of February we set out very early, and in three hours reached Denggie, a caravansery, where we halted for refreshment ; and at night arrived at Saba, or Savva, seven agatz from Kockera.

Saba appears, from many ruins, to have been a place of great note. It stands in a fruitful and extensive plain, which produces all sorts of fruit natural to the climate, particularly pomegranates, the largest I have seen. The trees were now in full bloom, and had a very fine appearance. Some years ago, this place was almost ruined by a deluge. It has been repairing ever since, but is still far from its former condition.

The 24th, our road lay through a desert and barren plain, abounding with saltpetre.

We

We travelled six agatz to Jeffrabatt, a new caravansery ; and the 25th, five agatz, to the town of Koom.

About two leagues from Koom we saw a round hill to the left, called in Turkish Gedeen-Gedmaze, which signifies, that, whoever goes up never returns ; which, the Persians say, was the fate of a page sent up by Shach Abbabs, with a lighted torch in his hand. However this be, it is certainly no easy matter to ascend this place ; because the whole hill consists of sand, which is shifted from place to place by the wind, and must soon tire whoever attempts to climb it.

Koom is reckoned among the chief towns in Persia, and is the residence of a chan. It is situated in a fertile plain, well watered by a pretty large river, over which is a fine stone-bridge. In the town is a spacious caravansery, and several well built mosques and minarets. One of these mosques is highly esteemed by the Persians, because of the sepulchre of Shach Sephy
and

and his son Shach Abbabs the Second, and that of Sidy Fathima, grand-daughter to their prophet Mahomet. These tombs are much frequented by pilgrims, from all parts of Persia, who resort hither once a year, to pay their devotions; and are supported by a fund appropriated to that purpose.

Before you reach the mosque, you pass through three neat courts; and, in the middle of the fourth, where the mosque stands, there is a large basin of clear water. Above the gate are engraven, in gilt letters, the names of the deceased princes, with some verses in their praise. The monument of Sidy Fathima stands in the front of the building, encompassed with a grate work of pure silver, very valuable. To each of the princes are consecrated magnificent apartments, where the priests read the Koran night and day.

This is also a place of refuge for debtors, and unfortunate people, who are maintained at the public expence. Adjoining to the mosque is a large hall, where alms are

are daily distributed to the poor. Few Christians are admitted into this sacred place. The ambassador, however, with a few of the retinue, obtained this favour. Koom is famous for manufacturing the best blades, in all Persia, for sabres and poinards.

The 27th, we travelled from Koom, five agatz to Kassim-abbat, a considerable village, where we lodged. The weather now began to be so hot, that we could travel only in the morning and evening.

On the 28th, after travelling six agatz, we came to Sinnbzyn, another village. Here our huntsman caught a porcupine, and brought it home alive.

March 1st, we arrived at a place called Kashan, six agatz from the former. At some distance, we were met by the doroga, or judge, attended by about fifty horsemen. He came to salute the ambassador, and conducted him to his lodgings. The house belonged to the Shach, and was pleasantly situated in the middle of a fine garden, planted with various kinds of fruit trees.

Kashan

Kashan is a large and populous city. It is situated in a fertile plain, which secures plenty of all necessaries, and contains several well built mosques and caravanseries. The market-place is well furnished with merchandise of different kinds. The common manufactures of Persia are found here, viz. silk and cotton stuffs, carpets, besides some other articles, which make this a place of considerable trade.

This city is much pestered with scorpions, especially the black kind, reckoned the most venomous. Their sting proves mortal in a few days, nay, even hours, if proper remedies be not applied. The cure used by the Persians is, to anoint the wound with the oil of these animals, extracted by frying. Of this oil they have generally a quantity in reserve. If it is wanting, they bruise any scorpion, and apply it to the part affected. Either of these remedies, taken in due time, seldom fail of success. The Persians have such a dread of these creatures, that, when provoked by a

ny person, they wish a Kashan scorpion may sting him. They are the more terrible, as few houses are free from them ; for most of the floors being of earth, and covered with carpets or mats, below these the scorpions find or make holes for themselves, where they lurk unseen. They do not, indeed, often hurt, unless touched suddenly. It is adviseable for all travellers to examine diligently the place where they are to sleep, before they go to bed. As the scorpion is well known, it will be unnecessary to say any more of it.

The 5th, we reached Buzabbatt, five agatz from Kashan. The weather was very hot. At this place I saw a creature called the stellio, or tarantula, and by the Persians inkureck. It is in shape and size somewhat like a large spider, but overgrown with hair. I was informed that it neither stings nor bites, but drops its venom upon the skin, which is of such a nature that it immediately penetrates into the body, and causes

causes dreadful symptoms ; such as giddiness of the head, a violent pain in the stomach, and a lethargic stupifaction. The remedy, as in the former case, is the application of the same animal, when bruised, to the part, by which the poison is extracted. They also make the patient drink abundance of sweet milk, after which he is put in a kind of tray, suspended by ropes fixed in the four corners ; it is turned round till the ropes are twisted hard together ; and, when let go at once, the untwining causes the basket to run round, with a quick motion, which forces the patient to vomit.

They also make them dance to musical instruments, which the sick person sometimes does, of his own accord, till he drops down upon the spot. One of these terrible creatures happened to fall out of the ceiling upon my hand, as I was going one night to bed ; I shook it off instantaneously, without receiving the least harm. Every thing near was moved, and searched for it, but to no purpose, there being many holes

holes in the floor. It may easily be imagined that apprehension would prevent my sleeping much that night.

The 6th, we travelled five or six agatz to Kaltabbatt; and the next day five, to Nattanee, a small town situated under some high mountains. Here the Shach has a pretty little palace, with gardens, fountains of fine water, and cascades. We lodged in the palace. The jackals were so bold, that they howled under the windows all the night long, and carried off some of our poultry. On the top of a mountain, near this place, stands a high tower, built by Shach Abbabs, which is seen at a great distance.

The 8th, we left Nattanee, and in three hours passed a fine house, with gardens, built by Shach Abbabs, and situated by itself in a pleasant plain. About three hours after, we came to Tutrin, an old caravansery, where we lodged. The heat increased daily as we advanced to the south. The 9th, we reached Ruck, eight agatz distant from

from Tutrin, and four hours journey from the city of Ispahan.

The 10th, being the vernal equinox, when the new year commences among the Persians, we halted all day. In the evening, thirty fine horses, with rich furniture, were sent from the Shach's stables to the ambassador. Some of the bridles were ornamented with gold, others with silver. Two lions were brought by a Persian to be shown to the ambassador. They were led into a court-yard, and let loose upon a goat; but, instead of the goat, they ran at some of our people, who narrowly escaped, by getting into a house, and shutting the doors. It seems the sight of so many strangers had frightened them; for the keeper himself with difficulty chained them, and one of them even bit his hand.

The 11th, we advanced two agatz, to Davilett-abbatt, a village.

On the morning of the 13th, the May-mander Basha, or chief conductor, arrived with

with many attendants. In the evening we mounted, and, being accompanied with a numerous train of courtiers, and other people, we travelled two agatz to the suburbs of the city, where we lodged in a palace called Tuchtzy, belonging to the Shach.

The 14th, in the morning, came a number of horses sufficient for the ambassador and all his train; this being the day appointed for our public entry.

About noon, the Maymander Bâsha returned, to conduct the ambassador to his lodgings in the city. He was attended by many persons of distinction.

After noon, we mounted, and entered the city. We passed through many streets crowded with spectators, as were also the tops of the houses. It was said that the Sophy himself was at a window, *incognito*, with some of his ladies. Curiosity had caused such a crowd, that, had not the way been cleared by the Persian guards, it would have been impossible for us to pass along.

along. At last, we reached the end of our journey; a noble palace, in the middle of the city, with a garden, three courts, and apartments sufficient for the ambassador and all his retinue.

The Order of the Entry.

An officer.

Three dragoons.

A kettle-drum.

Four trumpets.

Thirty dragoons, three a-breast, with drawn
Swords.

Six spare horses, with sumptuous trappings.

The steward.

Twelve footmen.

Two pages.

Three footmen.

Two interpreters.

Two hey-dukes in Hungarian habits.

The

THE JOURNEY 1717.

The ambassador, with the maymander,
Basha, and interpreter.

The priest and one gentleman.

Myself and one gentleman.

Two clerks.

Faulconers, huntsmen, &c.

C H A P.

C H A P. VI.

*Occurrences during our Stay at Is-
pahan.*

THE 15th, the agents of the English
and Dutch factories, viz. Mr Coppin
the English agent, sent Messieurs Batson
and Reynardson, the Dutch agent likewise
sent two gentlemen of their company, to
salute the ambassador.

The 16th, the Maymander Basha invited
the ambassador to an audience of the Etma-
dowlett, or prime minister, which he would
not comply with, till he had an audience
of the Shach, and delivered his credentials,
though it is usual first to take an audience

VOL. I. P of

of that minister. This day I visited the English factory, where I met with a friendly reception.

On the 27th was a great fall of rain, such as had not been at Ispahan for seven years: It was the cause of great joy in this sultry dry climate, though to me it seemed nothing extraordinary.

April 1st, I went to Julfa to see a friend, accompanied by Mr Batson. It is a large place in the suburbs, inhabited by Armenians, who have the free exercise of the Christian religion. On the 10th, I dined at the Dutch house, the weather very hot.

May 4th, the ceremonial part of the ambassador's introduction to the Shach being previously agreed on, he was this day to have his first audience. In the morning horses were sent from the King's stables, all of them magnificently equipped, with grooms to attend them; many of the saddles and bridles were garnished with gold and silver.

We

We marched in the same order as at our entry above mentioned, only the dragoons had not their swords drawn. After passing through several streets, we came to the great market place, called Bazar, and then to a gate called Alla-capy, i. e. God's-gate, where we dismounted. Across this gate is hung a chain, and none are permitted to enter on horseback except the Shach himself. We walked through the guards, drawn up on each side, to an inner court, and thence to an arched gate, surrounded with benches, and spread with carpets. Here the ambassador was desired to sit down till the Shach was ready to receive him. We waited at least two hours, during which time, all the ministers of state, and officers of the household, passed us in great state; after them came a large elephant, mounted by his keeper, and adorned with gold and silver stuff; then two large lions, led by their keepers with chains of massy gold.

When

When this parade was over, an officer informed the ambassador that the Shach waited for him : Whereupon, proceeding immediately through the gate, we entered a spacious garden. The first thing that presented, was a noble view of twenty horses standing in a row, richly caparisoned, having all their saddles and bridles ornamented with gold and silver, and some of them set with saphires, emeralds, and other precious stones, of great value ; the horses were all tied to a rope fixed to the ground, at the extremities, by a stake of gold, near which lay a mallet of the same metal for driving it, according to the custom of Persia ; the hind-feet were also fastened to a rope, to prevent kicking ; this is an excellent precaution, for, tho' they were all stoned horses, they could neither hurt one another, nor any thing else ; the chains that bound their hind-feet, with the stakes, and mallets, were also of gold. The Persian horses are well managed, neither do I think them so vicious as those in Europe ; whether they

are

are naturally more gentle. I shall not determine, perhaps it is intirely owing to the milder treatment of their grooms. At each end of the row stood a large vessel of gold full of water, for the horses to drink.

Approaching nearer to the hall of audience, we passed the two lions, chained to the ground, one on each side of the passage; near them were placed two basons of gold, filled with water, for drink; next to the lions stood the elephant, with his keeper on his back. As the ambassador passed, both the lions couched, and the elephant benthis fore-knee, at a word pronounced by the keepers.

We now turned to the left, and had a full view of the hall of audience, about an hundred yards distant. It seemed to stand by itself in the middle of the garden; it is indeed contiguous to the seraglio on the south, but is quite open to the north. Before the entry is a large fountain of pure water, which springs upward in three pipes,
and

and falls into a bason filled with roses, jef-samine, and many other fine flowers.

When we came to the stair, we were desired to put off our slippers, and our servants were no further admitted. The ambassador only and six of his retinue (among whom I was) entered the hall. We ascended by eight steps of marble, the whole breadth of the hall. From the roof hung a canvas, which was stretched out over the stair, and shaded the whole inside of the edifice. The hall is a spacious square building, with a terrace roof ; the cieling is very magnificant, being all arched, and set with mirrors of different magnitudes till within three feet of the floor, which is quite covered with silk carpets, interwoven with branches and foliage of gold and silver. In the middle were two basons, into which several pipes, each about eight feet high, spouted water, which, falling upon roses and other flowers, has a fine effect on a hot day. The farther end of the hall is a semicircle ; here sat the Shach upon a sofa,

sofa, raised about a foot from the floor, which was elevated four steps above the rest of the hall: He was attended by twenty eunuchs; one carried his sabre, another his bow; a third the quiver with arrows, a fourth the calianne, or tobacco-pipe; so that each had his office of state.

The ambassador was received in the hall by the master of the ceremonies, called Ishaggan Basha, to be by him introduced to the Shach. He continued sitting upon his sofa, with his legs across, while all his ministers of state stood in their places, clothed magnificently in their robes; which they never wear except on solemn days; and, when these are over, they leave them in a wardrobe at court, appointed for keeping them. I must confess the appearance was very splendid, and put me in mind of the accounts left us by the ancients, of the magnificence of the Kings of Persia.

At our entry into the hall, we were stopped about three minutes at the first fountain, in order to raise the greater respect; the

the pipes were contrived to play so high, that the water fell into the basin like a thick rain ; nothing could be discovered for some time, and the Shach himself appeared as in a fog. While we moved forward, every thing was as still as death ; the master of the ceremonies took the ambassador by the arm, and conducted him within six yards of the throne, who offering to advance, in order to deliver his credentials, was prevented by the Etmadowlett, or prime minister ; this minister received the credentials, and laid them before the Shach, who touched them with his hand, as a mark of respect. This part of the ceremony had been very difficult to adjust ; for the ambassador insisted on delivering his letters into the Shach's own hands ; the Persian ministers, on the other hand, affirmed, that their Kings never received letters directly from the ambassadors of the greatest Emperors on earth.

The ambassador now made a short speech, which the Sophy answered, through the

Etma-

Etmadowlett, in very obliging terms. He then inquired after his Czarish Majesty's health, and asked several questions about the Swedish war, and whether the ambassador had suffered any hardships on the road during so long a journey? To all which he returned answers suitable to the occasion. At last he was desired to take his seat, to which he was led by the master of the ceremonies: It was about a foot high, and placed at the distance of ten yards from the King. A little behind the ambassador were placed his attendants, on seats nearly of the same height. During all this ceremony, music played, consisting of a variety of instruments, which are not unharmonious, and the mufti, or high priest, read, without intermission, chapters of the Koran.

Before the ambassador was seated, the presents from his Czarish Majesty to the Sophy, carried by fifty men, were brought to the entry, and received by the proper officers: They consisted of sables, and other valuable furs, falcons, a variety of fine tea,

VOL. I.

Q

musical

musical clocks, gold watches set in diamonds, &c.

As soon as the ambassador had taken his seat, all the ministers of state sat down on their hams, on both sides of the hall, in rows; for none are allowed to sit cross legged in presence of the Sophy.

There was now placed before the company little tables, on which were set all kinds of sweat-meats and confections; and before the ambassador was laid a golden calianne, or tobacco-pipe, which the Persians reckon an high instance of respect.

The music continued playing, and the mufti still continued reading; but every thing else was very silent. Several messages passed between the King and the ambassador, by means of the master of the ceremonies, and our interpreter. The King spoke the Persian language, and the ambassador the Russian, while the other two used the Turkish.

In the mean time, some pure water, with a bit of ice in it, was brought in golden bas-

fons

sions to drink. About an hour after, victuals were brought by a number of servants, who carried them on their heads, in large square baskets. First the Shach was served, and next the ambassador with his retinue; then all the officers of state that sat in the hall. The grand steward of the household waited on the King, and his assistants on the rest of the company, according to their different ranks. At the same time our servants were entertained in the garden.

The entertainment consisted mostly of different kinds of rice boiled with butter, fowls, mutton, boiled and roasted lamb. The whole was served in large gold or china dishes, and placed in the baskets, which stood on a long cloth spread above the carpet. The dishes were interspersed with saucers filled with aromatic herbs, sugar, and vinegar. But, according to the custom of the country, we had neither napkins, spoons, knives, nor forks; for the Shach himself eat with his fingers, and every.

every one followed his example. There were indeed, besides the common bread, some very large thin cakes, which we used instead of napkins, to wipe our fingers. They are made of wheat-flour ; the Persians sometimes eat them ; they are not disagreeable. Our drink was sherbet, and water cooled with ice. Formerly it was usual, on such occasions, to drink wine, and have women to dance and sing. But the present Sophy, being a sober and devout prince, thought it proper to abolish a custom productive of so many indecencies, and directly contrary to the rules of the Koran. We had therefore only men to sing, and no dancing.

The ambassador, and all the gentlemen who were admitted into the hall, continued with their heads covered during all the time of the audience. They only, on entering the royal presence, uncovered once, and bowed to his majesty.

When the entertainment was over, the ambassador took his leave, and returned to his

his lodgings, conducted by the Maymander Basha, in the same manner as in the morning. The streets were lined with the Sophy's guards to prevent any inconvenience from the vast crowds of people.

The same evening the Shach sent a present to the ambassador of the golden caliphane he had used at court ; it was neatly wrought in filigree, and valued at forty or fifty pounds Sterling ; also twenty large dishes of solid gold, filled with variety of sweet-meats. Those who brought them returned immediately, leaving the plate ; which remained at the ambassador's lodgings above six weeks. All this time it was uncertain whether such a valuable treasure was forgot, or intended as a present. The dishes however were at last demanded, and delivered. They weighed about thirty pounds a-piece, but were of mean workmanship, being all beat out with a hammer. From this, and many similar instances, some conception may be formed of the immense

immense riches whereof the Sophy is possessed.

The Shach's name is Houssein ; he is about thirty years of age, of a middle stature, open countenance, and has a short black beard. It is said his legs are remarkably short, in proportion to his body. He is very good natured, and of a beneficent disposition. He has several children by different ladies. Tachmaz the oldest, at present in his minority, seldom appears out of the Haram. Houssein himself, though a prince adorned with many virtues, yet being educated in the Haram among the women, is little acquainted with the world, and leaves the management of the empire wholly to his ministers : In them he places an entire confidence ; and they, in their turn, persuade him that it is below his dignity to attend to any public affairs whatever. At this very time there was a formidable rebellion begun at Chandahar, a strong town on the borders of India, by Mery-Mahmut, an enterprising and powerful

erful chief, who took advantage of the weakness of the present administration.

The Persian ministry neglected and despised these rebels, threatening, in their style, to send some troops to cut them all to pieces. Time hath shown the vanity of these high words. I must observe that they wanted neither men nor money ; but their soldiers were undisciplined, and, above all, they had no officers of sufficient abilities to command them.

The 9th of May, the ambassador had his first audience of the Etmadowlett. We were conducted in the same manner as when we went to court. The entertainment was likewise of the same kind, but much more magnificent. The palace was grand, and had a fine garden adjoining. The Etmadowlett, whose name is Phataly-chan, was by birth a Georgian, of Christian parents, but educated in the seraglio. He is a tall well-shaped man, of a friendly aspect, and a great favourite of the Sophy. After we returned home, the Etmadowlett sent

sent the ambassador a present of a fine horse, with a saddle and bridle, richly mounted, after the Persian fashion, and a gold calianne, little inferior to that given by the Shach. It was reported that no foreign ambassador had ever been treated with so much respect.

The 11th, the ambassador had a second audience of the Sophy, at the same palace as formerly, called Tavalea Telear, i. e. the palace near the stables; it was very short, and no entertainment was given. Next day he received from the Shach a present of some excellent Sherras wine, and a gold bottle, that contained about two quarts, with a small cup of the same metal.

On the 15th, the ambassador had a second audience of the Etmadowlett, relating to the subject of the embassy.

Three days after, the Hackim Basha, or chief physician, sent me an invitation to visit him. He received me in a very courteous obliging manner; and detained me above two hours, talking on different subjects.

jects. He told me, that the physicians in Persia made vegetables, and their virtues, their chief study; they dealt but little in minerals and chemical preparations. Then he asked me whether the European physicians admitted opium in their prescriptions? I told him they did with great success. To which he replied, that the qualities of that drug were known to very few. He inquired whence tea came? how it should be made? and what were its virtues? All which I answered to his satisfaction. Hence it is evident that the Persians have no correspondence nor commerce with the Chinese. The physician is an elderly man, of a grave deportment, and might pass for a doctor any where. On taking my leave, he told me he was sorry he could not converse with me but by means of an interpreter, which was tedious and disagreeable.

The same day the Dutch commissary, Myn-heer Vonkettler, made his public entry at Ispahan, as envoy from the gover-

nour of Batavia to the Shach of Persia. He was preceded by six elephants, sent as a present to the King by the governour. He had a numerous retinue, and was attended by several gentlemen, and made as grand an appearance as if he had been a minister from any court of Europe. He took up his lodgings at the Dutch factory. Mr Kettler told me, that he was born in Courland; that, in his youth, he enlisted as a soldier in the service of the Dutch East-India company; by his uncommon abilities he had raised himself from that low situation to the honourable place he now held.

The following day Mr Kettler sent two of his retinue to compliment our ambassador: And, both our gentlemen being indisposed, I was sent next day to return the compliment.

The 28th, I dined at the Dutch house, where we had a grand entertainment.

June 2d, the ambassador intended to go a hunting, and to take a view of the country

try about Ispahan. But an officer came from court, desiring him to delay it till another opportunity ; for the Shach had pitched on that day to visit a country-house, in company with his ladies ; on which occasions it is death for any one to be seen near the place where the court passes. To prevent accidental transgressions in this respect, a cryer is previously despatched to warn the inhabitants, who proclaims through the streets, and along the road, that nobody, under pain of death, shall appear either in the way, or from any house near it, by which his majesty and the ladies are to march. The Shach rides on horseback, attended only by eunuchs. The ladies are mounted astride, some on horses, others on mules and asses. They are all veiled with white muslin, so that nothing can be seen of them but the eyes and nose.

The Persians tell a pleasant story of Shach Abbas's behaviour on an occasion of this nature. The Shach at a certain time

time was riding along, attended by his concubines, when he happened to meet a poor country-fellow upon the road. He was immediately brought before the King, and, expecting instant death, fell on his knees, most submissively begging pardon for so heinous an offence, and pleaded ignorance in his excuse, having neither seen nor heard of any cryer. The prince was pleased with the simplicity and innocence of the peasant, ordered him to take courage, and all the ladies to unyeil ; then desired him to pick out any of his concubines he liked best, and he should have her for a wife. This treatment dispelled his fear ; he pitched on one that pleased him most. The Shach approved so much of his taste that he carried him to court, where he soon became a great favourite.

The 9th, I dined at the English factory, where Mr Coppin, and the other gentlemen belonging to the company, received me in the most friendly manner. The day was very hot, and in the evening we supped

ped near a fountain in the garden. On a sudden we felt a gust of wind, as hot as if it had come from the mouth of an oven. It was soon over without any bad effect. But I was informed that these hot winds are very dangerous, in travelling over the deserts, and often kill people immediately. The only resource, on perceiving them coming, is to fall down flat, with the face to the ground, and continue in that posture till they are gone.

On the 12th, the ambassador had a third audience of the Shach at Farrabbatt, a country-house near the city. It is an extremely pleasant place, adorned with gardens, fountains, and cascades, surrounded with parks for all kinds of game: While we were at supper on the terrace, we had a squal of wind, which almost carried away every thing, and actually swept off the thin broad cakes, which the Persians use instead of napkins.

The 16th, Monsieur Ricard, whom I mentioned at Tauris, and twelve missionaries

ties of different orders, were invited to dine with the ambassador. Several of these gentlemen had been long in India and Ethiopia, which rendered their conversation very entertaining.

The 21st, the ambassador was invited to dinner by the devettar, or keeper of the great seal and standish. Here, as in all other countries, this is an office of great trust. We were entertained with more magnificence than by the prime minister, or even at court. Soon after we entered, there were served up a great variety of sweet-meats, and all kinds of fruit that the climate afforded. Coffee and sherbet were carried about by turns. We were placed cross-legged on the carpets, except the ambassador, who had a seat. During this part of the feast we were entertained with vocal and instrumental music, dancing boys, tumblers, puppets, and juglers : All the performers executed their parts with great dexterity. Two of them counterfeiting a quarrel, one beat off the other's turban

turban with his foot, out of which dropped about fifteen or twenty large serpents, which run or crawled about the room. One of them came towards me, with great speed, which soon obliged me to quit my place. On seeing us alarmed, they told us the creatures were altogether inoffensive, as their teeth had been all drawn out. The fellow went about the room and gathered them again into his turban, like so many eels. The viuctuals were now served in a neat and elegant manner. Every thing was well dressed in the Persian fashion. Our host was very cheerful, and contributed every thing in his power to please his guests. He excused himself handsomely enough for not having wine, as it was not then used at court.

On the 23d, the Maymander Basha brought a message from the Shach to the ambassador, intimating, that the business of his embassy being now finished, he might choose his own time to depart. This was not very agreeable news to the ambassador, who

who alledged, that, before he could procure shipping, to transport him to Astrachan, the season would be far advanced, and oblige him to winter in some part of Persia.

July 1st, the Shach sent the ambassador, and the principal parts of his retinue, what the Persians call the kalatt. It consists of a tunic, a long rob of gold and silver stuff, a fash and turban, and some pieces of Persian silk, whereof about ten or a dozen fell to my share. The whole value was not considerable ; but the Shach bestows this mark of favour to all foreign ministers who come on friendly errands. On this occasion he sent the ambassador, in particular, a present of two fine horses from his own stables.

The 3d, the ambassador had his last audience of the Shach, at a palace in the city ; when he received an answer to the Czar's letter, and immediately took leave standing, without further ceremony.

The

The 8th, the Shach sent the ambassador another present, consisting of an elephant, two lions, two leopards, six monkeys of different kinds, three parrots, two white and one green, three fine horses, and an Indian bird, called myana ; it is in colour, shape, and size, like a black-bird, and whistled a very fine note.

August the 3d, we began to prepare for our journey homeward, which took up much time. The 18th, we removed from our lodgings in the city to a house belonging to the Shach, in the northern suburbs, called Tauchtzy.

The 26th, I took leave of my friend Mr Coppin, who set out this day on his journey to England, by way of Aleppo. The English factory at Ispahan are very well situated in the middle of the city, have a spacious garden adjoining, and are separated from the rest of the town by a wall. Most of the great houses in the city are surrounded in the same manner, which renders it very extensive.

Ispahan is situated nearly in thirty-two degrees north latitude, on a fruitful plain, in the province of Hierack, anciently the kingdom of the Parthians. About three or four English miles distant from the city, to the south, runs an high ridge of mountains from east to west. Shach Abbass the Great transferred the seat of the Persian government from Casbin to this place.

Ispahan is plentifully supplied with water from the river Schenderoo, which runs between the city and the suburbs, keeping its course to the north. It rises near the city, and is fordable almost every where, unless during great rains, which seldom happen. After passing this place, its course is but short, for it soon loses itself in dry parched plains. Over the Schenderoo there are three stately stone-bridges in sight of one another; but the one in the middle, betwixt the city and that part of the suburbs called Julpha, which terminates the spacious street Tzar-bach, far exceeds any structure

structure of that kind I ever saw. It is broad enough for two carriages and a horseman to pass a-breast, and has galleries on each side, which are covered, for the convenience of people on foot ; and watchmen are stationed at each end, to prevent disorders. There are few houses in the town which have not their chauses, i. e. cisterns of water, conveyed in pipes from the river : A most salutary and refreshing circumstance, in such a dry and sultry climate.

The city is populous, and, as I already observed, very extensive. As most of the inhabitants have their houses apart, surrounded with gardens, planted with fruit and other trees, at a distance it appears like a city in a forest, and affords a very agreeable prospect.

The streets are generally very narrow and irregular, except that leading to the great bridge, already mentioned. This noble street is very broad and straight, and near an English mile in length. On each

side

side are the King's palaces, courts of justice, and the academies for the education of youth, with two rows of tall chinar trees, which afford a fine shade. These trees have a smooth whitish bark, and a broad leaf, like the plane-tree. At certain distances, there are fountains of water that play continually, round which are spread carpets ; and thither the Persians resort to drink coffee, smoke tobacco, and hear news ; which, I must confess, is very agreeable in hot weather.

About half a mile below the city is a fine plain upon the banks of the river, where the Persians, every evening, exercise their horses in riding, and accustom them to the discharge of fire-arms. They also shoot at butts with bows and arrows, and throw blunted darts at one another ; at which they appear very dextrous.

The city is almost quite defenceless, having only a slight wall round it, built of mud dried by the sun, which is broken down in many places ; so that, if the army is defeated

feated in the field, Isahan cannot defend itself one day ; for even all the artillery I saw, consisted of about twenty brass cannon, which stood in the grand court before the palace-gate, and were more for parade than real use.

The houses here, as in other places of Persia, are generally built with bricks hardened by the sun. The roofs are flat, and covered with a terrace. They make but a mean appearance from the street, though within they are neat and clean, and very convenient for the Persian manner of life. The Shach's palaces, the public edifices, and the houses of all persons of distinction, are built with stone.

As the streets are not paved, when it is windy, the city is sometimes involved in such a cloud of dust, that the sun is scarcely visible. This obliges the inhabitants to water the streets at least every evening. These gusts of wind are very disagreeable ; but they happen seldom, and are of short duration.

At

At Ispahan are many manufactories of silk and cotton, and a great many silk worms in the neighbourhood. As the consumption of silk is very considerable at this place, little of it is exported. The making carpets, however, employs the greatest number of hands ; for which the demand is great, as they are preferable in quality, design, and colour, to any made elsewhere.

The fields about the city are very fertile, and produce plentiful crops of excellent wheat and barley ; but then they must all be watered, on account of the dryness of the soil, which is a work of labour and expence. Besides these, I saw no other grain.

The Persians tread out their corn with oxen or asses. For this purpose, they make a circle, about twenty or thirty feet in diameter, on the circumference whereof the sheaves are laid. There is a light sledge or hurdle drawn by the cattle, in which the driver sits, and directs them round and round, as often as is necessary ; and new sheaves

.sheaves are always added when the former ones are trodden sufficiently. This operation also softens the straw, and renders it very good provender. There is no hay in Persia ; and the best horses are kept in a condition for any service by this food, and a small quantity of dried barley twice a day.

They have flocks of large sheep, whereof the mutton is very good, but the wool coarse. In the province of Karamenia, indeed, they have exceeding fine wool, some of which I have seen little inferior to silk. Their horned cattle are buffalos, which afford them milk, and are used in plowing the ground, and drawing carriages. They have also the common kind of cattle of different sizes. The better sort of people eat chiefly mutton and fowls, but very little beef.

Besides the cattle I have mentioned, there is another kind, having a high rising upon the shoulder, with clean limbs, which are very handsome.

As

As I have formerly observed, that the Persians make use of ice to cool their water in summer, it may be asked, where are got such quantities, in so hot a climate, as are daily sold in the streets for that purpose? I was informed, that there were people who made it their business to watch the frosty nights, in the winter season; on which occasions they went to the mountains near the city, and threw water on certain places, which being frozen, they continued to repeat the operation till the ice was of convenient thickness; then they cut it in pieces, and carry it into caves, hewn in the rocks, where it is preserved during the summer. What they cannot carry off before the sun rises is covered, to defend it from his heat.

While I remained at Ispahan, I visited the Shach's aviary. It contains a great variety of all kinds of birds, many of which had come from India, and other foreign parts. Among the rest were a couple of turkeys, which it seems are rare birds in Persia.

Perisia. The place is very neat and elegant. The aviary is about fifteen feet high, and covered with a net-work of brass-wire, to prevent the birds flying away.

Provisions of all kinds are very dear at Ispahan, which is sufficiently apparent from the number of poor that go about the streets. Nothing, however, is so extravagantly high as fire-wood.

The Roman catholics have three convents in the city, viz. those of the Carmelites, Capuchins, and Augustins. The Jesuits and Dominicans have their separate convents in the suburbs of Julpha, which is inhabited by Armenians, who are allowed the free exercise of their religion.

There is a considerable number of Jews in the city, who are either merchants or mechanics.

In the neighbourhood of the city is a tribe of people, called by the Persians Giaur, who worship fire, being the posterity of the ancient inhabitants of this coun-

VOL. I. T try,

try, who paid divine honours to that element. They are a poor indolent race, and live in nasty huts, or in tents. They speak a different language from the Persians; have black hair, and are of a swarthy complexion. They have some sheep and cattle; but many of them go about the streets beginning.

About three or four miles to the southward of the city, are to be seen the ruins of a tower on the top of a mountain, where it is said Darius sat when Alexander the Great fought the second battle with the Persians. I was also told, that, about two days journey from Ispahan, are distinguishable the remains of the tomb of Queen Esther, a lady celebrated in holy writ for many virtues. These, and many other places, I intended to have examined on the spot, but was unluckily prevented, for want of time.

While we lay at Tauchtzy, waiting for horses and camels, two of our servants were stung with scorpions; but were soon cured,

cured, by timely application of the oil of scorpions, prepared after the Persian manner, without any other remedy. The jackals made a dismal howling under our windows every night.

I have now finished my observations on whatever seemed most remarkable in and about the city of Ispahan. I shall only add, that, among the many lofty and pompous titles which this mighty monarch assumes, there are some very extraordinary; of which I shall mention one, ‘ That the greatest kings of the earth may think it an honour to drink out of his horses’ footsteps.’ Several more instances might be given, in the Oriental style, fully as extravagant.

The Shach’s Palaces.

1. Tzel Sootun, or that of forty pillars.
2. Tevela Telear, near the stables.

3. Hasta-

3. Hafta-Behasi, chambers of paradise.
4. Othiat Tallard, near the Haram.
5. Guldesta, house of eunuchs.
6. Tauchtzy, at the north entry.
7. Farrabbatt, south-east from the city.

Persia is at present divided into sixteen provinces, many of them of great extent. I shall mention their present names, and, under them, those they seem to have borne among the ancients.

1. Turkomania,
Great Armenia.
2. Diarbeck.
Mesopatamia.
3. Kurdistan,
Part of Affyria.
4. Hierack Arabee,
Chaldea, or Babylon.
5. Hierack Aggemy,
Region of the Parthians.
6. Shirvan,

6. Shirvan,
Towards the north-west coast of the
Caspian Sea.
7. Guilan and Mesanderan,
Hyrcania.
8. Astrabatt,
Margiana.
9. Usbeck,
Bactria.
10. Koraffan,
Aria.
11. Sablestan,
Parapomisia.
12. Sigistan,
Drangiana.
13. Arachosia.
14. Machran.
15. Karamenia,
Reaching to the gulph of Ormus.
16. Pharsistan,
Old Persia, whereof Persepolis was
the capital city.

I have added the ancient names according to the best information I could procure ; for, under the various revolutions of this country, the records have been almost wholly either lost or destroyed : So that the Persians themselves know very little of the ancient history of their country.

C H A P,

C H A P. VII.

From Ispahan to Shamachy ; occurrences during our stay there.

SEPTEMBER 1st, having procured horses and camels, and every thing necessary, and having also got a conductor from the Shach, we this day left Ispahan in order to return to Russia. We travelled short stages along the same road by which we came to Ispahan. Little material happened for a considerable time, and I shall not repeat what I formerly observed ; I shall only take notice, that many of the places through which we passed were much infested by strong gangs of highway-men.

We

We were therefore obliged to travel very cautiously, and to keep our people together near the baggage, but particularly to procure a safe caravansery for our lodgings. The weather continuing very hot, was the reason of our making easy marches ; and these chiefly in the mornings and evenings, and sometimes in the night, when it could be done with safety.

We travelled in this manner till the 26th of September, when we arrived at a village called Arrazant, where we lodged. Next day, instead of pursuing the same route by Tauris, we turned to the right, and took the road leading to Casbin and Guilan.

The 27th, we proceeded five agatz to Membereck ; and the 28th four, to the city of Casbin. This place is situated in a spacious plain, having a ridge of high mountains to the north. I mentioned formerly, that Casbin was once the seat of government, and the residence of the Persian monarchs. There are still to be seen the ruins of many stately mosques, palaces, and

and other public edifices. The city appears to have been, in former times, very large and flourishing, but is now much contracted and decayed.

The plague raged here all the preceding summer, which had almost depopulated the place: And, although the fury of that contagious distemper was much abated, people continued to die daily, which made us resolved to remain no longer than was absolutely necessary, in order to prepare things for our journey to Guilan. This could not be soon accomplished at a time of such public calamity.

In the mean time, many of our people were seized with pestilential fevers, who all recovered but one. He died suddenly, with the usual symptoms of the plague. I and several of our people were likewise taken with fevers, occasioned by our being lodged in houses where the Persians had lately died. These circumstances made the ambassador resolve to leave the place at all events. During the time therefore

which we were obliged to wait for horses and camels, we removed out of town about a mile, to a garden belonging to the Shach, provided for us by the commandant of the city and province. Here we set up our tents ; and in this situation, by the help of free air and good water, our people recovered surprisingly ; so that, in a short time, most of them were able to ride, another gentleman only and myself were carried in litters between two mules.

The 12th of October we set out again, pursuing our journey northward. After travelling about two leagues through a plain, we ascended an high and steep mountain, and, proceeding onward about a league, came to a small village where we lodged. All the inhabitants had forsaken their houses. Whatever else was wanting, we had here the comfort of pure air, which had such an effect on me, that next day I was able to mount on horseback, though, at setting out, I was scarcely in condition

condition to bear the easy motion of the litter.

We continued our journey, ascending and descending many steep rocks and mountains for four days, when we arrived at Menzyly, a little town situated in a charming valley ; where grow abundance of citrons, oranges, olives, beside grapes and other fruits. These I own were tempting objects ; but sad experience taught many of us to value them no more than floes or bramble berries. Menzyly is governed by a *kalentar* or judge ; it is a pretty romantic place, encompassed by high mountains on all sides, which decline to the north, and are covered with grass. This is a rare sight in Persia, and is caused by the great autumnal rains ; for along the south coast of the Caspian Sea, it rains at this season, almost without intermission, for the space of six weeks or two months. In this and the neighbouring villages are bred a great number of silk-worms, which produce the best and greatest quantities of raw silk made

made in the province of Guilan ; from whence it is exported by the Armenian merchants, partly through Russia to Holland, and partly by land to Aleppo, for the Levant trade.

Having staid two days at Menzyly, we set out again in heavy rains, through deep roads, which greatly incommoded our camels ; for they often slipped, and sometimes fell down under their burthens : However, in five days we reached Reshd, the capital of the province of Guilan.

Reshd stands in a plain, surrounded with great woods on every side, about a day's journey from the nearest shore of the Caspian Sea, where is a very good harbour for ships of small burthen.

The houses are thinly scattered, resembling rather a large village than a town. As the ground at this place is very flat, the inhabitants are obliged to chuse the dryest places to build on. In the market place, I saw about eight pieces of cannon, mounted on sorry carriages ; among which was a

neat

neat brass field-piece, with the name of that noted Prince the Duke of Holstein Gottorp upon it: It seems to have been left here accidentally by the ambassadors of that Duke to the then Shach of Persia.

The houses are mean, in comparison with those in other parts of Persia; the roofs are raised and tiled, to carry off the great falls of rain.

The marshes and pools, with which Reshd is surrounded, renders it very unhealthy, especially in the heat of summer, when it is often visited with the pestilence; and, although it is a place of the greatest plenty, the inhabitants look as half starved. I was told they were obliged to confine themselves to a scanty diet; that, if they allowed themselves the least indulgence, even so far as to eat their rice with butter, they were liable to agues, the reigning distemper in this climate. Many of our people were actually seized with these agues, though none of them proved mortal. Here, as at the capitals of the other

ther provinces, we were obliged to remain a considerable time, much longer than we inclined : For every province bears the expence of ambassadors, from the time they arrive at its capital, till they reach the capital of the next province, where fresh supplies of money and cattle are to be procured. The obtaining these things, and the rainy weather, detained us in this disagreeable place. The pools are full of frogs that chatter like magpies, and make such a loud croaking, besides their chattering, that a person cannot sleep till he is accustomed to that noise.

The country above Reshd is very fruitful, particularly in rice, which grows plentifully on the marshy grounds, and is sufficient to supply most of the other provinces of Persia ; there is also plenty of fruit natural to the climate. The Armenians, who inhabit Reshd, make good wine, both red and white ; and even in the woods you may see the vines, loaden with clusters of grapes, twisting about the trees, which are left

left to the birds, as they are not worth gathering amid such plenty.

Great flocks of fieldfares, thrushes, black-birds, with vast quantities of storks, cranes, swans, wild-geese, and all other kinds of water-fowl, come hither from the north, during the winter, and return to the northern regions in the spring.

The staple of Guilan is raw silk, of which they make great quantities, both for their own consumption and for exportation.

While we remained at Reshd, two ambassadors arrived from the Aijuka Chan, Prince of the Kolmuck-Tartars, in their way to Ispahan.

November 9th, we left Reshd, and travelled through thick woods to the shore, along which we kept to the left, in all about five agatz, and then lodged in a small empty village.

The 13th, we proceeded six agatz to a small town called Keshker. This day the road lay through pleasant woods. At some distance

distance from sea we met with some groves of orange trees, where we found blossoms, ripe and green fruit on the same tree. The great rains detained us some days at Keshker ; during which a new Maymander arrived from Ispahan, who arrested the former one for some fault he had committed on the road.

The 20th, we travelled from Keshker to the shore three agatz, and halted a little ; then along the shore four agatz farther ; and at midnight reached an empty village ; a disagreeable circumstance, after marching in constant rain the whole day, which had rendered the rivers almost impassable to camels.

From the 21st to the 27th, we advanced along the shore. The roads were very good. At last we came to a town called Aftara, where we halted for refreshment. There is nothing remarkable about this place, except its pleasant situation.

December 1st, we reached Siarakent, a large village. And next day Langgara, situated on the shore at the mouth of a river,

ver, an agatz distant from the former. And the 3d to Kyzillagatch, five agatz from Langgara. This day we passed along several large bridges, over very deep rivers. In great rains, and strong northerly winds, these rivers swell above their banks, and, spreading to a great extent round the bridges, render them impasable.

The 5th, we travelled five agatz to Tzamachava. I was surprised at the great flocks of water-fowl near this place: so numerous were they that one of our people killed eight geese at one discharge.

The 7th, we entered the plains of Mungan. I described what seemed most remarkable in this desert, when going southward, and shall not recapitulate any thing I formerly observed. The road was very good. We lodged at the river Bulgara, six agatz from Tzamachava; the water of the river is muddy and brackish. Next day we advanced seven agatz, and lodged again in tents; for there are no houses in

this plain, and only pit water, very brackish.

On the 9th, we travelled seven agatz to some small huts, beyond the river Kure, which we passed on a bridge of boats. We passed this river about a day's journey above this place, in going to Ispahan, when I made my remarks upon it. Seven agatz from these huts stands a place called Karakurody, the last stage in the desert, where we lodged on the 11th.

The 12th, we arrived at Shamachy, five agatz from the last stage. Since the time we left this place, it had suffered grievously by the plague, which raged here all the preceding summer. It was now much abated, though not quite extinguished. This was a disagreeable circumstance, many of our people were sickly, and two of them died of the distemper ; for the empty houses, where the Persians had died, notwithstanding every precaution, particularly smoking the walls, still proved infectious.

I was informed, that about seventy thousand persons had been carried off by the pestilence within the last eight months, in Shamachy and the province of Shirvan.

The 15th, my old acquaintance, Monsieur Yeiisky the Danzicker, whom I formerly mentioned, came to visit me. He was so altered by sickness that I scarce knew him. He told me what dismal havoc the plague had made, particularly in his own family. I asked, why he did not retire to the country for better air? His answer was, whither could he fly from God Almighty! This I find to be the general opinion of the Mahometans, both Persians and Turks. The same day I had a visit from Father Backond, the only missionary at present in these parts, his companion, Father Ricard, being dead of the plague.

The season being now far advanced, it became proper to pitch on some place for winter-quarters. The terrible pestilence which had prevailed so long, and with such destruction,

destruction, greatly deterred us from chusing this place. The superior convenience, however, of it, the present abatement of the plague, and chiefly because a province is not obliged to support the expences of an ambassador till he arrives at the capital, and several other reasons, determined us to winter at Shamachy.

January 15th, 1718, the chan came to town from the country, where he had been all the last summer.

The 21st, the ambassador paid the chan a visit, which was returned the 25th.

Nothing material happened during the winter; only we often heard of the bad success of the Shach's forces, which were sent to Chandahar against the rebel Mery Mahmut, and of many incursions into the Persian provinces, made by the mountain-eers who inhabit between the Black and Caspian Seas.

March 10th, one of our gentlemen, Monsieur Lopuchin, was sent away by land to Astrachan, with an elephant and
all

all the horses. He was escorted by thirty Russian soldiers, and some Astrachan Tatars. In his march, between Derbent and Terky, he was attacked by some hundreds of the mountaineers, called Shaffkalls, who killed one man and two horses, and wounded several men and the elephant. Meeting, however, with a warm reception, they thought proper to retire, but carried off three of the horses. The gentleman arrived safe, without any further misfortune, at Astrachan.

April 14th, ships, commanded by Captain Rente, arrived at Niezabatt, in order to transport the ambassador to Astrachan. He could not, however, proceed immediately to embark, for we were obliged to wait for an answer to an express, which the chan had despatched to Ispahan on affairs of importance, which did not return till the end of May. All of us impatiently desired to leave Shamachy before the great heat came on. In the mean time, we diverted ourselves with hunting. I went often to see

the

the silk-worms feeding on mulberry leaves. The inhabitants were apprehensive that the plague would break out again in the summer; and we had already buried twenty-two of our people since our arrival on the frontiers of Persia.

On the night of the eight of May, there was such flashes of lightning, as had not happened in the memory of man; though the night was dark, I could plainly see the cattle in the adjacent fields, by means of the coruscations; the lightning was accompanied with dreadful claps of thunder, which lasted above two hours.

C H A P.

C H A P. VIII.

From Shamachy to St Peterburgh.

JUNE 16th, we left Shamachy, and in four days arrived safe at Niezabatt, where we found ships waiting to receive us.

On the 21st, we began to load the vessels with all possible despatch, which was soon accomplished by the assistance of some Russ soldiers, who had wintered at this place. Since I have mentioned these soldiers, I shall briefly relate how they happened to be on this coast.

The people of Chiva, a territory (see p. 48.) eastward from the Caspian Sea, having several

several times robbed and plundered some caravans of Russian merchants going to Buccharia, his Czarish Majesty determined to send a small body of regular troops, and some Cossacks, to demand satisfaction for such outrages committed in time of peace. For this purpose, Mr Beckvitz, a captain of the guards, who was appointed to command in this expedition, repaired to Astrachan, in summer 1716, in order to make all the necessary preparations against next spring. Having accordingly embarked his men, provisions, and ammunition, at the proper season, he steered his course along the Caspian Sea, and landed at a place called Krasna-vooda, i. e. red water, as near to Chiva as he conveniently could. This place was barren and uninhabited. Having therefore moored his transports, he erected a small fort to secure his retreat, in case of accidents.

In the mean time, he sent a friendly message to the chan of Chiva, to notify his arrival, and to desire that he would furnish him

him with provisions and quarters for his men; for which he offered to pay ready money. The crafty Tartar returned for answer, that he might come to Chiva with the greatest safety, where all his demands should be granted. At the same time, sent him a present of fruits and fresh provisions, and guides to conduct him on the road, accompanied with the highest expressions of respect to his Czarish Majesty. Mr Beckvitz having left about three hundred men in the fort, to guard the camp and provisions, proceeded with the rest, and a few field-pieces, towards Chiva.

In three or four days he arrived in the neighbourhood of the town, where he was met by several of the chiefs, who came with compliments from the chan, and to settle matters relative to the cantonment of the soldiers. This particular was difficult to adjust.

Mr Beckvitz insisted, that all his men should be quartered in the town, and nothing but infatuation could have influenced

VOL. I.

Y

him

him to alter so prudent a resolution. But the Tartars started many objections against putting it in execution, and pretended that the chan and themselves were willing to agree to it, but the people were averse, and jealous of having so many armed men lodged within their walls; and therefore they proposed, as a means of quieting the minds of the people, that he should separate his men, in order to be quartered more conveniently in the adjacent villages, and that himself should have lodgings in the town, with a sufficient guard to attend him. This motion was strongly opposed by all the old officers, who looked on it as a stratagem laid for their destruction. And such in reality it proved in the end.

Mr Beckvitz, deluded by false promises, at last consented to canton his men. No sooner were they divided into small parties, than they were inclosed, and attacked by great numbers of Tartars, and most of them either killed or taken prisoners, who were afterwards sold for slaves. A few of them

them taking the alarm, stood to their arms, and made a brave defence for some time, endeavouring chiefly to regain their camp and ships ; but having a barren desert to pass, and the Tartar horse harassing them day and night, they were at last obliged to submit to fatal necessity. The imprudence of the general was the sole cause of all these misfortunes ; for, being in no want of provisions or ammunition, had he only kept his men together, the whole combined power of these Tartars could not have prevented his regaining the camp and shipping.

The camp was next attacked by the Tartars ; but they were repulsed by the garrison, which having now intelligence of what had passed at Chiva, demolished the fort, reembarked the men and stores, and set sail for Astrachan. The season was now too far advanced to gain that port ; this circumstance, together with hard gales of contrary winds, obliged them to put into Niezabatt, in order to pass the winter. Here they were hospitably received by the

Per-

Persians ; and the presence of the ambassador at Shamachy contributed greatly to the relief of these poor unfortunate people.

Unhappy Beckvitz himself happened to be taken prisoner. He was sent for to the chan's tent, on some pretence of business, where they first struck off his head, then, after venting their barbarous rage on his dead body, they skinned it, and, having stuffed the skin with straw, placed it, a miserable spectacle, on one of the city gates.

This unfortunate gentleman was the son of a petty prince, or chief of a tribe in Tzerkeffia, and had been sent to Russia in his infancy, as a hostage for his father's fidelity.

Being now on the point of departing from Persia, called by the Persians Iran, and also Pharsistan, I shall close what I have to offer regarding that country, by giving a list of the principal officers of state who attend that mighty monarch at the megilis, i. e. public audience of ambassadors ; they sit in the hall of audience according

eording to their respective ranks, and have all of them, on those occasions, magnificent capes, and robes of state, kept in the King's wardrobe for that purpose.

1. The Etmadowlett, prime minister.
2. Spasselaar, general in chief.
3. Kurtfy Basha, general of 12,000 men.
4. Kular-agaffy, director of the prisons.
5. Tfengy Basha, general of musketeers.
6. Ishek-agaffy Basha, master of ceremonies.
7. Divan Begg, chief justice.
8. Toptshy Basha, master of the ordnance.
9. Vaggian Aviz, secretary of state.
10. Merish-kaz Basha, grand falconer.
11. Dgevedar Basha, general of the artillery.

12. The Milachurd Basha Giloff, master of horse.
13. Milachurd Yassy Basha, master of the field-horses.
14. Kolopha.
15. Mamalek, comptroller of the household.
16. Kchassa, cabinet secretary.
17. Nazyr Daftar, steward of the household.
18. Visir Ispahan, chief magistrate of Ispahan.
19. Visir Kurtfy, general of horse.
20. Visir Kule.
21. Chafnadar Basha, chief treasurer.
22. Kaliphar Kashkar, chief judge in civil affairs.
23. Doroga Taftar, judge of the city.
24. Sachapt Tauchtzy.
25. Sachapt Narviss, chief astrologer.
26. Hakim Basha, chief physician.

The

The following officers attend the Shach wherever he goes.

1. The Ibrahim Aga, chief of the eunuchs.
2. Yeush Basha, chief of the white eunuchs.
3. Achmet Aga, chief of the black eunuchs.
4. Klitch Kurtshy, sword-bearer.
5. Tzatyn Basha, quiver-bearer.
6. Saddach Kurtshy, bow-bearer.
7. Tfang Kurtshy, musket-bearer.
8. Dgid Kurtshy, dart-bearer.
9. Kalchan Kurtshy, target-bearer.

The following are the chief doctors of the law of Mahomet.

1. Sadyr Chassa, the same office in Persia as that of the Mufti in Turkey.
2. Sadyr Mammalek.
3. Fazyl.
4. Shach Islam.
5. Chazy.
6. Mullah Basha.
7. Mu-

7. Mudarafs.
8. Pishnamash.
9. Mutashett Basha.
10. Moasham Basha.

These are the principal ; besides whom, there are many other officers, too numerous to recite. With the foregoing list I close what I have to say regarding Persia.

The 26th, we set sail from Nięzabatt with a fair wind at south-east, which lasted only a few hours ; after which we were becalmed for three days.

July 2d, the wind became again fair, and carried us, with a gentle breeze, out of the deep water into soundings ; but turning contrary, we came to anchor in thirty fathom water, where we lay till the 10th, when it blew a very hard gale, which drove us from our anchors out to sea ; and, continuing for two days, brought us again in sight of the Persian shore, which was at this time no very agreeable object.

The

The 13th, the wind changed about favourable, and so continued, with little variation, till the 18th, when we arrived safe at Astrachan, to the great joy of all our company.

September 7th, leaving Astrachan, we sailed up the Volga. Our progress, contrary to the course of the river, was very slow and tedious. In calms the boats were drawn up by men, who went upon the banks; but in hard gales, we were obliged to haul them near the side, and lie still.

October 12th, after a voyage of five weeks, we arrived at the town of Saratoff, about eight hundred verst distant from Astrachan. The winter drawing on, prevented our farther progress by water. We therefore unloaded, and discharged the boats, being resolved to remain here till the snow fell, when we might proceed by land in sledges.

November 1st, there had now been a little fall of snow, sufficient to smooth the

VOL. I.

Z

roads,

roads, and this day we set out from Saratoff in sledges.

The 3d, we came to a little town called Petrosky, about ninety verft from Saratoff.

The 8th, we came to a large town called Penze, ninety verft from the former. As we advanced to the north, the frost and snow daily increased, which made the roads very smooth and easy. Before we left this place, a sudden rain obliged us to halt a few days. Here we met with Brigadier Kropotoff, who, with some regiments of dragoons, had winter quarters at this place.

The 14th, the frost and snow returning, we set out from Penze.

The 15th, we reached Saransky, eighty verft from the former. Here we found many Swedish officers, taken at Poltava, who were well quartered in a plentiful country.

The 17th, we left Saransky, and the 21st, arrived at Arzamals, an hundred verft from Saransky.

The

The 24th, we came to Murum, 360 verft from Saratoff, which I mentioned in going southward by water. From Saratoff to Petrosky, the country is somewhat dry and barren ; but the rest of the country, through which we passed, is very fruitful, producing all kinds of corn, fine woods, particularly of oaks, interspersed with many villages ; and the face of the country, constantly varied by plain and gently rising grounds, affords a most beautiful prospect. From Murum we came to the town of Wolodimir, an hundred and thirty verft from Murum. This place is large and well peopled, and famous for being formerly the residence of a great prince of the same name.

The 30th, we arrived safe at the city of Mosco, an hundred and forty verft from the former, and seven hundred and seventy from Saratoff.

December 19th, we proceeded towards St Petersburgh, where we arrived on the 30th. Nothing material happened during our

our return through Russia, and what was most remarkable in the country I described in going southward. I cannot help taking notice of an extraordinary case of one of our people, in an excessive cold night. The fellow, expecting to banish all feeling of cold from himself, drunk a large quantity of spirits, which produced a drowsiness, that ended in sleep in an open sledge. On arriving at a village, the person was found stiff, speechless, and apparently quite dead; but being carried to a brook hard by, and plunged several times in the water, and then rubbed with snow, and brought into a warm room, with proper regimen he soon recovered, and was able to proceed next day.

I have often observed, in other instances, that the use of spiritous liquors in cold weather, is the worst of remedies; for, though they warm at first, they leave a chilness behind them, not to be got clear of for a considerable time. I have found by experience nothing preferable to weak
warm

warm liquors, mixed with a little spirits. The Russian travellers carefully avoid the excessive use of brandy in strong frosts.

Thus I have finished my account of a long, tedious, and dangerous journey, which lasted for three years, attended with many difficulties, not easily conceived by those who have not travelled the same road. At our return to St Petersburgh, we found his Majesty at that place, who, I was informed, was well satisfied with the conduct of his ambassador, whose principal errand was to cultivate and cement amity, and a good correspondence, between the two crowns of Russia and Persia.

Notwithstanding the war with Sweden had continued near twenty years, this active monarch had not neglected, nor even suspended, the building and adorning his new capital. During my absence, the appearances of things were so changed, that I could scarce imagine myself in the same place; so surprising was the alteration in so short a time. Besides, this Prince had fitted

ted out a navy of thirty ships of war, and three hundred gallies : Enterprises which might have been the work of ages, but not superior to the single industry and activity of Peter the First.

A JOUR-

A

J O U R N E Y
FROM
St PETERSBURGH
IN RUSSIA,
TO
P E K I N
IN CHINA,
WITH AN EMBASSY
FROM HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY,
PETER THE FIRST,
TO
K A M H I
EMPEROR OF CHINA,
IN THE YEAR M.DCC.XIX.

Names of the principal persons who composed the train of the Ambassador,

Leoff Vassilovich Ismayloff.

Secretary of the Embassy,

Laurence de Lange.

The Ambassador's Secretary,

Ivan Glazunoff.

Gentlemen of the Embassy.

Kneaz Alexander Saseckin,

Nicolaus de Pauli Krestitz,

Lukian Nestoroff,

Alexie Divoff,

David Grave,

The Author of this Journal.

Gregory, a Priest.

Interpreters, clerks, a band of music, valets, footmen, &c. in all to the number of about sixty persons ; besides a troop of twenty-five dragoons, for our escort from Tobolosky to Pekin, and back.

A

A

J O U R N E Y, &c.

C H A P. I.

*From St Peterburgh to Tobolsky,
the Capital of Siberia.*

WHEN I arrived at St Peterburgh from Isphan, I met with a very sensible mortification, on finding that my very worthy friend, Dr Areskine, was no more; he died about six weeks before my arrival. Not long after which, upon being informed that an embassy was preparing for China, and that his Majesty had nomi-

VOL. I. A a nated

nated Leoff Vassilovich Ismayloff, a gentleman of a family very well known and much respected in Russia, and a captain of the guards, for that employment, I became very desirous of making that journey in his train.

Upon my acquainting my very good friend, Artemy Petrovich Valensky, with my desire, he, without loss of time, recommended me to Leoff Vassilovich Ismayloff, the appointed ambassador, in such a manner as produced, on all occasions, marks of friendship and regard for me, as well during the journey, as also after our return, until he died in 1736.

The time between my return from If-pahan and my setting out for Pekin, I spent with much satisfaction with my friends and acquaintance at St Petersburgh. Among whom I esteemed as such, not only several worthy persons of my own countrymen, as well in trade as in the service of his Majesty ; but also not a few of the Russian gentry, to whom I became known

known on occasion of my journey to Persia, and of whom I found many to be persons of much worth and honour.

At length the presents for the Emperor of China being got ready, as well as the ambassador's despatches, I set out from St Petersburgh the 14th of July, 1719, in company with Messieurs Lange and Grave, attended by a few servants; the first was a native of Sweden, and the other of Courland. We travelled to the city of Mosco in small parties, the more easily to procure post-horses. The weather being very hot obliged us to make short stages, confining us mostly to the mornings and evenings. Having in my Persian journal described what is most remarkable on this road, I have nothing to add to what I have there observed.

Nothing material happened during our journey to Mosco, where we arrived on the 30th of July, and joined the ambassador, who had arrived there two days before, having passed us on the road. We took

took up our lodgings at the house of Mr Belayof, near the triumphal arch. Here we spent five weeks in preparing barks to go by water to Cazan, and necessaries for so long and unfrequented a road. This interval we passed very agreeably, being invited to all the entertainments the place afforded.

September 9th, having shipped our baggage, and prepared every thing for our departure, we went ourselves on board; and, after firing nine guns, rowed down the river Mosco. There is a shorter way from Mosco to Siberia through Yaroslave; but, as we were incumbered with heavy baggage, consisting chiefly of presents from his Majesty to the Emperor of China, it was thought best to proceed as far as possible by water.

Accordingly, we continued our course down the Mosco river to Kolumna, then into the river Ocka; and, passing Pere-slave-Resansky, Murum, and other towns of less note, we arrived at Nishna-Novogorod,

rod, situated to the right hand, on a high bank of the Ocka, at its confluence with the Volga. Leaving Nishna, we entered the river Volga, and proceeded towards Cazan.

After a voyage of six weeks we arrived at Cazan on the 20th of October. We intended to have continued our route farther down the Volga to the river Kama, which falls into the Volga about sixty verft below Cazan, and then up the Kama to Solikamsky ; but the advancement of the season, and the frost coming on apace, made us resolve to remain at Cažan till the winter set in, lest we should run the hazard of being frozen up near some uninhabited place on the Kama.

In consequence of this resolution, the barks were discharged, and we took up our lodgings in the city. Here I found many of my old friends and acquaintance, particularly the Swedish officers ; among others, General Hamilton, General Rosen, and Baron Wachmaiter, who still remained prisoners

prisoners of war, regretting the hard fate of their long captivity. We staid here about five weeks, waiting for the snow falling to smooth the roads, and in the mean time were employed in preparing sledges, and other necessaries for our journey. Having formerly made my remarks on this route, and particularly on Cazan and its neighbourhood, I shall now pursue our journey towards Siberia.

November 24th, we sent off the heavy baggage ; but Monsieur Ismayloff, with a few of the gentlemen, remained some days longer, because it was disagreeable travelling on rough roads with loaded sledges. At last, on the 28th, late in the night, the ambassador quitted Cazan, keeping to the north-eastward. There being many villages on the road, we changed horses as often as occasion required.

The 29th, we travelled through woods, consisting chiefly of tall oaks, fir, and birch. This part of the country is very fruitful, producing plenty of cattle, corn, and

and honey. The hives are not made like those in England ; the inhabitants take the trunk of a lime-tree, aspin, or any soft wood, of about five or six feet long ; having scooped it hollow, they make a large aperture in one side, about a foot in length and four inches broad ; they then fix cross rods within the trunk for the bees to build upon, and, having done this, close up the place carefully with a board, leaving small notches for the bees to go in and out. These hives are planted in proper places, at the side of a wood, and tied to a tree with strong wythes, to prevent their being destroyed by the bears, who are great devourers of honey. The wax and honey exported yearly from Cazan make a very considerable article of trade. I have seen above an hundred hives near one village, and was informed, that they have a method of extracting the honey and wax without killing the bees, which would certainly be worth knowing ; but I was told it so indistinctly, that I could not understand

stand it, and had no opportunity of seeing it practised.

The villages through which we passed were mostly inhabited by the Tzeremish and Tzoowash Tartars, whom I have formerly mentioned. The three following days the roads were rough and narrow, lying through dark woods, interspersed with some villages and corn-fields. We passed the Ick and several smaller rivers, and then the Viatka, a pretty large one ; all which discharge themselves into the Kama.

After a tedious journey of six days we came to a small town called Klinof, or more commonly Viatka, from the river of that name running near it. The situation of this place is very pleasant, having round it corn-fields and fine pasture ; and the rivers in the neighbourhood abounding with great variety of fish.

The country about Klinof is reckoned so proper pasturage for sheep, that his Majesty ordered some thousands of German sheep, most esteemed for their wool, to be bought

bought and sent thither, with a view to establish a manufactory at this place for clothing his army. He also caused a German shepherd to be engaged in his service, who is settled here, and enjoys a considerable salary. The flocks are already so numerous, that I am persuaded they will in time answer the end proposed. A thousand other instances might be produced of the unbounded genius of this great and active Prince, who spares no expence, and overlooks nothing that can contribute either to the honour or advantage of his empire. I cannot omit another seemingly inconsiderable article ; I mean pump-leather. This commodity was formerly brought from England and Holland at no small charge ; to save which, his Majesty gave orders to engage an English tanner for a certain number of years, whom he sent to Cazan, where the best hides are, to teach the natives the art of dressing them. This scheme has fully answered the end in view, and produced abundance, not only

VOL. I. B b of

of pump-leather, but of every other kind of leather whereof that country hath any need.

There being no verft-posts on this, tho' on most other roads in Russia, I compute the distance between Cazan and Klinof to be about five hundred verft; each verft measures one thousand one hundred and sixty-six yards and two feet English. Here I met with several Swedish officers, who passed a solitary life in a pleasant and plentiful country. We halted one day to refresh ourselves; and the next, being the 5th of December, we left the baggage to follow leisurely, and set out again toward Solikamsky. On the 7th, we reached Kay-gorod, a small town. We perceived the cold becoming daily more intense as we proceeded northward along the banks of the Kama.

The 8th, we quitted Kay-gorod in a vehement cold. Though there was little wind, and a thick fog, the frost continued so penetrating, that several of our people, who

who were most exposed, had their fingers and toes frozen. Most of them recovered by the common method of rubbing the numbed parts with snow ; but, had we not halted from time to time at villages to let them warm themselves, they must have perished by cold. On the 9th, we arrived at the town of Solikamsky, derived from Sole salt and Kama the river, on the banks of which it is situated. Our arrival was a most agreeable circumstance, as the piercing frost still prevailed.

Solikamsky is a large and populous town, and the capital of a province of that name ; which is at present annexed to the government of Siberia. Its situation is very pleasant, upon the eastern bank of the Kama. This river is of great fame in these parts of the world. It rises far to the north, and in its course receives the Parma, Pilva, Koyva, and many other rivers, which together form a mighty stream, very nearly equal to the Volga, into which it discharges itself, about sixty verst below the

the city of Cazan, and loses its name. Its long course to the south-west is now turned short, by the current of the Volga, and carried toward the south-east. The Kama is well stored with variety of excellent fish. On the banks are fine corn-fields and pasture grounds, but often interrupted by thick woods, especially to the north. These woods are stocked with different kinds of game, and wild beasts, natural to the climate.

Solikamsky is famous for having many salt-pits in its neighbourhood, the property of my worthy friend Baron Stroganof, by virtue of a grant from his Majesty. The Baron has brought these works to such perfection, that he is able to serve all Russia with salt, and could besides furnish a considerable quantity for exportation, were there any demand. The salt is of a brownish colour, and very good of the kind.

The common method of procuring this salt is as follows : They dig pits in the earth till they come to the salt-rock, which seems

seems to lie in these parts at a certain distance from the surface, as coals do in other places of the world. When the pit is finished, it is naturally, and of course, filled with water ; which, standing for a convenient time, till it is sufficiently impregnated with the salt, is then drawn out with pumps and other engines, and put into large iron caldrons, where it is boiled to a proper consistence ; when, the water being evaporated, the salt is left upon the bottom.

I was informed of another curious and extraordinary process, by which they draw salt-water from a fresh-water river, which I cannot omit taking notice of. In the rivers near this place there is a mixture of salt-water arising from the springs, which either have their source in the salt-rocks, or run through them. It is the business of the inhabitants to discover the places where these springs empty themselves into the rivers, which they do by diving, or some other manner ; having done this, they make

make a large frame of strong thick balks or beams joined very close, about fifteen or twenty feet square, and of depth enough to reach the bottom of the river, while part of it remains above the surface ; when the ice is very strong, they sink this machine into the river, over the place where the salt spring issues, and drive strong piles of wood all around, to hinder its being forced from this position by the current, or by floating ice in the end of winter. During the winter, they draw out all the water, mud, and sand, contained within the machine, and sink it still deeper until it hath penetrated the bottom of the channel of the river, and prevented all further communication between it and the salt spring. The frame is now filled only with the salt-water, issuing from the spring, from whence it is drawn, and the salt extracted, as formerly described.

However tedious and expensive this process may seem, these people perform it with great readiness and ease ; and, what is still

still more extraordinary, without regular instruction in any art subservient to that purpose, but by the mere force of natural genius. The Baron has a great number of hands constantly employed in this service. And the woods for fewel are inexhaustible.

When the salt is made, it is laid up in granaries, till the season of transporting it to Mosco, St Petersburgh, and other places. The barks for this purpose, called by the Russians *lodia*, are of a construction somewhat uncommon. I have seen some of them longer and broader than any first rate man of war in England, and not one iron nail in the whole fabric. All of them are flat-bottomed, having one tall tree for a mast, and a sail of light canvas in proportion. To manage this mighty machine, six or eight hundred men are necessary. The rudder is nearly as long as the bark, and so unwieldy, that sometimes it requires forty or fifty men to steer it. They load these ships very deep, and let them float down

down the Kama into the Volga ; where, if the wind is not favourable, they are obliged to draw them, against the stream, to the place of their destination.

I cannot leave Solikamsky without mentioning the rich iron-mines in the country adjacent, at Kathenaburg, and other places of that district, which produce iron, equal perhaps in quality to the best in the world. These works have of late been brought to great perfection, by the skill and indefatigable industry of Mr. Demidof, a native of Russia, enabled and encouraged to carry them on by a beneficial grant from his Majesty, who is always ready to assist and protect those who, by their ingenuity, form projects to the advantage of his country.

These works, I am informed, are still capable of great improvement. The ore is very good, and rises in many places to the very surface of the earth, and may be dug at a small expence. As for wood to smelt it, no place in the world can have greater advantage. Besides, all the machines may
be

be driven by water ; and there is an easy communication by the rivers to St Petersburgh, for exportation, and to many other parts of Russia, for inland consumption.

In these mines are often found magnets of various sizes. I have seen some of them very large, and of high virtue.

There are several other iron-works in Russia ; for instance, at Tula, Olonitz, and other places ; but the metal is of an inferior quality to that of Siberia. Besides these of iron, there are also rich mines of excellent copper at this place, which, being lately discovered, are capable of great improvement. The copper-ore also rises to the very surface.

In the neighbourhood of Solikamsky is found the fossil called asbestos ; of which is made a kind of cloth like linen, that may be put into the fire, and taken out again, unconsumed. This cloth was known among the ancients, and used by them on several occasions. At present, it goes by the name of the incombustible linen.

The asbestos, like many both curious and useful discoveries, was found out by mere accident in these parts. I shall briefly relate in what manner : A certain huntsman being about to load his fowling-piece, and wanting wadding, observed a great stone in the woods, which seemed to have some flakes upon it like loose threads ; he soon found that, by rubbing, it turned into a soft downy substance fit for his use : He therefore filled his pocket with it ; but, having fired his piece, was surprised to see that the gunpowder had no effect upon the wadding. This raised his curiosity so far, that he kindled a fire on purpose, into which he put the asbestos ; but still took it out entire, and of the same use as formerly. This experiment so frightened the poor sportsman, that he imagined the devil had taken possession of the fossil. On returning home, he narrated what had happened to the priest of the parish, who, amazed at the relation, repeated it so frequently, that at last he told it to a person who was acquainted

quainted with that quality peculiar to the asbestos ; and, on examination, found the flakes to be that fossil.

The weather is much colder at Solikamsky than at other places situated several degrees nearer to the north pole. Perhaps its great distance from any part of the ocean may be partly the cause of the excessive cold which sometimes prevails.

December 10th, the ambassador took post-horses, and set out for Tobolsky, leaving the baggage to follow as should be most convenient. About midnight we came to a village called Martinsky ; here having changed horses, we soon reached the mountains named Verchatusky-gory, where we found the snow very deep, and a strong frost still continued. We kept on our journey, ascending and descending these high and steep mountains for the space of fifteen hours. In such of the valleys as are fit for culture, are found Russian villages well peopled. And, where the woods are cut down,

down, there appeared a beautiful landscape, even at this bleak season.

These mountains divide Russia from Siberia. They run in a ridge from north to south, inclining a little to the east and west of these points. They are quite covered with wood, consisting of tall firs of different kinds, larixes, birch, and other trees natural to the climate ; and abound with game, and various kinds of wild beasts. Their length, from north to south, I cannot ascertain ; but compute their breadth, where we passed, to be about forty English miles. But they are not near so high as the mountains I have seen in Persia, and other parts of the world.

Having passed these mountains, we descended, on the 11th, into a country finely varied with plains and rising grounds, interspersed with woods, villages, corn-fields, and pasture ; and, in the evening, reached the town called Verchaturia, from verch, which signifies high, and Tura the name of the river on which the town stands. This river

river is navigable, and runs to the east till it empties itself into the Tobol. Verchaturia is pleasantly situated upon a rising ground, and fortified with a ditch and palisades. It is governed by a commandant, who has under him a garrison, consisting of some regular troops and Cossacks. What makes Verchaturia considerable, is its being a frontier town, and commanding the only entry from Russia into Siberia. Here is a custom-house, where all merchants are obliged to make entry of what sums of money or merchandise they carry into Siberia, or from Siberia into Russia ; on all which is charged a duty of ten per cent. to his Majesty. Though this impost may appear high, it is really very moderate, considering the profits which the trade yields, and it extends only to the money to be employed in traffic ; for every merchant is allowed a certain sum for his expences, free of all duty.

The country adjacent to Verchaturia is inhabited by a race of people called Vogullitz,

gullitz, who differ in language, dress, and manners, from any nation I ever saw. Their features and persons have a resemblance of the Tzoowashians near Cazan. They have some obscure notions of the Deity, and are very fond of a kind of wizards called Shamans, whom they hold in great esteem. I shall have occasion to speak more fully of these Shamans afterwards. The Vogullitz know nothing of agriculture, but live in huts in the woods, and subsist by hunting and fishing. They are an honest inoffensive people; but not very numerous; arising, perhaps, from their unsocial and uncomfortable manner of life. The Archbishop of Tobolsky hath of late, by his pious labours, converted many of them to Christianity; who now begin to build houses, and cultivate some appearance of society; and probably, in time, the rest will follow so laudable an example. This, however, will depend much on the encouragement they meet with, from the clergy and sub-governours of provinces. I
visited

visited them as often as any opportunity offered, both in their huts and houses, and endeavoured to procure some information about their original, or from whence they came to settle in these northern parts, but could obtain nothing satisfactory on either of these heads.

Before we enter Siberia, it will not be perhaps improper to give a short account of the singular manner in which this most extensive country was discovered by the Russians.

About the beginning of the last century, a certain Don-Cossack, named Yarmak Timotheovitz, being obliged, by some accident, to leave his native country, and having no means of subsistence, he, with a few accomplices, betook themselves to robbing on the highways. He soon became famous and powerful ; for he robbed only the rich ; and, by a generosity uncommon in such a character, liberally bestowed to such as were in want. He never killed, nor even hurt any person, unless compelled
to

to such outrages in his own defence. This behaviour so raised his reputation, that all the idle fellows in the country enlisted themselves in his gang, proud to follow so brave and enterprising a leader. He became at last so troublesome, that the governors of the southern provinces sent out troops to apprehend him ; but, being previously informed of the design, he withdrew from the land, and procuring boats upon the Volga, commenced pirate on that river. Being attacked here also, he was forced to cross the Caspian Sea, and shelter himself on the Persian shore, where he passed some time under the disguise of a merchant. Being again discovered, he was obliged, by the Persians, to quit their coast : And now his only refuge was to return to the Volga, where he behaved with great circumspection, often lurking in woods and villages ; and, being in no want of money, paid the inhabitants liberally for every thing he needed. Foreseeing, however, that such a numerous gang could not be long concealed,

ed, he took the resolution of leaving the Volga, and steered his course up the river Kama, at that time little frequented by the Russians, or any other nation ; here he hoped to find, at least, a safe retreat during the winter. Yarmak, therefore, with his followers, amounting to the number of two hundred, continued their voyage up the Kama, till they were stopped by the ice, at no great distance from a large village, now belonging to Baron Stroganof. The inhabitants were alarmed at the sight of so many armed men, whom they were not able to oppose, and therefore gave them an hospitable reception. Yarmak demanded only provisions and winter-quarters for his money, promising to leave them unmolested next spring. In consequence of this declaration, he and his followers passed the winter very quietly in this remote place ; afraid, however, at the approach of summer, of being discovered by the government, and uncertain what course to steer ; it was at last determined to cross the moun-

tains of Verchaturia, and go to the eastward, in hopes of finding some inhabited country, or at least a safe retreat.

Having passed the mountains, they arrived at the river Tur ; and, finding it navigable, soon made a sufficient number of canoes for the whole gang. After rowing for some days down the Tur, they discovered several villages of Mahometan Tartars, who were surprised at the sight of such a number of strangers, of whom they had before never so much as heard. Yarmak having got what intelligence he could procure of the situation and government of the country, pursued his voyage to the river Tobol, where he found the towns populous, and the land well cultivated. His approach alarmed the King of the Tartars, who assembled a numerous body of horse and foot, armed with bows and arrows, lances, and other such weapons, with whom our adventurer had many skirmishes, and defeated great multitudes, by means of his fire-arms, which had never before been known

known in these parts. The poor Tartars were as much amazed and terrified, at the sight of the Russians and their arms, as the inhabitants of Mexico on the arrival of the Spaniards in America, to which Siberia may, in many respects, be compared.

Yarmak, finding his enemies daily more numerous the nearer he approached the residence of the Tartar King; having also lost many of his men, in continual encounters, and spent the greatest part of his ammunition; knowing, besides, of no place of safety, where he might pass the winter, which is both long and severe in this quarter; at last determined to retreat. He therefore steered his course to the west, up the Tobol and Tur rivers. The furious Tartars gave him no rest, but harassed him perpetually from the banks. He himself and few more escaped, with a considerable booty, and returned to the village, where they wintered the preceding year. The inhabitants, on seeing the rich furs and other spoils, gave them a welcome reception.

And

And Yarmak did not forget to dispense his favours liberally among those who had entertained him in his distress, when he fled from justice.

Our adventurer had now time to reflect on his miserable circumstances. He considered, that his lurking in these parts, tho' remote from any town, could not be long a secret : To make another attempt against the Tartars with a handful of men, ill provided with arms and ammunition, might perhaps be ruinous, and certainly unsuccessful. He therefore resolved to submit himself to his Majesty's clemency, in hopes of obtaining a gracious pardon for himself and his accomplices, on condition of pointing out the way to a rich and easy conquest of a country which he had lately discovered. The proposal was made at court by a friend, and was of too great importance to be neglected. In short, Yarmak was brought to Mosco, under a safe conduct, where he communicated the whole affair. He begged his Majesty's pardon, and asked

a certain number of troops, which he promised to lead to a glorious conquest. His Majesty granted him a pardon, approved of the expedition, and gave immediate orders for the troops to attend him. They marched to Solikamsky, where they passed the winter in making preparations for the enterprise, which was to be undertaken in the spring.

During this interval, Yarmak behaved with surprising prudence and activity, and discovered himself to be a person of uncommon genius. He collected such of his former followers as remained, and formed them into a company, in whom he could confide on all occasions.

At the proper season, the troops set out towards Siberia. On coming into the inhabited part of the country, they found many straggling parties of Tartars in arms, ready to oppose them, and a number of boats upon the rivers, full of armed men. The King of the Tartars himself was on board one of these vessels. This expedition
was

was of short duration ; and, in the issue, fully answered the expectation of the Russians. I cannot omit a few particulars of the last action. The Tartars in the boats, being pursued by the Russians, a battle ensued on the river Irtish. Yarmak observing the King's barge, ordered his crew to board her ; which he endeavouring to do at the head of his men, jumped short, fell into the river, and was drowned, to the great grief of all his followers. Thus fell poor Yarmak ! Notwithstanding this misfortune, the Russians gained a complete victory. The brave King of the Tartars lost his life in the action. His son, and the rest of the royal family, were taken prisoners, and sent to Mosco, where they were honourably received by the Czar, and treated according to their quality. The prince had an extensive property granted him in Russia, which the family enjoys to this day, together with the title of Sibirsky Czarevitz or Prince of Siberia ; which, I believe, is a more generous treatment of the

the conquered than any of the mighty monarchs of Peru or Mexico, or any of their lineage, have experienced.

December 11th, we left Verchaturia, in deep snow. The cold was excessive, and the sky clear.

Next day, we came to a large village, having a few of the Vogullitz Tartars in the neighbourhood ; and, the 13th, arrived at the town of Epantshin. From Verchaturia to this place the country is mostly covered with woods. About the villages there are large plains, for corn or pasture. The cattle are in good condition. The horses, particularly, being of the Tartar breed, are larger, and better shaped, than ordinary, and fit for any use.

Epantshin is but a small place, fortified with a ditch and pallisades, and defended by a few soldiers in garrison. This place is sometimes alarmed with incursions of the Tartars, called Koffatshy-Orda, and Kara-Kalpacks ; but the Russians have of late so fortified their frontiers, that these rovers appear

appear seldom than formerly. Both these tribes are Mahometans, live always in tents, and spread themselves, with their flocks, in the great desert. Both are very numerous, and own subjection to different chiefs, whom they call Batteer, which signifies a hero. These are chosen by themselves, and are the most famous among them for their abilities in military exploits. They are at continual war with the Kalmucks, who inhabit along the Volga, and with all their other neighbours. They are not able to stand against regular troops; and, when attacked by them, retire into the wide desert, with their families and cattle, whither none, but people accustomed to their manner of life, can follow them.

The country of the Kara-Kalpacks, or Black-Caps, so called from a kind of caps they commonly wear, turned up with black lamb-skins, lies to the south-west, towards the Volga. That of the Kossatshy-Orda extends to the south-east, as far as the

the river Irtish. The course of this river I shall have occasion to mention afterwards.

The 14th, we came to a pretty large town, called Tumen, situated upon the north bank of the river Tuma, from whence the place takes its name. The banks of the Tuma are high and steep: There is a very convenient wooden bridge at this place. The Tuma has its source far to the west, and, in its course, is augmented by the Tura, and several other rivers. It continues to run to the east, till meeting with the Tobol, it loses itself and name.

The country between Epantshin and Tumen begins to be more open, and better peopled, than that westward of these places. For, besides the Russians, who make the greatest part of the inhabitants, we meet with several villages inhabited by the descendants of the ancient Mahometans, who were natives of these places. These Tartars subsist by agriculture, and pass their lives without care or disturbance, in the

free exercise of their religion, and other privileges.

Tumen is a pretty neat place, and well fortified. The streets are spacious, and the houses built in a straight line. The adjacent country is covered with fine woods, interspersed with villages, corn-fields, and pasture ; and provisions of all kinds are very plentiful. The merchants of this place have a considerable trade in furs, particularly the skins of foxes and squirrels ; which, indeed, are not so valuable here as they are to the eastward.

Early on the 15th, we left this place, keeping on our course along the banks of the Tuma, till we arrived at the river Tobol, which we crossed, and proceeded along the eastern bank, through a fine country, and well peopled. Though the frost still continued strong, it was not near so violent and piercing as about Solikamsky ; which may proceed from the woods being cut down, and the country cultivated. On the other side of the river, indeed, the face
of

of the country appeared flat and morassy, abounding with tall and dark woods.

The 16th, about noon, we were in sight of the city of Tobolsky, though distant from us about twenty English miles. It stands upon a very high bank of the Tobol. The walls are white, and the crosses and cupolas of the churches gilded, and make a very fine appearance. About two o'clock we arrived safe at the city of Tobolsky, the capital of this mighty province, and the residence of the governour. We lodged in the broad-street, leading to the governour's palace, and the courts of justice.

We travelled between Tumen and Tobolsky, about two hundred and fifty verft, in the space of thirty hours. Sledges are the most simple and convenient machines for travelling on snow that can be imagined. And the person in the sledge may either sit, or lie along upon the couch, according to his inclination.

C H A P.

C H A P. II.

*Occurrences at Tobolsky, Observations
on the Kalmucks, &c. and Journey
continued to Tomsky.*

TOBOLSKY is situated in latitude fifty-eight degrees forty minutes north, at the conflux of the Irtish and Tobol. From this last the city has its name. Both these rivers are navigable for several hundred miles above this place. The Irtish, after receiving the Tobol, becomes a noble stream, and discharges itself into the Oby. This situation was chosen by the Russians, both for its strength and beauty. Formerly the Tartar princes had their abode at a place

place about thirty verft south from Tobolsky, which is now neglected and ruinous.

Tobolsky is fortified with a strong brick-wall, having square towers and bastions at proper distances, and is well furnished with military stores. Within the town stand the governour's palace, courts of justice, several churches built of brick, particularly a large cathedral, and the palace of the arch-bishop. From the walls you have a very extensive prospect of a fine country, especially to the south. To the west the land is also flat, and overgrown with tall woods. The inhabitants are chiefly Russians, of different professions ; many of them are merchants, and very rich, by the profitable trade they carry on to the borders of China, and many places of their own country.

These live mostly upon the hill. Under the hill, in the suburbs, along the banks of the river, are several large streets, called the Tartar-streets, occupied by the remains of the ancient inhabitants of these parts. Here, as at other places, these people enjoy

the

the free exercise of their religion, and the privileges of trade. They resemble, in their persons, religion, language, and manners, the Tartars of Cazan and Astrachan. Their houses are very cleanly. They are very courteous to strangers, and esteemed honest ; on which account they get great credit in their commercial affairs. Besides the fortification formerly mentioned about the town, the whole suburbs are surrounded with a ditch and pallisades.

When we were at Tobolsky, Siberia was superintended by Mr Petrof Solovoy, vice-governour, a person well acquainted with the business of the government, and a Captain of the guards. The former governour, Kneaz Gagarin, had incurred his Majesty's displeasure, and was recalled ; and his successor, Kneaz Alexie Michaylovitz Cherkasky, a nobleman worthy of such an important trust, was not yet arrived.

As, in most other towns through which we passed, we found here many Swedish officers of distinction. Among others,
Mon-

Monsieur Dittmar, formerly secretary to Charles XII. King of Sweden. He was a native of Livonia, and equally esteemed for his probity and capacity. He was much respected by the late governour, who, indeed, was a friend to all these unfortunate gentlemen. They were allowed to walk about at large, a-hunting or fishing, and even permitted to travel to other places, to visit their countrymen. For my part, I think the greatest favour his Majesty shewed these prisoners, was the cantoning them in these parts, where they may live well at a small expence, and enjoy all the liberty that persons in their circumstances can expect.

I cannot but observe, that the Swedish prisoners, dispersed in most of the towns in this country, contributed not a little to the civilizing the inhabitants of these distant regions, as they were the means of introducing several useful arts, which were almost unknown before their arrival.

Many

Many of the officers, being gentlemen of liberal education, the better to support their tedious captivity, devoted their time to the study of the more agreeable and entertaining parts of science, particularly music and painting; wherein some of them attained to great perfection. I was present at several of their concerts, and was not a little surprised to find such harmony, and variety of musical instruments, in this part of the world.

They sometimes amused themselves with teaching young gentlemen and ladies the French and German languages, music, dancing, and other similar accomplishments; whereby they gained many friends among the people of distinction; a circumstance, to men in their situation, both honourable and useful.

In Tobolsky there are always about five or six thousand regular troops, horse and foot, besides a number of irregulars. These troops, added to the natural strength of the place, effectually secure it from any attacks of the neighbouring Tartars.

The

The woods and fields about Tobolsky are stored with all kinds of game natural to the climate ; such as the coq-limoge, coq-bruiere, and gilinots ; the last are about the size of a partridge, their flesh is white, and very agreeable. There is another kind of these gilinots, somewhat larger, with rough feet, which, in the winter, turn white as a dove. Also the common partridge, which, on the approach of winter, flies off to more temperate climates ; wood-cocks, a great variety of snipes, which fly off in autumn, after having hatched their young. As for water-fowl, no country in the world can produce such numbers, and variety ; they are also birds of passage. In my Persian journal, I gave an account of the vast flocks of these fowls on the shores of the Caspian Sea.

Here also you meet with several kinds of small birds, about the size of a lark, particularly those called snow-birds. They come to Siberia in vast flocks in autumn, and remain till the spring, when they disappear.

VOL. I.

F f

Many

Many of them are white as snow, some speckled, and others all over brown. They are reckoned a very fine and delicious dish.

I observed another very pretty bird, about the size of a thrush, having beautiful red and yellow feathers in the wings and tail, with a tuft of brown feathers on its head, which it raises at pleasure. These are also birds of passage; and, as they breed no where in Europe or Asia that I know of, perhaps both these and the snow-birds may come to Siberia from the northern parts of America. This conjecture will appear not improbable, when it is considered, that these birds are of a hardy nature, and the flight not so far as is generally imagined.

In the woods are various kinds of wild beasts; such as bears, wolves, lynxes, several sorts of foxes, squirrels, ermins, fables, martins, and rosio-macks, called feel-fress by the Germans. The furs are better of their kinds than those of any other country. The ermins commonly burrow

in

in the open fields, and are caught in traps baited with a bit of flesh ; this is done only in the winter, when they are altogether white, and the fur most valuable. In summer most of these animals turn brown, when they are not killed, because, at this season, the fur is of little use. There are also ottars in the rivers and lakes, whose skins yield a considerable profit. Indeed, furs of all sorts, in this country, are very profitable. At present, few sables are caught in this neighbourhood ; it is said they fly from smoke, which, perhaps, is partly true; yet I am apt to believe, that these poor animals are chased away towards the north, to the wild woods, on account of the high value of their skins.

The woods of Siberia abound also with venison of several sorts ; as elk, rain-deer, roe-buck, together with an incredible number of hares, which change their colour, from brown in summer to white in winter. The hares are generally caught by the country people in toils, more on account of

of their skins than their flesh, of which they make but little use. The skins are bought by the merchants, and sent, in great quantities to St Petersburgh, and other ports, in order to be exported to England, Holland, and other countries, where they are chiefly manufactured into hats.

Having described the land animals, I shall now give some account of the fish. In my opinion, there are few countries in the world so well watered, with fine navigable rivers and lakes, as Siberia ; and few rivers and lakes produce greater quantities, or more variety, of excellent fresh water fish, than those in this country. For, besides sturgeon, white-fish, sterlet, and others, to be found in the Volga, and the rivers in Russia, there are several kinds peculiar to this part of the world ; particularly the muchsoon, about the size of a large carp, and much esteemed by persons of delicate taste.

Southward from Tobolsky the soil is fruitful, producing abundance of wheat, rye,

rye, barley, oats, and other grain. The cattle also are very numerous, and in winter are fed with hay. In a word, provisions of all kinds are extremely reasonable. From what I have said, it will appear, that Tobolsky is by no means such a disagreeable place as is generally imagined. Whatever the opinions of mankind may be, it is the business of a traveller to describe places and things without prejudice or partiality, and exhibit them fairly as they really appear. This principle it shall be my study to keep always in view.

Captain Tabar, a Swedish officer, was at this time writing a history of Siberia. He was a gentleman very capable for such a performance; and, if it shall ever be published, it cannot fail of giving great satisfaction to the curious.

Before I leave Tobolsky, it will not be improper to give a short account of the famous river Irtysh, that passes this place. It continues its course a little to the eastward of the north, in a strong but smooth current,

current, visiting several small towns and villages, and receiving many lesser streams, and a large river called Konda, running eastward, till it discharges itself into the Oby, at a town called Samariofsky-yamam, about six hundred verft below Tobolsky.

The Irtish takes its rise from a great lake, named Korzan, in a mountainous country, about fifteen hundred verft to the southward of Tobolsky. The country about this lake is inhabited by the Black Kalmucks, a mighty and numerous people, governed by a Prince called Kontaysha. From these the Kalmucks on the Volga are descended. After the Irtish hath run for many miles through a hilly country covered with wood, it passes through a fine fruitful plain, inhabited by the Kalmucks, till it comes to a house called Sedmy-palaty, or the Seven Rooms, situated to the right in coming down the river. It is very surprising to find such a regular edifice in the middle of a desert. Some of the Tartars say it was built by Tamerlane, called by the Tartars

Tartars Temyr-ack-sack, or Lame-temyr; others by Gingeez-chan. The building, according to the best information I could obtain, is of brick or stone, well finished, and continues still entire. It consists of seven apartments under one roof, from whence it has the name of the Seven Palaces. Several of these rooms are filled with scrolls of glazed paper, fairly written, and many of them in gilt characters. Some of the scrolls are black, but the greatest part white. The language in which they are written is that of the Tongufts, or Kal-mucks. While I was at Tobolsky, I met with a soldier in the street with a bundle of these papers in his hand: He asked me to buy them; which I did for a small sum. I kept them till my arrival in England, when I distributed them among my friends; particularly to that learned antiquarian Sir Hans Sloane, who valued them at a high rate, and gave them a place in his celebrated museum.

Two

Two of these scrolls were sent, by order of the Emperor Peter the First, to the Royal Academy at Paris. The Academy returned a translation, which I saw in the rarity-chamber at St Petersburgh. One of them contained a commission to a lama or priest; and the other a form of prayer to the Deity. Whether this interpretation may be depended on, I shall not determine. The Tartars esteem them all sacred writings, as appears from the care they take to preserve them. Perhaps they may contain some curious pieces of antiquity, particularly of ancient history. Above the Sedmy-palaty, towards the source of the Irtysh, upon the hills and valleys, grows the best rhubarb in the world, without the least culture.

Several days journey from the Palaces, down the Irtysh, on the western bank, stands an old tower named Kalbazinshabashna, or the tower of Kalbazin. Below this is the lake Yamishoff, to the right, where the Russians have built a small fort,

for

for the conveniency of making and gathering salt from that lake, great quantities whereof are made by the sun ; it is brought in barks down the river to Tobolsky, and other places. This fort created some jealousy to the Kontaysha ; he sent an ambassador to the governour of Siberia, requesting to have it demolished ; but this demand not being granted, the difference came to an open rupture, the event of which time must discover.

Descending farther, you meet with another settlement of the Russians, called Shelezinsky, from a rivulet of that name in its neighbourhood. A little below Shelezinsky stands Omuska, a considerable town which also derives its name from a river. Both these places are situated on the eastern bank of the Irtish. You now pass some inconsiderable places before you arrive at Tara, a little town situated on the western bank, on the road leading from Tobolsky to Tomsky, through a country

VOL. I. G g called

called Baraba, of which I shall give some account as we proceed to the east.

Between Tara and Tobolsky are a few small towns, and many villages, inhabited by Mahometan Tartars. And the country abounds with corn, cattle, and fine pasture.

I have now pointed out the course of the Irtish till it reaches Tobolsky, and from thence till it empties itself into the river Oby. I have nothing further to remark concerning Tobolsky and the country around it, and should therefore now pursue our journey to the eastward ; but, before I leave this place, I imagine it will not be improper to subjoin a few more particulars relative to the Kontaysha, Prince of the Kalmucks, whom I formerly mentioned. I am the more inclined to do this, as I can entirely depend on my intelligence, having procured it from persons who have been in that country, and seen this Prince ; but particularly from an ingenious and penetrating gentleman, who fills a public office in

in this place, and was employed in several messages to him from the late governour of Siberia.

The territories of this Prince are bounded by three of the most potent empires in the world ; on the north by Russia, by China on the east, and by the country of the Great Mogul to the south. From the two first he is separated by desert plains, and from the third by almost impassable mountains. To the south-west his frontiers reach near to Bucharia. The Kontaysha is a very powerful Prince, and able to bring into the field, at a short warning, an hundred thousand horsemen, who are all of them able-bodied men, well mounted, and armed with bows and arrows, lances and sabres. This is a greater number of horse than any Prince that I know can muster, except his Russian Majesty, and the Emperor of China. These Tartars live in tents all the year, removing from place to place, as called by necessity or inclination. This is the most ancient and pleasant manner of life.

life. It is entertaining to hear them commiserate those who are confined to one place of abode, and obliged to support themselves by labour, which they reckon the greatest slavery.

The Kontaysha has always some thousands of his subjects encamped near himself, who treat him with great veneration and respect. And, in justice to him, it must be confessed, that he is as attentive to the interests of his people ; and as assiduous in the administration of justice, in particular, as if they were his own children.

The Kalmucks are not such savage people as they are generally represented ; for I am informed, a person may travel among them with greater safety, both to his person and effects, than in many other countries.

The Kontaysha received the deputies from the governour of Siberia, like ambassadors from foreign Princes, and treated them accordingly. This shows what high respect these Eastern Princes entertain for his

his Czarish Majesty, when the governour of Siberia is regarded as a sovereign. The ceremony on these occasions was as follows.

The deputy with his servants were admitted into the tent, where the Kontaysha sat with his queen and several children about him. He desired all of them to sit down on carpets or mats; for the Kal-mucks, like most Asiatics, use no chairs. They were entertained with tea before dinner; and, after it, the Kontaysha dismissed the deputy in a friendly manner, telling him, he would send for him next day to receive an answer to the governour's letter, which he punctually performed. This answer was expressed in very plain and concise terms. These Tartars in general write with brevity and perspicuity. I have seen several of their letters translated, which pleased me extremely, as they contained no tedious preambles, nor disgusting repetitions, which serve only to perplex the reader.

The

The Emperor of China was some time ago engaged in a war with the Kontaysha, about some frontier towns, of which the latter took possession, and maintained his claim with a strong army. The Emperor sent against him an army of three hundred thousand men, under the command of his fourteenth son, who is reckoned the best general of all his children. Notwithstanding their superiority in numbers, the Kontaysha defeated the Chinese in several actions. The Emperor, at last, thought it best to accommodate the difference, and a peace was concluded, to the satisfaction of both parties.

It must be observed, that the Chinese, being obliged to undertake a long and difficult march, through a desert and barren country, lying westward of the long wall, being also incumbered with artillery and heavy carriages, containing provisions for the whole army during their march, had their force greatly diminished before they reached the enemy. The Kontaysha, on

the

the other hand, having intelligence of the great army coming against him, waited patiently on his own frontiers till the enemy was within a few days march of his camp, when he sent out detachments of light horse, to set fire to the grafts, and lay waste the country. He also distracted them, day and night, with repeated alarms, which, together with want of provisions, obliged them to retire with considerable loss.

This method of carrying on war, by wasting the country, is very ancient among the Tartars, and practised by all of them from the Danube eastward. This circumstance renders them a dreadful enemy to regular troops, who must thereby be deprived of all subsistence, while the Tartars, having always many spare horses to kill and eat, are at no loss for provisions.

I have only to add, that the Kontaysha must be the same prince who, in our European maps, is generally called the Great Cham of Tartary. As no Europeans travel through that country, these maps must
be

be very erroneous. It is, however, to be expected, that the Russians will in time make a more complete discovery of the eastern parts of Asia.

Our baggage did not arrive at Tobolsky till the 23d of December. The people refreshed themselves till the 27th, when they again set out, taking the road along the Irtysh to Tara. The ambassador and his retinue remained, to pass the rest of the holidays.

January 9th, 1720, we proceeded towards Tara. We passed through many Tartar villages, and at night lodged in one of their little huts, and warmed ourselves at a good fire on the hearth. These houses consist generally of one or two rooms, according to the ability of the landlord. Near to the hearth is fixed an iron-kettle, to dress the victuals. In one end of the apartment is placed a bench, about eighteen inches high, and six feet broad, covered with mats, or skins of wild beasts, upon which

which all the family sit by day, and sleep in the night. The walls are built of wood and moss, consisting of large beams, laid one above another, with a layer of moss between every two beams. All the roofs are raised. A square hole is cut out for a window, and, to supply the want of glass; a piece of ice is formed to fit the place exactly, which lets in a good light. Two or three pieces will last the whole winter. These Tartars are very neat and cleanly; both in their persons and houses. They use no stoves, as the Russians do. Near the house there is commonly a shade for the cattle.

We continued our journey along the banks of the Irtysh; having the river to the right or left, as the road lay from one Tartar village to another.

The 15th, we reached Tara, a small town, reckoned about five hundred verst from Tobolsky. In all this road we did not meet with a Russian village, except a

small one near Tara. The country abounds with woods, corn-fields, and fine pasturage, which appeared sufficiently from the quantities of hay, and the good condition of the cattle, though the face of the country was covered with deep snow. We found the air at Tara much milder than at any place since we left Kazan.

Tara is situated on the Irtish, and fortified with a deep ditch, strong palisades, and wooden towers, sufficient to defend it against the sudden attacks of the Tartars, called Kossatshy-orda, who inhabit westward of the Irtish, and are very troublesome neighbours.

Here we laid in provisions for our journey over the Baraba, which signifies, in the Tartar language, a marshy plain. Its inhabitants are a mixture of different Tartar tribes, called Barabintzy, from the name of the country in which they live. They are a poor miserable people, being treated as subjects both by the Emperor and the Contaysha,

sha, and obliged to pay a tribute, in furs and skins of wild beasts to each. They have no grain nor cattle of any kind, except a few rain-deer, and subsist by hunting and fishing. What fish they consume not in the summer are dried and smoked for their winter provisions. They are partly of the Mahometan, and partly of the Kalmuck religion ; but this difference causes no disputes.

It is generally reckoned, that more robberies are committed in Baraba than in any country on the road to China ; not by the natives, for they are very honest and hospitable, but by the Kalmucks, who come to collect tribute for the Kontaysha, who sometimes pick up travellers, and carry them off, with all their effects. It was said, that a strong party of them, having intelligence that the ambassador was to pass that way, waited to intercept him ; on which account, he took thirty dragoons and some Cossacks, from the garrison of Tobolsky, to escort him to Tomsky ; which was

was a sufficient guard against any robbers who might attack us ; and he knew the Kontaysha was too polite a prince to authorise his subjects to molest any foreign minister who had done him no injury, notwithstanding the differences that subsisted between him and his Czarish Majesty.

Our baggage having waited at Tara till our arrival, we left that place on the 18th ; and next day came to a large Russian village, sixty verst from Tara, and the last inhabited by Russians, till you pass the Baraba, and come to the river Oby.

In the places through which we passed, the ambassador sent for all the hunters and sportsmen, that he might inquire what kinds of game and wild beasts were in their neighbourhood. Hunting is the employment of most of the young fellows in this country, and is very profitable, as they sell the furs to great advantage. We found that this place produced great plenty, both of game and wild beasts, but few sables. In the spring, a number of elks and stags come hither,

hither, from the south ; many of which are killed by the inhabitants, both on account of their flesh and their hides. What of the flesh is not consumed fresh, they salt. The hides are very large, and are dressed into excellent buff. The huntsman, having found the track of a stag upon the snow, pursues it upon his snow shoes, with his bow and arrows, and little dog, till the animal is quite fatigued ; for, the snow on the surface being melted by the heat of the sun, and congealed at night by the frost, but not strong enough to bear the weight of such an animal, he sinks deep at every step, and the sharp ice cuts his ankles, and lames him ; so that he becomes an easy prey to the hunter.

One of these hunters told me the following story, which was confirmed by several of his neighbours : That, in the year 1713, in the month of March, being out a hunting, he discovered the tract of a stag, which he pursued ; at overtaking the animal, he was somewhat startled, on observing it had
only

only one horn, stuck in the middle of its forehead. Being near this village, he drove it home, and showed it, to the great admiration of the spectators. He afterwards killed it, and eat the flesh, and sold the horn to a comb-maker in the town of Tара for ten alteens, about fifteen pence Sterling. I inquired carefully about the shape and size of this unicorn, as I shall call it, and was told it exactly resembled a stag. The horn was of a brownish colour, about one archeen, or twenty-eight inches long, and twisted from the root till within a finger's length of the top, where it was divided, like a fork, into two points very sharp.

The 19th, we entered the Baraba, and continued travelling through it for ten days, when we came to a large Russian village called Tzausky Ostrogue, from a rivulet of that name, which discharges itself into the Oby, a little distance eastward from this place. Here is a small fort, surrounded with a ditch and pallisades, mount-
ed

ed with a few cannon, and garrisoned by some militia of the country, in order to prevent the incursions of the Kalmucks. We staid a day at this place, to refresh ourselves, and having changed horses, proceeded towards Tomsky.

Baraba is really what its name signifies, an extensive marshy plain. It is generally full of lakes, and marshy grounds, overgrown with tall woods of aspin, alder, willows, and other aquatics ; particularly many large birch-trees, having their bark as white and smooth as paper. The lakes abound with various kinds of fishes, such as pikes, perches, breams, eels, and particularly a fish called karras, of an uncommon bigness, and very fat. These the inhabitants dry, in summer, for winter provisions, which are all the food to be found among them. I have eat of it often, and thought it not disagreeable. In winter, they use melted snow for water. They are very hospitable ; and desire nothing, in return
of

of their civilities, but a little tobacco to smoke, and a dram of brandy, of which they are very fond. The dress, both of men and women, consists of long coats of sheep-skins, which they get from the Russians and Kalmucks, in exchange for more valuable furs. As they wear no other apparel, nor even shirts, they are very nasty. Their huts are most miserable habitations, and sunk about one-half under ground. We were glad, however, to find them, as a baiting place, in such a cold season.

The Barabintzy, like most of the ancient natives of Siberia, have many conjurers among them, whom they call Shamans, and sometimes priests. Many of the female sex also assume this character. The shamans are held in great esteem by the people ; they pretend to correspondence with the shaytan, or devil ; by whom, they say, they are informed of all past and future events, at any distance of time or place. Our ambassador resolved to inquire strictly into

into the truth of many strange stories, generally believed, concerning the shamans, and sent for all of fame in that way in the places through which we passed.

In Baraba, we went to visit a famous woman of this character. When we entered her house, she continued busy about her domestic affairs, without almost taking any notice of her guests. However, after she had smoked a pipe of tobacco, and drunk a dram of brandy, she began to be more cheerful. Our people asked her some trifling questions about their friends ; but she pretended to be quite ignorant, till she got more tobacco, and some inconsiderable presents, when she began to collect her conjuring tools. First, she brought the shaytan ; which is nothing but a piece of wood, wherein is cut something resembling a human head, adorned with many silk and woollen rags, of various colours ; then a small drum, about a foot diameter, to which were fixed many brass and iron rings, and

VOL. I. I i hung

hung round also with rags. She now began a dismal tune, keeping time with the drum, which she beat with a stick for that purpose. Several of her neighbours, whom she had previously called to her assistance, joined in the chorus. During this scene, which lasted about a quarter of an hour, she kept the shaytan, or image, close by herself, stuck up in a corner. The charm being now finished, she desired us to put our questions. Her answers were delivered very artfully, and with as much obscurity and ambiguity, as they could have been given by any oracle. She was a young woman, and very handsome.

On the 29th of January, we reached the Oby, which we crossed on the ice, and entered a country pretty well inhabited by Russians, where we found provisions, and fresh horses, as often as we wanted them. The country is generally covered with woods, except about the villages, where are fine corn-fields, and good pasture grounds. Our course lay a little to the

the northward of the east of from Tzausky
Ostrogue.

February 4th, we arrived safe at the town of Tomsky, so called from the noble river Tomm, upon the eastern bank of which it stands.

C H A P,

C H A P. III.

*Occurrences at Tomsky; observations
on the Tzulimm Tartars, &c.
and journey continued to Elimsky.*

THE citadel of Tomsky is situated on an eminence, and contains the commandant's house, public offices, and barracks for the garrison. The fortifications, like most others in this country, are of wood. The town stands under the hill, along the banks of the river Tomm. The country about this place is pleasant and fruitful. From the top of the hill you have a very extensive view every way, except

cept to the south, where it is interrupted by hills. Beyond these hills there is a large, dry, and open plain, which stretches a great way southward.

About eight or ten days journey from Tomsky, in this plain, are found many tombs, and burying places of ancient heroes, who, in all probability, fell in battle. These tombs are easily distinguished by the mounds of earth and stones raised upon them. When, or by whom these battles were fought, so far to the northward, is uncertain. I was informed by the Tartars in the Baraba, that Tamerlane, or Timyrack-sack, as they call him, had many engagements in that country with the Kal-mucks, whom he in vain endeavoured to conquer. Many persons go from Tomsky and other parts every summer to these graves, which they dig up, and find, among the ashes of the dead, considerable quantities of gold, silver, brass, and some precious stones; but particularly hilts of swords and armour. They find also ornaments of saddles

saddles and bridles, and other trappings for horses ; and even the bones of horses, and sometimes those of elephants. Whence it appears, that when any general or person of distinction was interred, all his arms, his favourite horse and servant, were buried with him in the same grave : This custom prevails to this day among the Kalmucks and other Tartars, and seems to be of great antiquity. It appears from the number of graves, that many thousands must have fallen on these plains ; for the people have continued to dig, for such treasure many years, and still find it unexhausted. They are sometimes indeed interrupted, and robbed of all their boqty, by parties of the Kalmucks, who abhor the disturbing the ashes of the dead.

I have seen several pieces of armour, and other curiosities, that were dug out of these tombs, particularly an armed man on horseback, cast in brass, of no mean design nor workmanship ; also figures of deer, cast in pure gold, which were split through

the

the middle, and had some small holes in them, as intended for ornaments to a quiver, or the furniture of a horse.

While we were at Tomsky, one of these grave-diggers told me, that once they lighted on an arched vault, where they found the remains of a man, with his bow, arrows, lance, and other arms, lying together on a silver table. On touching the body it fell to dust. The value of the table and arms was very considerable.

The country about the source of the river Tomm, near which these tombs are, is very fruitful and pleasant. At the source of the Tomm the Russians have a small town called Kuznetsky. This river is formed by the Kondoma, and many lesser rivers; all which run to the north.

In the hills above Kuznetsky, there had lately been discovered rich mines of copper, and some of silver; which, since I was in this country, have been greatly improved.

On the hills, and in the woods near this place, are many sorts of wild beasts, particularly

cularly the urus, or uhr-ox, one of the fiercest animals the world produces, and exceeding, in size and strength, all the horned species. Their force and agility is such, that no wolf, bear, nor tiger, dare to engage with them. These animals are found in the woods of Poland, and some other parts of Europe. As they are well known I need not describe them.

In the same woods is found another species of oxen, called bubul by the Tartars ; it is not so big as the urus ; its body and limbs are very handsome ; it has a high shoulder and a flowing tail, with long hair growing from the rump to the extremity, like that of a horse. Those I saw were tame, and as tractable as other cattle. Here are also wild asses. I have seen many of their skins. They have, in all respects, the head, tail, and hoofs of an ordinary ass ; but their hair is waved, white and brown, like that of a tiger.

There is, besides, a number of wild horses, of a chesnut-colour, which cannot be tamed,

tamed, though they are catched when foals. These horses differ nothing from the common kind in shape, but are the most watchful creatures alive. One of them waits always on the heights to give warning to the rest, and, upon the least approach of danger, runs to the herd, making all the noise it can ; upon which all of them fly away, like so many deer. The stallion drives up the rear, neighing, biting and kicking those who do not run fast enough. Notwithstanding this wonderful sagacity, these animals are often surprised by the Kalmucks, who ride in among them, well mounted on swift horses, and kill them with broad lances. Their flesh they esteem excellent food, and use their skins to sleep upon instead of couches. These are the animals peculiar to this part of the country ; and, besides these, there are many more common to this place with the rest of Siberia.

The river Tomm, having passed Kuznetsky, Tomsky, and several other towns

VOL. I. K k of

of less note, empties itself into the Oby, at a place called Nikolsky, about an hundred verst below Tomsky, in a country overgrown with thick woods. Here the Tomm loses its name, and makes a great addition to the Oby, which now commences a mighty stream.

The Tomm abounds with variety of fine fish ; such as sturgeon, sterlet, muchsoon, and the largest and best quabs, called in French guion, that I have any where seen. The method of catching these fish is by planting pales across the river, in which there is left one narrow opening for the fishes to pass through. Above this opening a hole is cut in the ice, and near it is placed a fire upon some stones laid for that purpose. The fish, on seeing the light of the fire, stops a moment in its passage ; and, at this instant, the fisherman strikes it with a spear through the hole in the ice. This exercise requires great quickness, for the fish is gone in a trice. I killed several of them myself.

Thus,

Thus, having made a short excursion up and down the Tomm, and given a brief description of the country adjacent, I return again to Tomsky.

Tomsky is a good market for furs of all sorts ; but particularly of sables, black and red foxes, ermins, and squirrels. The squirrels called Teleutsky, from the name of the district where they are caught, are reckoned the best of that species. They have a blackish stripe down their back.

Besides the common squirrel, there is another species found here called the flying squirrel. There is little peculiar in its shape or size, only it has, at the upper joint of the thigh of the fore-leg, a small membrane, stretching to the shoulder, somewhat like the wing of a bat, which it extends at pleasure, and is thereby enabled to spring much farther, from tree to tree, than it could do without the help of these wings. Both the ermins and squirrels are caught only in winter, because in summer
their

their fur is quite brown, short, and of little use.

We waited some days at Tomsky for the arrival of our baggage. Here we found several Swedish officers, who had good quarters in a plentiful though distant place. After our people had refreshed themselves for two days, they set out again on the road to Yeniseysky.

During our abode in Tomsky, we diverted ourselves with fishing and hunting. We were present also at several concerts of music, performed by the Swedish officers, at Mr Kolloff's, commandant of the place. These gentlemen were not less expert in touching their instruments than their companions at Tobolsky. Mr Kolloff is a good-natured and cheerful gentleman, and treats these officers with great humanity. They had along with them a Swedish parson, Mr Vestadius, a man of genius and learning.

The 9th, we were entertained at the commandant's, where were assembled some hundreds

hundreds of his Cossacks, or light horse, armed with bows and arrows. After going through their usual exercise, they showed their dexterity in shooting on horseback at full speed. They erected a pole for a mark in an open field, and passing it, at full gallop, let fly their arrows, and soon split it all to shivers.

The 12th, about midnight, we went into our sledges, and set out on our journey towards Yeniseyksky. For the two following days, we had tolerably good roads, lying through a pretty fine country, inhabited by Russians. The villages are but thinly scattered, yet sufficiently near one another to afford provisions and fresh horses.

On the 14th, we reached a large navigable river, called Tzulimm. We went up this river upon the ice. We met with neither house nor inhabitant for the space of six days. We could get no fresh horses, and were obliged to carry both provisions and forage along with us, which made this part of the road very tedious. During all this

this time, we had no where to warm ourselves, or dress our victuals, but in the thick overgrown woods, which occupy both sides of the river. There is great plenty of fallen trees in these woods, of which we made large fires. The trees are chiefly pitch fir, rising like a pyramid, with long spreading branches hanging to the ground, which render these woods almost impasable to man or beast. We frequently set fire to the moss and dried fibres of these firs. In the space of a minute the fire mounts to the top of the tree, and has a very pretty effect. The kindling so many fires warmed all the air around.

In summer, the banks of this river are inhabited by a tribe of Tartars, called by the Russians Tzulimmzy, from the name of the river, who live by fishing and hunting. We found several of their empty huts as we went along. In autumn, these people retire from this inhospitable place towards the south, near to towns and villages, where they can find subsistence.

The

The 20th, we arrived at a Russian village, called Meletsky Ostrogue, where we staid a day to refresh ourselves and horses. In the neighbourhood of this place, we found many huts of the Tzulimm Tartars, who seem to be a different race from all of that name I have yet mentioned. Their complexion indeed is swarthy, like that of most of the other descendants of the ancient natives of Siberia; but I have seen many of them having white spots on their skins, from head to foot, of various figures and sizes. Many imagine these spots natural to the people; but I am rather inclined to believe they proceed from their constant diet of fish and other animal food, without bread. This, of course, creates a scorbutic habit of body, which often breaks out in infants; and the scars falling off, leave that part of the skin as if it had been scalded, which never recovers its natural colour. I have however seen several children with these spots, who seemed healthy.

The

The Tzulimms, like other Tartars, live in huts half-sunk under ground. They have a fire in the middle, with a hole at the top to let out the smoke, and benches round the fire, to sit or lie upon. This seems to be the common method of living among all the northern nations, from Lapland, eastward, to the Japanese ocean.

The Tzulimms speak a barbarous language, composed of words from many other languages. Some of our people, who spoke Turkish, told me, they had many Arabic words, which they understood. They are poor, miserable, and ignorant heathens. The archbishop of Tobolsky, in person, came lately hither, and baptised some hundreds of them, who were inclined to embrace the Christian faith. As they are a well disposed and harmless people, probably in a short time they may be all converted.

The river Tzulimm has its source about three hundred verst above Meletsky Ostrogue; from this place it continues its course to

to the northward, till it meets with the river Oby, at a place called Shabansky Ostrogue. Ostrogue, in the Russian language, signifies a strong pallisade, inclosing a certain piece of ground. On the first settlements made by the Russians in these parts, such inclosures were necessary to prevent any surprise from the inhabitants.

The 21st, early in the morning, we left Meletsky, and travelled through thick woods, along narrow roads. Next day, we came to a small Russian village, called Melay-keat; where we found our baggage, for the first time since we quitted Tomsky. Near this place the river Keat has its source; and runs towards the west, till it meets with the Oby. Having changed horses at Melay-keat, we left our baggage, and proceeded on our journey.

On the evening of the 22d, we came to a zimovey, where we halted a little, to refresh ourselves and bait our horses. A zimovey is a house or two, built in a place at a great distance from any town or village,

VOL. I. L 1 for

for the convenience of travellers ; and is a sort of inn, where you generally find a warm room, fresh bread, and a wholesome and agreeable liquor, called quafs, made of malt, or rye-meal, steeped and fermented; with hay and oats, at easy rates.

From this place we travelled to Beloy, a large village, where we changed horses, and proceeded. From hence to Yeniseysky the country is well cultivated. Upon the road are many Russ villages, where we got fresh horses as often as we pleased, without halting ten minutes. Thus we continued travelling, day and night, till we arrived, on the 23d, at the town of Yeniseysky, where we had a friendly reception, and good entertainment, from the commandant, Mr Becklimishof, who had come some miles from town to meet his old friend the ambassador.

Here I found Mr Kanbar Nikititz Aikinfiof, with whom I got acquainted at Cazan, while we wintered there, in the journey to Persia. Some cross accident had been the occasion of his coming to this place. He enjoyed

enjoyed full liberty to walk about at pleasure. He understood several languages, was well acquainted with history, and a cheerful good natured companion.

Here we passed the holidays called Masslapitza, or the Carnaval, which is held on the week before Lent. In the mean time our carriages arrived, which were despatched again as soon as possible.

The town of Yeniseyfsky is pleasantly situated in a plain, on the western bank of the river Yenisey, from which the town takes its name. It is a large and populous place, fenced with a ditch, pallisades, and wooden towers. Here is a good market for furs of all sorts ; particularly of the animals called pieffy, which are of two colours, white and dove colour. These creatures are caught far to the northward of this place. They are nearly of the shape and size of a fox ; having a short bushy tail, and a thick soft downy fur, very light and warm, which is much esteemed by the great men in the northern parts of China ; and,

by

by them, made chiefly into cushions, on which they sit in winter.

Besides the above, there is here another creature called rossomack in Russ, and feelfress by the Germans; because they imagine it eats a great deal more in proportion than other animals. I have seen several of them alive. They are very fierce, and about the shape and size of a badger; the neck, back, and tail, are black, but about the belly the hair is of a brownish colour. The blacker they are the more valuable. The skin being thick, is only used in caps and muffs. Also elks, rain-deer, and stags. The latter retire to the south on the approach of winter, and return in the spring. Here are likewise an incredible number of white hares, which perhaps I may mention afterwards.

I must not omit the black foxes, which are in great abundance about Yeniseysky. Their fur is reckoned the most beautiful of any kind; it is even preferred to the sable, with respect to lightness and warmth.

ness. I saw here one of their skins valued at five hundred crowns, and some of them far exceed this sum.

Before I leave this place, I shall give a short description of the course of the famous river Yenisey, according to the best information I could procure. It rises in a hilly country, at a great distance southward from this place ; being joined by many rivers in its course, it grows into a mighty stream, and is, at Yeniseysky, full as large as the Volga. It runs the longest course of any river on this vast continent. The first town, of any note, in coming down this river, is Krassno-yarr, which stands on the western bank. It is a place of considerable trade, particularly in furs. From this place, along the banks, are many villages, till the Yenisey meets the lower Tongusta, a large river, coming from the east, a few verst above Yeniseysky. Below this place, there are many inconsiderable settlements, till you come to Mangaseysky, a town famous for furs, and the shrine

shrine of an illustrious saint, called Vassile Mangaseyfsky, much frequented by the devout people in these parts.

Above this place, the Yenisey receives the Podkamena-tongusta, a large river, running from the south-east; and at Mangaseyfsky, it meets another river, called Turochansky, coming from the west. The Yenisey now continues its course, almost due north, till it discharges itself into the ocean. This river abounds with variety of excellent fish, such as I have already mentioned, but in lesser quantities.

The 27th, we left Yeniseyfsky, and travelled about eight or ten verst along the south bank of the river, when we came to thick and tall woods, which obliged us to leave the land, and march along the river on the ice, which was very uneven. This roughness is caused by the frost setting in about autumn, with a strong westerly wind, which drives up great cakes of ice upon one another, in some places four or five feet high. If the frost happens to begin in

in calm weather, the ice is very smooth, and easy for sledges.

The 28th, we proceeded along the Yenisey, meeting sometimes with villages. The rigour of the cold was much abated, but the face of winter appeared every where, without the least sign of spring. At evening, we entered the river Tongusta, which we found as rough as the former; but, as both the banks were overgrown with thick woods, we were obliged to keep along the ice.

Next day, we still proceeded along the river, in blowing weather and driving snow.

The 1st of March, we overtook our baggage, which we passed; it being thought more convenient, both in order to procure lodgings and fresh horses, that the heavy carriages should travel behind.

We continued our journey for several days along the Tongusta. We found, now and then, little villages, or single houses, on the banks. One day, we chanced to meet a prodigious flock of hares, all as white

white as the snow on which they walked. I speak within compass, when I say there were above five or six hundred of them. They were coming down the river, very deliberately, on a small path of their own making, close to the beaten road. As soon as they saw us, all of them run into the woods, without seeming much frightened. I am informed that these hares travel to the south, in much greater flocks than this, every spring, and return in autumn, when the rivers are frozen, and the snow falls. In most of the villages we found plenty of this sort of venison ; the inhabitants, however, value it but little ; for they catch these hares more on account of their skins, of which they make considerable profits, than their flesh.

The Tongusy, so called from the name of the river, who live along its banks, are the posterity of the ancient inhabitants of Siberia, and differ in language, manners, and dress, and even in their persons and stature, from all the other tribes of these people

people I have had occasion to see. They have no houses, where they remain for any time, but range through the woods, and along rivers, at pleasure ; and, wherever they come, they erect a few spars, inclining to one another at the top ; these they cover with pieces of birchen bark, sewed together, leaving a hole at the top to let out the smoke. The fire is placed in the middle. They are very civil and tractable, and like to smoke tobacco, and drink brandy. About their huts they have generally a good stock of rain-deer, in which all their wealth consists.

The men are tall and able-bodied, brave, and very honest. The women are of a middle size, and virtuous. I have seen many of the men with oval figures, like wreaths, on their foreheads and chins ; and sometimes a figure resembling the branch of a tree, reaching from the corner of the eye to the mouth. These are made in their infancy, by pricking the parts with a needle, and rubbing them with charcoal,

the marks whereof remain as long as the person lives. Their complexion is swarthy. Their faces are not so flat as those of the Kalmucks, but their countenances more open. They are altogether unacquainted with any kind of literature, and worship the sun and moon. They have many shamans among them, who differ little from those I formerly described. I was told of others, whose abilities in fortune-telling far exceeded those of the shamans at this place, but they lived far northward. They cannot bear to sleep in a warm room, but retire to their huts, and lie about the fire, on skins of wild beasts. It is surprising how these creatures can suffer the very piercing cold in these parts.

The women are dressed in a fur-gown, reaching below the knee, and tied about the waist with a girdle. This girdle is about three inches broad, made of deer's skin, having the hair curiously stitched down and ornamented; to which is fastened, at each side, an iron ring, that serves to carry

carry a tobacco-pipe, and other trinkets of small value. Their gowns are also stitched down the breast, and about the neck. Their long black hair is plaited, and tied about their heads, above which they wear a small fur-cap, which is becoming enough. Some of them have small ear-rings. Their feet are dressed in buskins, made of deer-skins, which reach to the knee, and are tied about the ankle with a thong of leather.

The dress of the men is very simple, and fit for action. It consists of a short jacket, with narrow sleeves, made of deer's-skin, having the fur outward ; trousers and hose of the same kind of skin, both of one piece, and tight to the limbs. They have, besides, a piece of fur, that covers the breast and stomach, which is hung about the neck with a thong of leather. This, for the most part, is neatly stitched and ornamented by their wives. Round their heads they have a ruff, made of the tails of squirrels, to preserve the tips of the ears from the cold. There is nothing on the crown, but the
hair

hair smoothed, which hangs in a long plaited lock behind their backs.

Their arms are, a bow, and several sorts of arrows, according to the different kinds of game they intend to hunt. The arrows are carried, in a quiver, on their backs, and the bow always in their left hand. Besides these, they have a short lance, and a little hatchet. Thus accoutred, they are not afraid to attack the fiercest creature in the woods, even the strongest bear ; for they are stout men, and dextrous archers. In winter, which is the season for hunting wild beasts, they travel on what are called snow-shoes, without which it would be impossible to make their way through the deep snow. These are made of a very thin piece of light wood, about five feet long, and five or six inches broad, inclining to a point before, and square behind. In the middle is fixed a thong, through which the feet are put. On these shoes a person may walk safely over the deepest snow ; for a man's weight will not sink

sink them above an inch. These, however, can only be used on plains. They have a different kind for ascending hills, with the skins of seals glued to the boards, having the hair inclined backwards, which prevents the sliding of the shoes, so that they can ascend a hill very easily ; and, in descending, they slide downwards at a great rate.

The nation of the Tongusy was very numerous, but is of late much diminished by the small-pox. It is remarkable, that they knew nothing of this distemper till the Russians arrived among them. They are so much afraid of this disease, that, if any one of a family is seized with it, the rest immediately make the patient a little hut, and set by him some water and victuals ; then, packing up every thing, they march off to the windward, each carrying an earthen pot, with burning coals in it, and making a dreadful lamentation as they go along. They never revisit the sick till they think the danger past. If the person

son dies, they place him on a branch of a tree, to which he is tied with strong wythes, to prevent his falling.

When they go a-hunting into the woods, they carry with them no provisions, but depend entirely on what they are to catch. They eat every animal that comes in their way, even a bear, fox, or wolf. The squirrels are reckoned delicate food; but the ermins have such a strong rank taste and smell, that nothing but starving can oblige them to eat their flesh. When a Tongue kills an elk or deer, he never moves from the place till he has eat it up, unless he happens to be near his family; in which case he carries part of it home. He is never at a loss for fire, having always a tinder-box about him. If this should happen to be wanting, he kindles a fire, by rubbing two pieces of wood against each other. They eat nothing raw, but in great extremity.

The sables are not caught in the same manner as other animals. The fur is so tender,

tender, that the least mark of an arrow, or ruffling of the hair, spoils the sale of the skin. In hunting them they only use a little dog and a net. When a hunter finds the track of a sable upon the snow, he follows it perhaps for two or three days, till the poor animal, quite tired, takes refuge in some tall tree ; for it can climb like a cat ; the hunter then spreads his net around the tree, and makes a fire ; the sable, unable to endure the smoke, immediately descends, and is caught in the net. I have been told by some of these hunters, that, when hard pinched with hunger on such long chases, they take two thin boards, one of which they apply to the pit of the stomach, and the other to the back opposite to it ; the extremities of these boards are tied with cords, which are drawn tighter by degrees, and prevent their feeling the cravings of hunger.

Although I have observed, that the Ton-gufy, in general, worship the sun and moon, there are many exceptions to this
obser-

observation. I have found intelligent people among them, who believed there was a being superior to both sun and moon, and who created them and all the world.

I shall only remark farther, that, from all the accounts I have heard and read of the natives of Canada, there is no nation in the world which they so much resemble as the Tongusians. The distance between them is not so great as is commonly imagined.

The 4th of March, we came to a little monastery, called Troytza, dedicated to the Holy Trinity; where we found about half a dozen monks, who gave us an hospitable reception in their cells, and furnished us with provisions and fresh horses. The monastery stands upon the north side of the river, on a very pleasant though solitary bank, encompassed with woods, corn-fields, and good pasture. Most of the villages are on the north side of the river, as it is higher than the south side.

The same day, we proceeded on our journey along the river. We met with, daily, great

great flocks of hares in their progress to the westward, and many Tongusians in their huts. It is to be observed, that, from this river northward to the Frozen Ocean, there are no inhabitants, except a few Tongusians, on the banks of the great rivers ; the whole of this most extensive country being overgrown with dark impenetrable woods. The soil along the banks of this river is good, and produces wheat, barley, rye, and oats. The method taken by the inhabitants to destroy the large fir-trees is, to cut off a ring of bark from the trunk, about a foot broad, which prevents the ascending of the sap, and the tree withers in a few years. This prepares it for being burnt in a dry season ; by which means the ground is both cleared of the wood, and manured by the ashes, without much labour.

The Russians observe, that, where the sort of fir commonly called the Scotch fir, grows, the ground never fails of producing corn ; but it is not so where the pitch, or any other kind of fir, prevails.

The 7th, we came to the head of the Tongusky, which is formed by the conflux of two other rivers, the Angara, and the Elimm. The first issues from the great Baykall lake, and runs towards the west, till it meets the Tongusky, when it loses its name. We left the Angara and Tongusky on our right hand, and proceeded along the Elimm, which we found much smoother than the Tongusky. The Elimm is a considerably large and navigable river. The banks on the south side are very high, and covered with rugged rocks, overgrown with woods; but, to the north, you meet with several villages, corn-fields, and pasture.

We kept on our course up the Elimm, a little to the northward of the east, till the 9th, when we arrived at the town of Elimsky, so called from the name of the river, which stands in a narrow valley, on the south side of the river, encompassed with high hills, and rocks covered with woods. This place is but small, and is only considerable,

derable, as it stands on the road to the eastern parts of Siberia ; for travellers to China generally take to the south-east, towards Irkutsky ; and those who travel to Yakutsky and Kamtzatsky, to the north-east.

C H A P.

C H A P. IV.

Observations on Yakutsky and Kamtsatzky, &c. Journey continued to Irkutsky, and Occurrences there, &c.

AT Elimsky I met with General Kanifer. He was adjutant general to Charles XII. of Sweden, and much esteemed by that great warrior, for his military exploits. Kanifer was a native of Courland. He was taken prisoner by the Russians in Poland, and sent hither, where he lived in ease and solitude, and was regularly visited by all travellers.

This gentleman had a creature called kaberda, which was brought to him when

a

a fawn by some of the Tongusy. It is the animal from which the sweet-smelling drug called musk is taken. The musk grows about the navel, in form of an excrescence, which is cut off, and preserved, when the creature is killed. There are many of them in this country ; but the musk is not so strong scented as that which comes from China, and more southern climates. The general had bred this creature to be very familiar. He fed at his table with bread and roots. When dinner was over, it jumped on the table, and picked up the crumbs. It followed him about the streets like a dog. I must confess it was pleasing to see it cut caprioles, and play with children like a kid.

The kabberda is a size less than the fallow-deer, and its colour darker. It is of a pretty shape, having erect horns, without branches ; is very swift, and haunts rocks and mountains of difficult access to men or dogs ; and, when hunted, jumps from cliff to cliff with incredible celerity, and firmness

ness of foot. The flesh is esteemed better venison than any of the deer kind, of larger size, whereof there is great variety in these parts.

Before I leave Elimsky, I shall, as usual, give a short account of some of the places adjacent; particularly those to the north-east, towards the river Lena, and Yakutsky, according as I have been informed by travellers, on whose veracity I could entirely depend.

The people who travel in winter from hence to these places, generally do it in January or February. It is a very long and difficult journey, and which none but Tongusians, or such hardy people, have abilities to perform. The Russians frequently finish it in six weeks. The common method is as follows: After travelling a few days in sledges, when the road becomes impassable by horses, they set themselves on snow-shoes, and drag after them what is called a nart, containing provisions and other necessaries, which are as few and light

light as possible. This nart is a kind of sledge, about five feet long, and ten inches broad, which a man may easily draw upon the deepest snow. At night, they make a large fire, and lay themselves down to sleep in these narrow sledges. As soon as they have refreshed themselves, they again proceed on their snow-shoes, as before. This manner of travelling continues about the space of ten days, when they come to a place where they procure dogs to draw both themselves and their narts. The dogs are yoked by pairs, and are more or fewer in number, according to the weight they have to draw. Being trained to the work, they go on with great spirit, barking all the way ; and the person, who lies in the sledge, holds a small cord to guide the dog that leads the rest. They are fastened to the sledge by a soft rope, which is tied about their middle, and passes through between their hind legs. I have been surprised to see the weight that these creatures are able to draw ; for travellers must carry along

along with them provisions, both for themselves and the dogs. These watchful animals know the time of setting out in the morning, and make a dismal howling, till they are fed, and pursue their jouraey. This way of travelling would not, I believe, suit every constitution ; the very sight of it satisfied my curiosity. Thus, however, these people proceed, for near three weeks, till they arrive at some villages on the Lena, where, leaving the dogs, they procure horses, with which they travel to the town of Yakutsky. This place has its name from a rivulet, called Yakut, which empties itself into the Lena.

I have been, perhaps, too particular in describing the method of travelling with snow-shoes and dogs ; but, as these things are known to few Europeans, I concluded an account of them would not be disagreeable. I have seen several Swedish officers who have travelled to Yakutsky in this manner. I tried the snow-shoes myself, and

and found them very fatiguing ; but time and practice make them easy and familiar.

There is a more agreeable road from Elimsky to Yakutsky than that I have mentioned, which is by water, down the river Lena ; but this rout will not agree with the time and circumstances of every traveller. Those who travel from Irkutsky by this course go by land to a place called Vercholensky Ostrogue, situated near the source of the Lena, where they embark, and fall down the stream. Those who go from Elimsky, cross the country directly, about two days journey, to the first convenient place upon the Lena, where they procure vessels, and sail down the river to Yakutsky, or any other place ; but, in this passage by water, they are pestered with numbers of large gnats and muskitoes, which lessen the pleasure of the voyage.

Before I proceed to the northward, it will not be improper to give a short description of the famous river Lena ; which, for the length of its course, and quantity of

VOL. I. O o water,

water, may be compared to any of the largest rivers in the world.

The Lena rises at a small distance northward from the Baykall lake, and runs to the north, with a little variation, till it discharges itself into the Northern Ocean. I compute the length of it, from the source to the ocean, to be about two thousand five hundred English miles, though it is much more by common report. It is navigable during this whole course, having no cataracts so great as to prevent the passage of vessels of considerable burden. It receives many great rivers, most of which come from the east. It may be easily imagined, that the Lena cannot fail of being stored with various kinds of excellent fish, when the other rivers in Siberia afford such plenty and variety. The banks are generally overgrown with tall thick woods, wherein are abundance of game, and wild beasts. The country, between its source and the Baykall lake, is well peopled, abounding with

with many Russ villages and corn-fields, along the banks of the river.

Having formerly mentioned Yakutsky and Kamtzatsky, I shall add a few observations on these two provinces.

The town of Yakutsky, capital of the province of that name, is situated on the west bank of the river Lena, and governed by a commandant ; whose office is reckoned very lucrative, as many fables, and other valuable furs, are found in that province.

The winter here is very long, and the frost so violent, that it is never out of the earth, in the month of June, beyond two feet and an half below the surface. When the inhabitants bury their dead three feet deep, they are laid in frozen earth ; for the heat of the sun never penetrates above two feet, or two feet and an half ; so that, I am informed, all the dead bodies remain in the earth unconsumed, and will do so till the day of judgment.

The

The town, and many villages in its neighbourhood, are inhabited by Russians, who have horses and cows, but no sheep nor corn. They are plentifully supplied with corn from the southern parts of the country, by water-carriage along the Lena. And, in summer, they make hay enough to feed their cattle in winter.

The province of Yakutsky is inhabited by a numerous tribe of Tartars, by which name the Russians call the whole of the natives of this country, however they differ from one another in religion, language, and manners. Those of this province are named Yakuty. They occupy a great space of territory round this place, especially to the east, where they border with the extensive province of Kamtzatsky.

The Yakuty differ little from the Tongusians, either in their persons or way of life. Their occupation, like that of the other natives, is fishing and hunting. They have flattish faces, little black eyes, and long black hair, plaited, and hanging down their

their backs. Many of the men are marked in the face with charcoal, after the manner of the Tongusians. I have, however, seen many of these people, both men and women, of good complexions. They often sell their children to the Russians, who are very fond of them, as they generally make trusty servants.

These people, though otherwise humane and tractable, have among them one very barbarous custom: When any of their people are infirm through age, or seized with distempers reckoned incurable, they make a small hut for the patient, near some river, in which they leave him, with some provisions, and seldom or never return to visit him. On such occasions, they have no regard to father or mother, but say they do them a good office in sending them to a better world. Whereby it appears, that even these rude ignorant people have a notion of a future state.

Under Kamtzatsky I include all that vast tract of land reaching from the river Amoor,

Amoor, along the shore of the Eastern, or Japanese ocean, called by the Russians Tikoe More, or the Calm Sea, to the north-east point of the continent. The country along the shore is very pleasant and healthy, especially to the south, where the climate is temperate. This part of the country produces grain, and, as I have been informed, even grapes and other fruits. The inhabitants are very humane and hospitable.

When the Russians first entered this province, the Kamtzedans endeavoured to oppose them. For this purpose they assembled great numbers of men, armed, after the fashion of their country, with bows, arrows, and short lances, headed with bone, sharpened at the point. Whence it appears, that these people knew no more the use of iron, than the Mexicans on the arrival of the Spaniards in America. Their multitudes were soon dispersed by a few Russians with fire-arms, which, in those days, had rifled barrels, and a small bore, which

which killed at a great distance. The poor Kamtsedans, seeing their people fall without any visible wound, and astonished with the fire and noise of the gunpowder, left the field in the utmost consternation. Their dispositions now were wholly inclined to peace ; and a few of their chief men were sent to the Russians in order to obtain it. They prostrated themselves, in the most submissive manner, before the leader of the party, and begged of him to grant them peace ; which he did, on condition of their paying to his Majesty an annual tribute of sables, or other furs. This condition they have punctually performed ever since.

Many parts of Kamtsatzky are hilly and mountainous, particularly to the north, and covered with tall woods. At Ochotsky is a good harbour, and timber enough to build a royal navy. There are many great and small rivers that run through the country, and empty themselves into the Eastern Ocean, among which is a great river called Anadeer. To the north of this river, towards

wards the ocean, lies an extensive tract of land, little known, and inhabited by a fierce and savage people, called by the Russians Anadeertzy, who continue very untractable.

I have nothing further to add concerning these remote provinces, only, I am persuaded, that the islands of Japan can be at no great distance from the southern parts of Kamtzatsky. What confirmed me in this opinion is, that I saw at St Petersburgh a young man, a native of Japan, who, I believe, is yet alive in the Academy of Sciences at that place. I asked him, by what accident he was brought so far from his own country; and he gave me the following account: That his father, and himself, with a few persons more, being at a noted town called Naggisaky, on the west coast of the island, employed about some affairs of trade, and having finished their business, intended to return to their own habitations, on the north shore, by sailing round the coast. Therefore went they on board a small

small boat, and begun their voyage homeward ; but, meeting with a strong gale off the land, they were unfortunately driven out to sea, and, in a few days, were cast upon the coast of Kamtzatsky, half-starved, and in the greatest distress. In this condition they met with a Russian officer, who afforded them all that assistance which common humanity dictates on such occasions. Notwithstanding all his care, several of the old people died, being quite spent with fatigue, and want of viuals. That he and another youth, who was since dead, were sent to St Petersburgh, where his Majesty was pleased to order that they should be provided for in the Academy. This young man could read and write both the Japanese and Russian languages.

We set out from Elimsky on the 12th ; and next day, in the evening, came to a small village, upon the north bank of the river Angara, about eighty verft distant from Elimsky. During these two days we saw no house nor any inhabitants, the whole

of the country through which we passed being covered with tall and thick woods. There is a narrow road cut for sledges, and the trees on each side meeting at the top shade it by day, and in the night make it very dark, and almost dismal.

We passed the night in this village, where we got fresh horses; and, next morning, repeated our journey almost due east up the river Angara upon the ice. Along the banks we found many villages well peopled. The face of the country had now a different aspect from what I had seen for several months; sometimes we saw a fine champaign country, exhibiting a beautiful and extensive prospect; at other times, the view was agreeably varied with woods and rising grounds. The north side of the river is mostly overgrown with woods. There are some openings along the banks, where we found villages, and abundance of cattle and provisions.

The 15th, we arrived at a large village called Ballagansky, situated on the south side

side of the Angara, near a rivulet, running from the south, called Unga. The situation of this place is very pleasant, as it stands in a fruitful plain, and has many corn-fields and woods in the neighbourhood.

Here we found another tribe of the natives of Siberia, who differ, in some particulars, from all those I have formerly described. They are called by the Russians Bratsky, but by themselves Buraty. They live in tents all the year ; and, having large flocks of sheep, and many cows and horses, they remove from place to place, as the convenience of grazing requires. Their language has a great affinity to that of the Kalmucks ; and they have priests among them who can read and write that language. As to their dress and manner of life, I could observe little difference between them and the Kalmucks on the Volga ; and therefore conclude they have both descended from the same original. Their faces, however, are not quite so flat as those of

of the Kalmucks ; their noses being somewhat higher, and their countenances more open.

The Buraty are stout active men, but hate all kind of labour : For, though they have the example of the Russians plowing and sowing their ground, and living plentifully on the produce of this rich and fertile soil, they chuse still to live in their tents, and tend their flocks, on which their subsistence entirely depends.

The chief exercise of the men is hunting and riding. They have a good breed of saddle-horses, and their horned cattle are very large. Their sheep have broad tails, and their mutton is excellent. They have also great abundance of goats ; for all these animals they make no provision of fodder, but leave them to feed in the open fields. When the snow falls to a great depth, which seldom happens in these parts, they drive them to the southward to rising grounds, where little snow lies.

Their

Their arms are bows and arrows, lances and sabres; all of which are used on horseback; for, like the Kalmycks, they have no infantry. They are dangerous archers, and skilful horsemen.

These people were formerly subject to a prince of the Mongals, but now live very quietly under the Russian government. They are at present a very numerous people, reaching towards the east and south of the Baykall lake, and are generally reckoned very honest and sincere.

As to their dress, the men wear a coat, or rather gown, of sheep-skins, girt about the middle, in all seasons; a small round cap, faced with fur, having a tassel of red silk at the top, which, together with a pair of drawers and boots, makes up the whole of their apparel. The womens dress is nearly the same, only their gowns are plaited about the waist, and hang down like a petticoat. The married women have their hair hanging in two locks, one on each side of the head, drawn through two iron rings

rings to prevent its floating on the breast, and looking very like a tye-wig. Round their fore-head they wear a hoop of polished iron, made fast behind ; and on their head a small round cap, faced with fur, and embroidered, in their fashion, to distinguish it from those of the men. The maids are dressed in the same manner, only their hair is all plaited, hanging in separate locks round their head, and is as black as a raven : Some of them have good complexions. Both the men and women are courteous in their behaviour. I should like them much better if they were a little more cleanly. Both their persons and tents are extremely nasty, from their using only skins to preserve them from the cold ; on these they sit or lie, round a little fire, in their tents.

The religion of the Buraty seems to be the same with that of the Kalmucks, which is downright Paganism of the grossest kind. They talk indeed of an Almighty and good being, who created all things, whom they call

call Burchun, but seem bewildered, in obscure and fabulous notions, concerning his nature and government. They have two high priests, to whom they pay great respect ; one is called Delay-Lama, the other Kutuchtu. Of these priests I shall have an opportunity to give some account afterwards.

In passing the tents of the Buraty, I often observed a long pole, whereon was hung, by the horns, the head and skin of a sheep. On inquiring the reason of this appearance, I was told that the animal, whose head and skin these were, had been slain, and offered in sacrifice, to the God who protected their flocks and herds. I could observe no images among them, except somerelicks given them by their priests, which they had from the Delay-Lama ; these are commonly hung up in a corner of their tents, and sometimes about their necks, by way of an amulet, to preserve them from misfortunes.

The

The 16th, we came to another large village, called Kamenka, situated on the north bank of the river, where we found many of the Buraty in their tents. This day we had some rain, which melted much snow, and made it dangerous to travel upon the ice; so that we were obliged to leave the river, and make the best of our way along the banks; for several of our horses broke through the ice, and were got up again with no small difficulty.

The 17th, our route lay to the south-east. The alteration of the weather was now very perceptible, the heat of the sun was very intense, and the snow suddenly disappeared, leaving no marks of winter, except the ice upon the river, which was vanishing very fast. Thus, in the space of a few days, we passed from a cold winter to a warm spring; and one would almost have imagined we had been imperceptibly dropped into another climate. Our sledges, in which we had travelled and lodged, for most part, during the winter, could now be
of

of no use; and we left them to be put on wheel-carriages, in order to follow us as should be convenient.

Having procured such horses and furniture as the place afforded, we proceeded along the north bank of the Angara, towards Irkutsky. We were escorted by some Cossacks, and a party of the Buraty, armed with bows and arrows. We hunted all the way as we travelled, and were not a little surprised to see the Buraty kill many hares with their arrows. This exercise was very seasonable, as we had been confined to sledges for more than three months, during our journey from Cazan to this place.

On the 18th of March, we arrived at the town of Irkutsky, so called from the rivulet Irkut, which falls into the Angara near it. It stands on the north bank of the Angara, in a large plain, to the north of which the grounds are very high, and covered with woods. On the south side of the river, towards the Baykall lake, are high hills, rising to the south, and covered

VOL. I. Q q with

with tall trees, among which are many larixes and Siberian cedars. The larix, called in Russ lispinitza, is a well known tree in these parts ; near the root of it grows a famous drug, called agarick, in form of a mushroom ; it sheds its leaf in autumn, and in summer it looks like a pine ; it grows very straight and tall, and is reckoned good timber for ship-building ; it bears a cone like the fir-tree, containing the seed, but not half so large.

What is called the cedar is a large tall tree, which never shades the leaf ; it is white and smooth, but has not the least smell of cedar. They use it chiefly in building houses ; and it makes the finest white floors, and freest from knots, of any wood I know. The leaves are like those of a pine, but grow in tassels, very beautiful. The cones are large, and instead of seed, like the fir, contain a small nut with a kernel, of which the people in this country are very fond, and eat it by way of a dessert, in place of better fruit. It has a pleasant taste,

taste, like that of raisins, and is esteemed good for the stomach.

The town of Irkutsky is fortified with a ditch, and strong pallisades, having towers at certain distances. The garrison consists of some regular troops, besides a number of Cossacks, or the militia of the country. The town contains about two thousand houses; and the inhabitants are plentifully supplied with provisions of all kinds from the neighbouring villages. The adjacent woods abound with variety of game. The river affords sturgeon, and many other kinds of fish, but no sterlet; because, as I apprehend, they delight in muddy streams, and the water at this place is so clear, that, in two fathoms deep, one may see the pebbles at the bottom.

At Irkutsky is a good market for furs of all sorts, and likewise for many kinds of Chinese goods. All merchandise must be entered at the custom-house in this place, and pays a duty of ten *per cent.* which produces

duces a considerable revenue to his Majesty.

The 25th of March, our baggage arrived, after surmounting many difficulties on the road. They had been obliged to leave many of the sledges, after taking the baggage off them, and putting it on wheel-carriages.

Our design was to have crossed the Bay-kall Sea upon the ice, and then proceeded by land to the town of Selinginsky ; but we came too late for that purpose. The season was so far advanced, that, before our carriages arrived, the river was almost free of ice. We were informed, indeed, that the ice upon the lake was sufficiently strong to bear horses ; but, upon considering the matter, it was thought most adviseable to remain here, till the ice in the sea was also melted, that we might go by water to Selinginsky ; and orders were immediately given that vessels should be prepared for this purpose.

April

April 1st, we crossed the river, accompanied by Mr Rakitin the commandant, in order to take a view of the country towards the south. We rode through fine woods of stately oaks, and other trees, formerly mentioned. We hunted all the way, and found abundance of game. At last, we came to a small Russian village, in a fruitful valley, encompassed with hills covered with woods, where we lodged. Next day we went ten or a dozen miles farther, in search of wild beasts ; but, finding none, we returned to the same village, and the day following to Irkutsky.

The 10th, we were entertained with a famous Buratsky Shaman, who was also lama or priest, and was brought from a great distance. As these shamans make a great noise in this part of the world, and are believed, by the ignorant vulgar, to be inspired, I shall give some account of the behaviour of this one, in particular, by which it will appear that the whole is an imposition.

He

He was introduced to the ambassador by the commandant, accompanied by several chiefs of his own tribe, who treat him with great respect. He was a man of about thirty years of age, of a grave aspect and deportment. At his introduction, he had a cup of brandy presented to him, which he drank, but refused any more.

After some conversation, he was desired to exhibit some specimen of his art; but he replied, he could do nothing in a Russian house, because there were some images of saints which prevented his success. The performance was therefore adjourned to a Buratsky tent in the suburbs. Accordingly, in the evening, we went to the place appointed, where we found the shaman, with several of his companions, round a little fire, smoking tobacco, but no women among them. We placed ourselves on one side of the tent, leaving the other for him and his countrymen. After sitting about half an hour, the shaman placed himself cross-legged upon the floor, close by a few
burn-

burning coals upon the hearth, with his face towards his companions ; then he took two sticks, about four feet long each, one in each hand, and began to sing a dismal tune, beating time with the sticks ; all his followers joined in the chorus. During this part of the performance, he turned and distorted his body into many different postures, till at last he wrought himself up to such a degree of fury, that he foamed at the mouth, and his eyes looked red and staring. He now started up on his legs, and fell a dancing, like one distracted, till he trod out the fire with his bare feet. These unnatural motions were, by the vulgar, attributed to the operations of a divinity ; and, in truth, one would almost have imagined him possessed by some daemon. After being quite spent with dancing, he retired to the door of the tent, and gave three dreadful shrieks, by which, his companions said, he called the daemon to direct him in answering such questions as should be proposed. He then returned, and sat down in great

com-

composure, telling he was ready to resolve any question that might be asked. Several of our people put questions in abundance; all which he answered readily, but in such ambiguous terms that nothing could be made of them. He now performed several legerdemain tricks, such as stabbing himself with a knife, and bringing it up at his mouth, running himself through with a sword, and many others too trifling to mention. In short, nothing is more evident than that these shamans are a parcel of jugglers, who impose on the ignorant and credulous vulgar.

The 6th of April, we went to a monastery, about five miles to the eastward of this place, where we dined with the Archbishop of Tobolsky. This prelate had lately come hither to visit some monasteries, and, in his way, had baptised a number of Ostreaks and other heathens. From this time, till the 8th of May, little material happened. We waited patiently for the dissolving of the ice on the Baykall lake,

lake, of which we expected to receive the most certain knowledge, by means of the floating ice on the Angara ; for, when this happens, that river is filled with floating cakes, which are driven along with great fury by the wind and current.

The 11th, the river was now clear of ice. Our baggage was shipped on board large flat-bottomed boats, and drawn up the stream ; the wind being southerly, made the progress of the boats very slow. The ambassador, therefore, resolved to remain at this place till he heard they had nearly reached the lake, which is about forty verst from Irkutsky.

Before we left this place, Mr Kremensky, our interpreter for the Latin tongue, died of a hectic disorder. He was a Polish gentleman, and had laboured under this distemper for some years.

C H A P. V.

From Irkutsky, cross the Lake Bay-kall, to Selinginsky ; some Account of the Kutuchtu, &c.

THE 15th of May, the weather being very hot, we did not set out till after dinner, when we left Irkutsky, accompanied by the commandant and some other officers of the place. We rode along the north bank of the river, through pleasant woods, and some open fields, till we came, about midnight, to a few fishermen's huts, where we halted for a few hours, and repeated our journey early next morning.

At

At noon, we arrived at a small chapel, dedicated to St Nicolas, where travellers usually pay their devotions, and pray for a prosperous passage over the lake. About this religious house there are a few fishermen's huts. Two monks constantly attend, to put people in mind of their duty, and receive a small gratuity from the passengers.

Here we found our boats waiting for us below the falls of the Angara. From hence you can see the lake, bursting out betwixt two high rocks, and tumbling down over huge stones, that lie quite cross the river, which I reckon to be about an English mile broad. The whole channel of the river is covered with these rocks, from the mouth of the lake down to the Chapel of St Nicolas, about the distance of an English mile. There is no passage for the smallest boats, except along the east shore, thro' a narrow strait, between the rocks and the land. In the most shallow places, there is about five or six feet water, and breadth

all

all the way sufficient for any single vessel. But if, by stress of weather, or any other accident, a boat should have the misfortune to miss this opening, and be thrown upon the rocks, she must immediately be dashed to pieces, and the whole crew inevitably perish. The waters, dashing upon the stones, make a noise like the roaring of the sea, so that people near them can scarce hear one another speak. I cannot express the awfulness with which one is struck, at the sight of such astonishing scenes of nature as appear round this place, and which, I believe, are not to be equalled in the known world. The pilots and sailors who navigate the lake speak of it with much reverence, calling it the Holy Sea, and the mountains about it the Holy Mountains ; and are highly displeased with any person who speaks of it with disrespect, or calls it a lake. They tell a story of a certain pilot who always gave it that appellation, but was severely punished for his contempt. Being on a voyage in autumn, he
and

and his crew were tossed from side to side of the lake, till they were half starved, and in great danger of perishing. Necessity, at last, forced this hardy mariner to comply with the prevailing custom, and pray to the Holy Sea and Mountains to have compassion on him in such distress. His prayers were effectual, and he arrived safe to land ; but was observed, ever after, to speak of the sea with the greatest respect.

The afternoon was spent in adjusting the tackle, and preparing the barks for being drawn up the strong narrow current.

The 17th, the wind being contrary, and blowing pretty fresh, the pilots would not venture out. I, and three more of our company, took this opportunity of walking up to the top of the mountains, where we had a full view of the sea, and the land to the south, on the other side of it, and also to the west, as far as it extends. The land on the south side of the lake rises gradually, till it terminates in hills mostly covered with wood ; but, on the western shore,

shore, there are very high mountains, several whereof are overspread with deep snow, which we could easily discern, though at a great distance.

The Baykall Sea, opposite to the mouth of the Selinga, is reckoned about fifty English miles broad, though it is much broader in some other places, and about three hundred miles in length. It is wholly fresh water, and is supplied by the Selinga, and many other rivers, from the south, and by the higher Angara from the east. The course of the sea is from south-west to north-east, and has very few shelves or rocks. There is only one large island, near the middle of it, called Olchon. It is bounded on the north by a ridge of high rocks, which run from one end of it to the other. The only opening by which it discharges itself is that into the Angara, which, though it is a natural passage, appears as if cut through the rocks by art. In my opinion, one cannot imagine a more beautiful prospect of nature, than is seen from

from the top of these mountains, which may easily be perceived from the short and imperfect sketch I have drawn of it. The woods on the summit of the rocks are short, and thinly scattered ; but, on their declivity towards the north, and in the valleys, the trees become gradually both taller and larger. There is abundance of game and wild beasts in these woods, particularly the wild boar, which was the first of that species we found in this country ; a certain sign of a temperate climate ; for these animals cannot endure the excessive cold in more northerly parts. The hunting of these animals being a dangerous kind of sport, we carefully avoided their haunts. In the evening, we returned to our barks at the chapel of St Nicolas.

The Baykall is abundantly furnished with various kinds of excellent fish, particularly sturgeon, and a fish called omully, in shape and taste resembling a herring, but broader and larger. The sea produces also great numbers of seals, whose skins are
pre-

preferred in quality to those of seals caught in salt-water. I am of opinion, that both the seals and fish in the Baykall came originally from the Northern Ocean, as the communication between them is open, tho' the distance be very great.

The seals are generally caught in winter, by strong nets hung under the ice. The method they use is, to cut many holes in the ice, at certain distances from one another, so that the fishermen can, with long poles, stretch their nets from one hole to another, and thus continue them to any distance. The seals, not being able to bear long confinement under the ice, for want of air, seek these holes for relief, and thus entangle themselves in the nets. These creatures, indeed, commonly make many holes for themselves, at the setting in of the frost. In this manner they catch, not only seals, but fish of all kinds, in winter.

The 18th, the wind being favourable, we put off from St Nicolas's. As we had workmen enough, we left part of them on board

board, to assist the pilot, by setting poles, while the rest were employed on shore, in towing the barks against a strong current. In about the space of three hours we got clear of the current, and all hands came on board. We were now quite becalmed, and obliged to take to our oars. We rowed along shore to the eastward till about noon, when we had an easy breeze, which soon carried us two thirds over the sea, under our main-sail. The wind now chopped about to the east, and blew so fresh, that we could not make the river Selinga, which was the port where we intended to land. As these barks cannot turn to windward, we were drove about ten miles to the westward of the Possolsky monastery, which stands about six miles to the westward of the Selinga, in a pleasant and fruitful plain, furnishing an extensive view in all directions ; where, endeavouring to get to land at any rate, we steered into a bay, in which we fancied we saw the shore covered with cockle-shells or white sand. On a nearer

VOL. I. S s approach,

approach, our mistake appeared. For what seemed shells or sand, at a distance, was only great and small cakes of ice, beating with the waves against the main body of the ice, which lay firm, and covered the whole bay. Our people, on distinguishing the ice, immediately struck sail, and were in no small confusion. But Mr Ismaeloff ordered the sail to be again set, and to steer directly for the ice. In the mean time, all hands were employed in hanging boards about the bow of the vessel, to prevent the cutting of the planks, and in setting poles to push off the large cakes. At last we came among the ice, which made a terrible rattling at first ; but the farther we advanced, the easier our bark lay, till we came to the main body of the ice, where she remained as unmoved as if she had been in a mill-pond, though it still continued to blow hard. We now quitted the ship, and walked about upon the ice, which was yet strong enough to carry horses. By this time the sun was set, which prevented our design

design of going ashore, for the distance was at least five English miles ; and there was a great gap in the ice near the place where we lay.

About midnight the wind turned westerly, and, at break of day, we left our station, and sailed to the eastward, and, about noon, entered the river Selinga, where we found our other three barks. They having been two or three miles before us the preceding night, had time enough to reach anchoring ground, and, by this means, escaped the ice, so little expected at this season of the year. We ourselves, before entering the bay, had sounded, in order to discover whether we could come to an anchor ; but no bottom could be found, tho' we joined several lead-lines together, amounting to above one hundred and fifty fathoms.

The mouth of the Selinga is surrounded with tall reeds, and contains several islands. The entry into it is very difficult, except the wind be fair, because of many flats and sand-

sand-banks, thrown up by the current of the river. Here we found great flocks of all kinds of water-fowl, particularly snipes.

The wind continuing fair, we sailed up the river to a small oratory, dedicated also to St Nicolas, where all hands went ashore to return thanks for their safe passage. The prior of the Possolsky monastery came to this place to salute the ambassador, and brought a present of fish, and such other provisions as these religious houses afford.

In the evening we proceeded up the river, till night overtook us, when we hauled our boats close to the bank, and lay till next morning, which was the 20th of May. This day being calm, the barks were towed up the river; and we walked along the banks, hunting all the way in a very pleasant country. At night we lay by, as formerly.

The 21st, the weather was very hot. We continued our voyage in the same manner as before.

The

The 22d, the wind being fair, we hoisted sails, and in the evening arrived at a large village, well built and peopled, called Kabbansky Ostrogue. This place is pleasantly situated, on a rising ground upon the west bank of the river, surrounded with many corn-fields and much pasturage. Here we took new hands on board our barks, and dismissed the former to return in open boats to Irkutsky.

The 25th, we reached another large village called Bolshoy Zaimka, situated in a fertile country. In the neighbourhood is a small monastery, and many lesser villages. Many of the Buraty were encamped, with their flocks and herds, on both sides of the river.

The climate on this side of the Baykall lake is much more temperate than on the north side. The land produces rich crops of wheat, rye, barley, oats, buck-wheat, and pease; besides kitchen roots, and other garden stuff. The inhabitants have not yet begun to plant any kind of fruit-trees,

trees, which, I am persuaded, would thrive exceedingly, as the winters are short, and the snow does not lie above six weeks or two months. The banks of the river appeared very pleasant, being finely varied with plains and woods.

The 26th, we came to a large town, called Udinsky, from the rivulet Uda, which runs into the Selinga, on the east bank. This place also stands in a fertile plain, having hills covered with woods towards the east. In these hills are found several rich ores, particularly of lead ; in digging which many hands are now employed. The miners say it is of too hard a quality ; however, they have extracted considerable quantities of silver from it ; and I have been informed that they also found some veins of silver ore. As these works are but lately begun, it is not doubted that they are capable of great improvement, at an easy charge, as the metal lies so near the surface. Samples of these ores have been sent to St Peterburgh ; and, I am informed,

ed, his Majesty has engaged some German miners to make experiments upon them.

Both here and on the Angara iron is to be found in great abundance at the very surface : But as the distance is too great for exportation, it is not worth the labour. To supply the common consumption of the country, the smith takes his bellows, goes to the mine, and smelts and works as much iron as he needs. I have seen some of this iron of an excellent, soft, and pliable quality.

Besides the above mentioned, there are at this place very rich mines of copper. I have seen some of the ore with large veins of pure copper running through it. I make no doubt but time and future discoveries will bring these mines to perfection, to the great emolument of the Russian empire.

All this country is under the jurisdiction of the commandant of Irkutsky, who sends deputies to all the towns of this extensive province, to administer justice, and take care

care of his Majesty's revenues. The power of nominating sub-governours and commandants, is vested by his Majesty in the governour of Siberia, which gives him an authority equal to a sovereign prince.

The ambassador, finding the progress of the boats against the stream very slow and tedious, being besides much pestered with gnats and muskitoes, resolved to go by land the rest of the way to Selinginsky : For which purpose, the superintendant of this place ordered horses, and a proper escort, to be got ready against next morning on the other side of the river, the road on this side being interrupted by thick woods and deep rivers.

The 27th, having sent off our barks, we crossed the river, and, having no baggage, we soon mounted. The road lay through a fine plain, covered with excellent grass. In the evening we came to a fountain of pure water, where we lodged in the tents of the Buraty, and slept on bull-hides.

The

The 28th, early, we proceeded, travelling over some pretty high hills overgrown with wood. About noon, we came to a river called Orongoy, which we crossed on a tall camel, it being too deep for horses. At this place we found a number of the Buraty encamped, with their flocks grazing in the neighbourhood.

Our horses having swam the river, we went into one of the Buratsky tents till they were dried. The hospitable landlady immediately set her kettle on the fire to make us some tea ; the extraordinary cookery of which I cannot omit describing. After placing a large iron kettle over the fire, she took care to wipe it very clean with a horse's tail, that hung in a corner of the tent for that purpose ; then the water was put into it, and soon after some coarse bohea tea, which is got from China, and a little salt. When near boiling, she took a large brass ladle, and tossed the tea till the liquor turned very brown. It was now taken off the fire, and, after subsiding

a little, was poured clear into another vessel. The kettle being wiped clean with the horse's tail as before, was again set upon the fire. The mistress now prepared a paste, of meal and fresh butter, that hung in a skin near the horse's tail, which was put into the tea-kettle and fried. Upon this paste the tea was again poured, to which was added some good thick cream, taken out of a clean sheep's skin, which hung upon a peg among the other things. The ladle was again employed, for the space of six minutes, when the tea, being removed from the fire, was allowed to stand a while in order to cool. The landlady now took some wooden cups, which held about half a pint each, and served her tea to all the company. The principal advantage of this tea is, that it both satisfies hunger and quenches thirst. I thought it not disagreeable; but should have liked it much better had it been prepared in a manner a little more cleanly. Our bountiful hostess, however, gave us a hearty welcome; and as these

these people know not the use of money, there was nothing to pay for our entertainment. We only made her a present of a little tobacco to smoke, of which these people are very fond. I have given this receipt with a view that some European ladies may improve upon it.

After this short repast, we mounted again ; and, in the evening, came to a neat Russian village, on the front of a pleasant hill covered with wood. This place is surrounded with extensive valleys and fine pasture, and our accommodation was better than the preceding night. Here we met Mr Firsoff, colonel of the cossacks, or militia of Selinginsky, with a squadron of horse, armed with bows and arrows, and some firelocks, who came to escort the ambassador to that place.

The 29th of May we mounted early, and, by means of our cossacks, hunted and ranged the woods, as we went along, in the manner of this country, called oblave in the Russian language. Their method is
to

to form a semi-circle of horsemen, armed with bows and arrows, in order to inclose the game. Within the semi-circle a few young men are placed, who give notice when the game is sprung ; these only are permitted to pursue, the others being confined to keep their ranks. Our cosacks, with their arrows, killed three deer, and several hares : And, if killing harmless animals can be called diversion, this may properly be reckoned one of the finest. After this fashion they hunt bears, wolves, foxes, and wild boars.

About noon we came to a village on the Selinga, where we halted a few hours, and then crossed the river in boats, which was near a mile broad at this place. Our cosacks, however, sought no boats, except one to transport their arms, cloaths, and saddles ; which being done, all of them mounted their horses, and plunged into the river without the least concern. As soon as the horses were set a swimming, for ease to them the men dismounted, and, laying hold of

of the mane with one hand, guided them gently by the bridle with the other. This is the common method in this country of transporting men and horses, which I look upon to be both safe and easy, provided the horse is managed with a gentle hand, without checking him with sudden jerks of the bridle.

We halted a little, after crossing the river, till the horses were dried ; after which we mounted, and, in the evening, arrived at the town of Selinginsky, where we intended to wait for our barks, and the rest of our people.

Selinginsky is situated on the east bank of the noble river Selinga, in a deep, barren, sandy soil, that produces almost nothing. The choice of this situation was extremely injudicious ; for, had the founders gone but half a mile further down, to the place where now the inhabitants have their gardens, they would have had a situation, in every respect, preferable to the present.

This

This place consists of about two hundred houses and two churches, which are all of them built with wood. It is defended by a fortification of strong pallisades, on which are mounted some cannon.

About a mile eastward of the town is a ridge of high hills, quite covered with wood. On the other side of the river the country is open, dry, and somewhat barren, but affords excellent pasture, particularly for sheep, whereof the Buraty, the inhabitants, have large flocks. They are of that kind which hath broad tails ; and their mutton is very good. These people have, besides, a large sort of horned cattle, and abundance of horses and camels, wherein all their riches consist. Here ends the tribe of the Buraty ; and the nation of the Mongalls begins.

The Mongalls are a numerous people, and occupy a large extent of country, from this place to the Kallgan, which signifies the Everlasting Wall, or the great wall of China. From this wall they stretch them-

themselves northward as far as the river Amoor, and from the Amoor westward to the Baykall Sea, where they border with the territories of the Kontaysha, or prince of the Black Kalmucks. On the south, they are bounded by a nation called Tonguts, among whom the Delay-Lama has his residence. One may easily imagine, from the vast tract of land which the Mongalls occupy, that they must be very numerous, especially when it is considered, that they live in a healthy climate, and have been engaged in no wars since they were conquered, partly by the Russians on the west, and partly by the Chinese on the east; to whom all these people are now tributaries. In former times the Mongalls were troublesome neighbours to the Chinese, against whose incursions the great wall was built.

Kamhi, the present Emperor of China, was the first who subdued these hardy Tartars, which he effected more by kind usage and humanity than by his sword; for these people

people are great lovers of liberty. The same gentle treatment hath been observed by the Russians towards those of them who are their subjects. And they themselves confess, that, under the protection of these two mighty Emperors, they enjoy more liberty, and live more at ease, than they formerly did under their own princes.

The present Prince of Mongalia is called Tush-du-Chan, and resides about six days journey to the south-east from Selinginsky. The place is called Urga, and is near to where the Kutuchtu or high-priest inhabits. When the Mongalls submitted themselves to the Emperor of China, it was agreed, that the Tush-du-Chan should still maintain the name and authority of a prince over his people, but undertake no war nor expedition without consent of the Emperor; which has strictly been observed ever since.

It is very remarkable, that in all the vast dominions of Mongalia, there is not so much as a single house to be seen. All the

the people, even the prince and high-priest, live constantly in tents, and remove with their cattle from place to place as convenience requires.

These people do not trouble themselves with plowing or digging the ground in any fashion, but are content with the produce of their flocks. Satisfied with necessaries, without aiming at superfluities, they pursue the most ancient and simple manner of life, which, I must confess, I think very pleasant in such a mild and dry climate.

From the river Volga to the wall of China there are three great Tartar princes, the Ayuka-Chan, the Kontaysha, and the Tush-du-Chan. These three mighty nations have almost the same features, religion, and language, and live in the same manner. It will easily be perceived, by casting an eye on the map, what an extent of territory these princes possess, whose subjects go by the general name of Kal-mucks. Few languages can carry a traveller over a greater extent of country than

VOL. I. U u that

that of the Kalmucks. With the Arabic, indeed, a person may travel through many places of the east, from Egypt to the court of the Great Mogul ; but with the Illyric, he can travel much further than with either of the former, viz. from the Gulf of Venice to the utmost boundaries of Kamtsatska ; for the Russian is a dialect of the Illyric.

The greatest part of Mongolia is one continued waste, except the places along the Amoor, and towards the Russian borders on the west. The soil also to the south from Selinginsky, is exceedingly fine, and capable, by proper culture, of producing grain of several sorts.

Since I have mentioned the Amoor, I presume this will be no improper place to give some account of that river.. It is called by the Tartars Shaggalyn-oulla, or the Black Dragon, I suppose from the colour of its waters, and the windings of its course. It is formed of two large rivers, whose sources are in the desert, far to the eastward.

eastward of this place. One is called Argun, which issues from a lake named Delay; the other is Ingoda, on the north bank of which stands the famous Russian town Nertzinsky. The conflux of these rivers produces the Amoor, which runs towards the east, augmenting daily by means of the many great and small streams it receives, till it becomes one of the largest rivers in this part of the world, and, after a long course, discharges itself into the Eastern or Chinese ocean. It is remarkable, that from Cazan to these parts, the Amoor is the only river that runs eastward. Most, if not all, of the great rivers in Siberia have their courses to the north and north-west.

Our barks arrived at Selinginsky on the 4th of June. After we had taken out of them what necessaries we wanted, they were despatched with the rest of the baggage, for their greater security, to his Majesty's store-houses at Strelka, about four miles

miles up the river, where the caravan for China then lay.

In the mean time, the ambassador wrote a letter to the Allegada, or prime minister, at the imperial court of Pekin, to notify his arrival, and desire his excellency would give orders for his reception on the borders. This letter was sent to the Prince of Mongalia, to be by him forwarded to court ; for no strangers are allowed to travel through his territories to China without his permission. The officer who carried the letter to the prince, was treated with great civility, and his letter immediately sent to court by an express. A few days after, the prince sent two gentlemen, one of whom was a lama, to congratulate the ambassador on his arrival in these parts. They were invited to dine with the ambassador, and behaved very decently.

The same officer, who carried the ambassador's letter to the Prince of Mongalia at Urga, was ordered to present his compliments to the Kutuchtu, or high priest,
who

who is a near relation of the prince. He received the officer in a very friendly manner, desired him to sit down in his presence; an honour granted to very few, except ambassadors and pilgrims from remote countries; and, at his departure, gave him a present of some inconsiderable things, particularly a few pieces of Chinese silks.

I cannot leave this venerable personage, without taking some notice of him. I shall therefore relate a few things concerning him, among thousands more ridiculous, which the people in this country tell and believe.

This extraordinary man assumes to himself the character of omniscience, which is the interpretation of the word Kutuchtu; and the people are taught to believe that he really knows all things past, present, and future. As his intelligence, by means of his lamas, is very extensive, he is easily able to impose on the vulgar in this particular. They also

also believe that he is immortal, not that his body lives always, but that his soul, upon the decay of an old one, immediately transmigrates into some young human body, which, by certain marks, the lamas discover to be animated by the soul of the Kutuchtu, and he is accordingly treated as high priest.

When the spirit of the Kutuchtu has taken possession of a new body, that is, in plain English, when he is dead, the lamas are immediately employed to discover in what part of the world this wonderful person is regenerated, or born again, as they express it. They need, however, go to no great distance to find him ; for, the affair being previously concerted among the chief lamas, they soon determine the choice of a successor, who generally happens to be a young boy that has been well instructed how to behave on that occasion. When a successor is pretended to be found, a company of lamas are sent to examine the matter, who carry along with them many toys,

toys, such as small silver bells, and things of that nature, which belonged to the former Kutuchtu, intermixed with others that did not. All these are laid before the child, who picks out such things as belonged to his predecessor, and discovers the greatest fondness for them, but rejects with disgust whatever is not genuine. Besides this trial, some questions are put to him, relative to wars or remarkable events, in his former state ; all which are answered to the satisfaction of the conclave ; whereupon he is unanimously declared to be the self-same Kutuchtu, is conducted with great pomp and ceremony to Urga, and lodged in the tent of the high priest.

Till the new Kutuchtu arrives at a certain age, he is entirely under the government of the lamas, and few are permitted to see him, except at a great distance, and even then it is not easy to get access to him. It may seem surprising, that in so numerous an assembly of lamas, no intrigues should be carried on, nor disputes arise, among
the

the electors. All is conducted without noise or contention. It is, however, imagined, that the authority of the prince greatly contributes to their unanimity.

The Mongalls relate, that their Kutuchtu now has lived fourteen generations, and renews his age every moon ; for at the new moon he appears like a youth ; when she is full, like a full-grown man ; but, when near the change, he is an old man with gray hairs.

What they call the Urga is the court, or the place where the prince and high priest reside, who are always encamped at no great distance from one another. They have several thousand tents about them, which are removed from time to time. The Urga is much frequented by merchants from China and Russia, and other places, where all trade is carried on by barter, without money of any kind. The Chinese bring hither ingots of gold, damasks, and other silk and cotton stuffs, tea, and some porcelain, which are generally of an inferior

rior quality, and proper for such a market. The Russian commodities are chiefly furs of all sorts. Rhubarb is the principal article which is exchanged for these goods, great quantities whereof are produced in this country without any culture. The Mongalls gather and dry it in autumn, and bring it to this market, where it is bought up, at an easy rate, both by the Russian and Chinese merchants.

The Kutuchtu and his lamas are all clothed in yellow; and no layman is allowed to wear this colour except the prince. This mark of distinction makes them known and respected every where. They also wear about their neck a string of beads, which are used in saying their prayers. The Mongalls believe in and worship one Almighty Creator of all things. They hold that the Kutuchtu is God's vicegerent on earth, and that there will be a state of future rewards and punishments.

The following relation, which I had from a Russian merchant, to whom the

VOL. I. X x thing

thing happened, will show the methods taken by these lamas to maintain the dignity and character of their mighty high-priest. This merchant had gone to the Urga, with an intention to trade with the Chinese. While he was at this place, some pieces of damask were stolen out of his tent. He made a complaint to some of the lamas with whom he was acquainted, and the matter was soon brought before the Kutuchtu, who immediately ordered proper steps to be taken with a view to find out the thief. The affair was conducted in this uncommon manner; one of the lamas took a bench with four feet, which seems to have been of the conjuring kind: After turning it several times in different directions, at last it pointed directly to the tent where the stolen goods lay concealed. The lama now mounted astride on the bench, and soon carried it, or, as was commonly believed, it carried him to the very tent; where he ordered the damask to be produced. The demand was directly complied with;

with ; for it is in vain, in such cases, to offer any excuse.

I shall now subjoin a few observations on the Delay-Lama, or priest of the desert, who is reckoned still superior to the Kutuchtu. He lives about a month's journey to the south-east of this place, among a people called the Tonguts, who use a different language from the Kalmucks. I am informed that the religion of the Tonguts is the same with that of the Mongalls ; that they hold the same opinions with respect to the transmigration of the Delay-Lama, as the Mongalls do about the Kutuchtu, and that he is elected in the same manner. What appears most surprising is, that these two mighty Lamas keep a good correspondence, and never encroach on one another's privileges. The word *delay* signifies either the sea, or a great plain, such as this priest inhabits.

C H A P.

C H A P. VI.

Occurrences at Selinginsky ; several parties of hunting ; and journey continued to Saratzyn, the boundary between the Russian and Chinese territories.

THE Tonguts are a separate people, governed by a Prince whom they call Lazin-Chan. One of their princes was lately killed in an engagement with the Kontaysha, King of the Black Kalmucks. The Delay-Lama himself narrowly escaped being taken prisoner, notwithstanding all his foresight. The Lama threatened the Kon-

Kontaysha with many disasters, as the consequences of such proceedings. The Kontaysha, however, regarded them very little, till he had attained his ends ; after which he generously reinstated both the Prince and the Delay-Lama in their former dignity. The Kontaysha is of the same profession with the Delay-Lama, and acknowledges his authority in religious matters.

I am informed there is a third Lama, called Bogdu-Pantzin, of still greater authority than either of the former. But, as he lives at a great distance, near the frontiers of the Great Mogul, he is little known in these parts. Though I am unwilling to throw the least reflection on any society of men instituted for the promotion of religion and virtue, from all I can collect concerning these Lamas, they are little better than shamans of superior dignity.

The answer to the letter, which the ambassador had written to Pekin, was not yet arrived. In the mean time, we were obliged to remain at Selinginsky, where we entertained

ertained ourselves in the best manner we could.

June the 12th, walking along the bank of the river, I was a little surprised at the figure and dress of a man standing among a number of boys who were angling for small fishes. The person bought all the fishes alive, and immediately let them go again into the river, which he did very gently, one by one. The boys were very civil to him, though they looked upon him as distracted, on account of his behaviour. During this ceremony, he took little notice of me, though I spoke to him several times. I soon perceived, by his dress, and the streak of saffron on his forehead, that he was one of the Brachmans from India.

After setting all the fish a-swimming, he seemed much pleased ; and, having learned a little of the Russian language, and a smattering of the Portuguese, began to converse with me. I carried him to my lodgings, and offered to entertain him with a dram ; but he would taste nothing ; for he said it

was

was against the rules of his religion to eat or drink with strangers.

I asked him the reason why he bought the fish to let them go again ? He told me, that, perhaps, the souls of some of his deceased friends or relations had taken possession of these fishes ; and, upon that supposition, it was his duty to relieve them : That, according to their law, no animal whatever ought to be killed or eaten ; and they always lived on vegetables.

After this interview, we became so familiar, that he came every day to visit me. He was a cheerful man, about seventy years of age. He had a bush of hair growing on his forehead, very much matted, and, at least six feet in length. When it hung loose, it trailed upon the ground behind him ; but he commonly wore it wrapped about his head, in form of a turban. The hair was not all his own, but collected as relics of his friends, and others of his profession, reputed saints ; all which he had intermixed and matted with his natural hair.

hair. Persons of this character are called Faquers, and esteemed sacred every where.

He told me he was a native of Indostan, and had often been at Madrafs, which he called Chinpatan, and said it belonged to the English. This circumstance, added to several others, made me believe he was no impostor, but an innocent kind of creature, as are most of that sect. He came to this country, in company with some others of his countrymen, on a pilgrimage, in order to pay their devotions to the Kutuchtu and Delay-Lama. They had been twelve months on their journey, and had travelled all the way on foot, over many high mountains and waste deserts, where they were obliged to carry their provisions, and even water, on their backs. I showed him a map of Asia, whereon he pointed out the course of his journey ; but found many errors in the geography ; and no wonder ; since few Europeans would have had the resolution to undertake such a journey as this man had done.

The

The 14th, a chief named Taysha, of those Mongalls who are subjects of his Majesty, came to pay his respects to the ambassador, who gave him a friendly reception, and kept him to dinner. He was a merry old man, near fourscore, but so vigorous, that he could mount a horse with as much agility as many young men. He was accompanied with five sons, and many attendants, who treated him with equal respect as a king ; and even his sons would not sit down in his presence, till he desired them. I confess it gave me great pleasure to see the decency with which they behaved. One of our company, a pretty fat man, asked the Taysha what he should do in order to be as lean as he was ? The old man replied in these few words, “ Eat less, and work more :” A saying worthy of Hippocrates himself. In his youth he had been engaged in many battles with the Chinese, whom he held in great contempt. As he was a keen sportsman, the ambassador made an appointment with him for a grand hunt-

VOL. I. Y y ing

ing match. After which he and his retinue returned to their tents.

The 15th, we dined at Strealka with the commissary, Mr Stepnikoff, of the caravan going to China. Strealka is situated, as I formerly observed, about three or four miles up the river from Selinginsky, in a fruitful plain of a triangular figure, formed by the conflux of two fine rivers; the Strealka, running from the east, and the Selinga, from the south. This would have been the strongest and most beautiful situation of any in this province, for the town of Selinginsky. I am informed, that the founders had a view to this delightful place; but the choice was determined against them by superstitious lots, to which it was referred. This method of choosing situations by lot has hurt many noble cities, and rendered the work of ages ineffectual to remedy the error.

The same evening we returned, by water, to Selinginsky; and next day went a hunting to the west of the Selinga. We had

had about two hundred Cossacks along with us; who followed the common method of ranging the woods, mentioned above. We killed six roe-bucks, and many hares. In the evening, we pitched our tents about a fountain, and feasted on venison.

The 16th, early, we left the woods to our right, and descended into a barren plain, where we found great flocks of antelopes. Our people killed about twenty of them. These animals avoid the woods, and frequent the open plains and deserts. They are exceedingly swift and watchful; and so far resemble sheep, that, if one breaks through the circle, the whole flock follows, though an hundred horsemen were in the way, which proves the destruction of many of these creatures. The noise of the arrows, with which they are hunted, contributes much to their confusion. The heads of these arrows are broad, and fixed in a round bit of bone, with two holes in it,

it, which make them whistle as they fly through the air.

At noon, we set up our tents near a lake of brackish water called Solonoy-osera, or the salt lake. Round the edge lies a thick scurf of salt, as white as snow, which the inhabitants gather for use. Here we found great flocks of water-fowl ; such as swans, geese, ducks. The weather being very hot, we remained till next day.

The 17th, we hunted along the same waste plain, directing our course to the south, towards the river Selinga. This day also we had very good sport. In the afternoon, we pitched our tents near a spring of fresh water, which is no small rarity in these parched deserts, and is as much regarded here, as a good inn would be in other parts of the world. I found at this place a prickly shrub, about three feet high, with a beautiful smooth bark as yellow as gold.

The 18th, in the morning, we had terrible flashes of lightning, accompanied with thunder,

thunder, and heavy showers of hail and rain, which determined us to leave the plains, and return, by the shortest road, to Selinginsky. Besides the game already mentioned, we found many large bustards, which haunt the open country. As it is a very large bird, and rises slowly, our light horsemen killed several of them with their arrows.

The 24th, arrived an officer from the court of Pekin, sent on purpose to discover the number and quality of the embassy. This gentleman, whose name was Tulishin, was a Mantchu Tartar by birth, and a member of the tribunal for western affairs, with which he was very well acquainted. These officers are called Surgutsky by the Mongalls, and by the Europeans Mandarin, a Portuguese word derived from *mando*. He had formerly been in this country, and had learned the Russian language. He pretended to have been employed on some business with the Tush-du-Chan at Urga, and, hearing of the ambassador's arrival,

rival, had come to pay his respects to him. It was, however, well known, that he was sent to inquire whether the ambassador came on a friendly errand. He was received very kindly ; and, after he had staid three days, and made his observations, returned very well satisfied. At his departure, he told the ambassador, that orders would soon be given for his reception on the frontiers ; but these could not be issued till his arrival at court, because on his report the whole affair depended. This wise and cautious nation, jealous of all the world, suffer none to enter their territories but such as bring friendly messages. By this circumstance we were confined some time longer at Selinginsky.

I shall now give a description of the course of the Selinga, according to the best information I could procure from those who had been at its source. The Selinga is formed of two other rivers, called the Idyr and the Tzolato, coming from the mountains of Kungay, far to the southward

ward of this place. It is afterwards joined by two inconsiderable rivers, the Orchon from the south-east, and the Tzida from the south-west, and lastly by the Strealka from the east, a little above the town of Selinginsky. At this place it is at least twice the breadth of the river Thames, and is navigable a great way above it. The course now is due north, till it discharges itself into the Baykall lake. The source of this river is estimated at the distance of ten or twelve days journey above Selinginsky, which is the common method of computation in this country. It is plentifully furnished with variety of excellent fish. The omuly, which I formerly described, come in vast shoals from the Baykall in autumn up this river to spawn; after which, they return to the sea so weak that many of them are carried down floating on the surface of the stream. During the progress of the omuly up the river, the inhabitants of the adjacent villages assemble with their nets, and catch as many of them

as

as they please. On this occasion the poor take what they can use, and the rest are left upon the banks. These fishes advance up the river about ten miles a-day. On their first appearance, the report is soon spread over the country, and, in two or three hours, the people catch as many as they need, either for present use or winter provisions. This fish is very agreeable food, either fresh or salted. It is observed, they are much better and fatter the nearer they are caught to the sea ; a plain argument, that, were they caught in the sea, they would still be preferable to any caught in the river. I have often thought, what inestimable treasure these omuly would produce in other parts of the world, whereas here, the consumption being small, they are little valued. It is remarkable, that the omuly are not to be found at any season in the Angara, or other rivers to the north of the Baykall.

July 5th, the Taysha-Batyr arrived, in consequence of his appointment with the ambassador,

ambassador, and brought along with him three hundred men, well mounted, for the chace. This old gentleman had the appellation of Batyr ; a title of great respect among the Mongalls. It signifies a hero, and is conferred only on those who have signalized themselves by their courage and conduct in the field of battle. Besides these Mongalls, we carried with us fifty of our cossacks and our tents, as we proposed to be abroad some days.

Early on the 6th, we took our way to the eastward, over high hills, and through tall woods, having almost no underwood to incommodate the horses, or interrupt our view, which made it very pleasant. After riding a few miles, the Taysha, being master of the chace, ordered his men to extend their lines. The Taysha and we were in the center, and often saw the game pass us, pursued by the horsemen, at full speed, without the least noise, but the whistling of arrows. The horses, being accustomed to this kind of sport, follow the game as a

greyhound does a hare ; so that the riders lay the bridles on their necks, and attend to nothing but their bows and arrows. One may easily imagine the exquisite entertainment, in seeing several of these horsemen in pursuit of an elk or stag through the valleys. When the animal is driven from the woods, it flies for safety to the nearest rocks. Some of these creatures are nearly as large and strong as the horses that hunt them. The stags are of two kinds ; one called zuber, the same with the German crownhirsh, but somewhat larger. The zuber is large and beautiful, and carries its head almost upright as it runs, which prevents its horns being entangled with branches of trees. There are none of them in Russia, nor even in Siberia, except about the Baykall lake, and eastward from it ; the places farther to the north being too cold for them. The elk is larger than the stag, and stronger made, having also long branchy horns, but a little flat.

Tired

Tired with sport, we left the hills in the afternoon, and came down into a fine valley, where we pitched our tents near a pure brook. The Taysha then ordered all the dead game to be brought before him, and ranged in proper order. We found that this day we killed no less than five large elks, four stags, a dozen roe-bucks, several wolves and foxes, besides fawns and hares.

The Taysha caused the game to be divided among the huntsmen, who began immediately to dress it, some of them by boiling, others by broiling, and eat it without either bread or salt. The tails of the stags, which by these people are reckoned very delicate, fell to the Taysha's share. He cut them into slices, and eat them raw. I eat a bit of one of them, and thought it very palatable. The taste resembled nothing so much as that of fresh caviare. After we had feasted on variety of excellent venison, for we had no other provisions, we went to rest, well satisfied with the diversion of the day.

July

July 7th, early in the morning, we left the plains, and directed our course eastward, in the same order we observed the preceding day. As our sport was much the same, I need not mention the particulars. About noon we pitched our tents, near a spring of fresh water, in a valley where the grass was about two feet long. This circumstance is a proof of the goodness of the soil, which, in my opinion, cannot fail, if properly cultivated, to produce any kind of grain. As the weather was excessively hot, we staid in this place till next day.

July 8th, we continued our sport in the woods till noon, when we came into an extensive plain, in which we set up our tents, near a spring of brackish water. In this place we observed several flocks of antelopes, which we reserved for next day's hunting.

In the morning, our Taysha dispatched some of his horsemen to the tops of the hills, in order to discover where the antelopes

lopes were feeding ; which, as I formerly observed, are the most watchful, and, at the same time, the swiftest animals in the world. When they returned, we extended our wings to a great distance, that we might surround these creatures with the greater ease ; and, before noon, our people killed above twenty of them. After which we returned to our tents that were left standing in the morning.

July 10th, we took leave of the Taysha, whose tents were to the east of this place, and returned next day to Selinginsky.

During this short excursion, I could not enough admire the beauty of the country through which we passed. The gentle rising of the hills, many of which have their tops only covered with wood, and the fertility of the vales, contribute to form one of the most delightful landscapes the world can afford. To this may be added the temperature and dryness of the climate, in which respect this far exceeds any country with which I am acquainted. After mid-
summer

summer there is almost no rain till December, when the snow falls, and in such moderate quantities that it does not hinder the cattle from lying abroad all the winter.

In surveying these fertile plains and pleasant woods, I have often entertained myself with painting, in my own imagination, the neat villages, country-seats, and farm-houses, which, in process of time, may be erected on the banks of the rivers, and brows of the hills. There is here waste land enough to maintain, with easy labour, several European nations, who are at present confined to barren and ungrateful soils ; and, with regard to the Mongalls, whose honesty and simplicity of manners are not unamiable, I should like them very well for neighbours.

From what I have read of North America, I am of opinion, that this country resembles none so much as some of our colonies in that quarter of the world, particularly the inland parts of Pennsylvania and Maryland. Both countries lye nearly in the same

same latitude ; in the one we find great lakes and mighty rivers ; in the other, the Baykall Sea and rivers, which for the length of their course and quantity of water, may be ranked with any in the western world.

Having rested ourselves a few days after our fatigue, on the 16th of July, we set out on another hunting-match, attended by our own cosacks, and a few of the neighbouring Mongalls. We went on this occasion farther northward, and nearer to the Baykall lake than in our former expedition. Our sport was almost of the same kind as already described. I shall only add, that both the stag and elk shed their horns once a year ; at which time they retire to thickets and solitary places, till their horns begin to spring again. It is surprising that animals so large, with such prodigious weight of branchy horns, should run, with almost incredible speed, through the thickest woods, without entangling themselves : But, to avoid this misfortune, they point their noses always parallel to the horizon.

When

When either the elk or stag are closely attacked, they make a vigorous defence both with horns and hoofs. At rutting time especially, these creatures are so very furious, that it is extremely dangerous for any person to approach their haunts ; they will then run at a man full speed, and, if he escapes being wounded by their horns, will trample him to death with their sharp hoofs. As the weather was excessively hot, we kept the field only two days, and then returned to Selinginsky.

July 20th, another Mandarin arrived from Pekin, accompanied by an officer from Arga, who brought a letter to the ambassador from the Tush-du-Chan, acquainting him, that he might soon expect a person, properly authorised, to conduct him to the imperial city. No news could be more agreeable. We hoped now to be soon released from this solitary place, and arrive at the end of our journey. We were indeed well enough lodged, and wanted neither the necessaries nor conveniences

encies of life. The abundance of rural diversions which this place afforded, coinciding happily with the genius of most of our gentlemen, and the harmony that subsisted among the retinue, though composed of people from most nations in Europe, and some from Asia, contributed not a little to our passing the time very agreeably. Notwithstanding these advantages, and the affability and courteous behaviour of the ambassador, which heightened them all, we were uneasy at being detained so long on the frontiers. We were apprehensive that some accident might happen to prevent our journey, especially as it was reported among the Mongalls, that the Emperor of China, being far advanced in years, was sometimes sick, and not disposed to receive foreign ministers.

The 24th, there fell such a shower of hail-stones as no man then alive had ever seen. It was happy for us we were not then abroad, as the open field affords no kind of shelter. The hail lay some days in

VOL. I. 3 A the

the woods and cooled the air, which before that time had been excessively hot. This day the Kutuchtu sent two lamas to compliment the ambassador, to wish him a good journey, and a happy sight of the Emperor, or Boghdoi-chang, as he is called by these people.

August 9th, a courier arrived from Pekin, who told the ambassador that he had passed our conductor on the road, and that we should now prepare for our journey to the capital, as that gentleman would arrive in a few days.

On the 24th, our conductor, called Lomy, at last arrived. He was by birth a Mantshu Tartar, and a member of the court for the western department. After remaining with us for some days, he returned to Yolla, a place upon the border, in order to procure horses and camels for our journey.

September 8th, we sent our baggage by water to Strealka, and next day we followed it. We lived in tents, while we staid at this

this place, till horses and camels were got ready. In the mean time, our people were employed in packing up the baggage into proper loads for camels. Strealka, I formerly observed, is the place where his Majesty's commissary of the caravan has his abode, and the government of Siberia their store-houses. I imagine, therefore, it will not be improper, before we proceed, to give some account of the trade carried on from this place.

Formerly the fur trade was free to all his Majesty's subjects, both Russians and Tartars. The merchants repaired to Siberia at the proper seasons, where they bought, at cheap rates, all the rich furs they could find, and disposed of them in Persia, Turkey, and Poland, at a price much below the real value. The government of Siberia perceived a very considerable diminution of the revenue in that country, and soon discovered the true cause of it ; which was, that a great part of the furs belonging to his Majesty remained unsold. Upon inquiry,

quiry, it appeared that this was owing to the foreign markets being supplied with these commodities at low rates, by the subjects, before the goods belonging to the government could be exposed to sale. The government of Siberia represented to his Majesty the loss of so considerable a branch of his revenue ; in consequence of which, an order was immediately issued, prohibiting all private persons for the future to export sables in particular. Since this regulation took place, the government have sent their own furs, generally once in three years, by caravans to China. The value of one of these caravans is reckoned to amount to four or five thousand roubles, and yields a return of at least double that sum. The Emperor of China, from regard to the friendship and good neighbourhood of his Majesty, gives the caravans free quarters, and liberty to dispose of their goods, and buy others, without exacting any impost. At first the Emperor not only gave the caravan free quarters, but also maintained,

maintained, at his own charge, both men and horses during their stay in Pekin. This last expression of his Majesty's bounty is, however, now withdrawn.

September 15th, our conductor having acquainted the ambassador that the horses and camels were ready, our baggage was despatched to the frontiers, escorted by our own soldiers and some Cossacks ; tho' indeed there was no great occasion for any guard, as the Mongalls seem to have little use for any thing that belonged to us.

After dining with the commissary of the caravan at Strealka, on the 18th, we left that place in the evening, accompanied with the commissary and most of the officers at Selinginsky. After we had travelled about twenty English miles to the south-east, through fine plains, covered with exceeding long grass, we arrived at the end of the first stage called Kolludtzy, where we found our tents, which had been sent off in the morning, ready for our reception,

ception. This day we saw some scattered tents of Mongolians with their flocks.

Next day we travelled about twenty miles farther to a single house, built by the commissary for a shade to his cattle in winter. We hunted all the way through a pleasant country, interspersed with little hills covered with wood, but saw as few inhabitants as the day before.

The 20th, about noon, we reached a place called Saratzyn, or the New Moon, situated on the bank of a rivulet of the same name. This rivulet is the boundary between the Russian and Chinese territories, and separates two of the most mighty monarchies in the world. The distance between Selinginsky and this place is computed to be about one hundred and four verst, nearly seventy English miles.

The conductor was encamped on the east side of the rivulet, and we pitched our tents on the other. The ground on both sides rises a little, and the soil seems to be extremely good. The grass is rank and thick,
and

and as the season is very dry, would, with little labour, make excellent hay. This grass is often set on fire by the Mongalls in the spring during high winds. At such times it burns most furiously, running like wild-fire, and spreading its flames to the distance of perhaps ten or twenty miles, till its progress is interrupted by some river or barren hill. The impetuosity of these flames, their smoke and crackling noise, cannot easily be conceived by those who have not seen them. When any person finds himself to the leeward of them, the only method by which he can save himself from their fury, is to kindle immediately the grass where he stands, and follow his own fire. For this purpose, every person is provided with flints, steel, and tinder. The reason why the Mongalls set fire to the grass, is to procure early pasture for their cattle. The ashes left upon the ground sink into the earth at the melting of the snow, and prove an excellent manure; so that the grass in the spring rises on the lands,

lands, which have been prepared in this manner, as thick as a field of wheat. Caravans, travellers with merchandise, but especially armies, never encamp upon this rank grass. And there are several instances of considerable bodies of men being put in confusion, and even defeated, by the enemy's setting fire to the grass.

Before I leave the Russian territories, I shall give some account of the marches between these two famous empires. The frontier, according to the best information I could procure, begins a great way westward of this place, near the source of the river Dzida ; from thence it proceeds to the east, crossing the Selinga, and runs along the tops of the hills, inclining sometimes to the north, and sometimes to the south, till it meets with the rivulet Saratzyn. It runs then in a very irregular line, varying its direction according to the course of the rivers and brooks, or from the top of one hill to some other remarkable point in view, pointing in general towards the north-

north-east, till it ends at the river Argun, which, together with the Ingoda, forms the Amoor. This boundary includes a vast tract of excellent land on the Russian side ; and that part of the Mongalls who inhabit it, being stout men, and living much at ease, will in time become a numerous people.

The marches were settled upon the present footing about twenty-five years ago, on the following occasion : The Mongalls, on the Chinese side, alledged, that their countrymen, subjects of Russia, encroached on their borders, which created some disputes between the two nations. The causes of this misunderstanding being represented to the two courts, it was agreed to send ministers, with full powers to terminate the affair in an amicable manner. His Majesty's minister, Theodore Alexio-vitz Golovin, met the Chinese plenipotentiaries, on the frontiers, in the neighbourhood of Nertshinsky, a considerable town belonging to Russia, near the river Amoor.

All matters were soon accommodated, to the mutual satisfaction of both parties, on the footing of *uti possidetis*; *i. e.* each of the parties retaining the people and territories that then belonged to them.

This determination kept all quiet for some time. The Chinese, however, soon appeared to be dissatisfied with the decision, and want to have the marches reviewed; to which, in my opinion, the Russians will not easily assent.

The 21st, the conductor came to congratulate the ambassador on his arrival at the borders, and acquainted him, that the horses and camels being ready, he might proceed when he pleased. I cannot omit an inconsiderable circumstance that happened at this place, as it strongly represents the caution and prudence of the Chinese. Our conductor, having seen some women walking in the fields, asked the ambassador who they were, and whither they were going? He was told they belonged to the retinue,

retinue, and were going along with it to China.

He replied, they had women enough in Pekin already ; and as there never had been an European woman in China, he could not be answerable for introducing the first, without a special order from the Emperor. But if his Excellency would wait for an answer, he would despatch a courier to court for that purpose. The return of this messenger could not be sooner than six weeks ; it was therefore thought more expedient to send back the women to Selinginsky, with the waggons that brought our baggage to this place.

C H A P.

C H A P. VII.

From passing the Saratzyn, and entering the Chinese territories, to our arrival at the wall of China.

THE 22d of September, having loaded the camels with our baggage, and procured carriages for the boxes that contained his Majesty's presents to the Emperor, which were too large for camels to bear, we mounted and passed the Saratzyn, and soon entered the Chinese territories. We travelled fifteen miles, when we arrived, about evening, at the river Orchon, running with a smooth stream to the north.

The

The carriages retarded our progres[s] greatly, as the horses were sprightly, and unaccustomed to draught.

This day we commenced guests of the Emperor of China, who entertains all ambassadors, and bears their expences, from the day they enter his dominions, till the time they quit them again. Our retinue consisted of about one hundred persons, who were allowed fifteen sheep every day. The overplus of this large allowance was given to the Mongalls who drove the camels. Besides mutton and beef, there is no other kind of provision to be found, till you come within the wall of China. The mutton is of a middle size; but, I must confess, exceeding fine. The conductor was attended by an officer from the Tush-du-Chan, who procured, from the Mongalls encamped nearest our road, what sheep we wanted. The camels were very tractable, and stooped to take on their loads. But the horses were at first very unmanageable. Many of them had never before been

been employed for any use, and were saddled with great difficulty, but mounted with much more; for the very smell of our cloaths, which they perceived to be different from that of the Mongalls, their masters, made them snort and spring with great fury. They were easily managed, notwithstanding, when we got upon their backs.

Our road this day lay through fine plains and vallies, covered with rank grass; but not a single tent was to be seen. I inquired why such a fine soil was without inhabitants, and was told, that the Chinese had forbid the Mongalls to encamp so near the Russian borders, for fear of being allured to pass over to their territories, as many had formerly done. These fruitful vallies are surrounded with pleasant hills, of easy ascent, whose summits are covered with tufts of trees. Many of these tufts being of a circular figure, and having no underwood, appear as if they had been planted and pruned by art; others are irregular, and

and sometimes a ridge of trees runs from one hill to another. These objects afford a prospect so pleasing to the eye, and so seldom to be found, that one cannot help being charmed. And this pleasure is still heightened by the gentle-flowing rivulets, abounding with fish, and plenty of game in the vallies, and among the trees.

The 23d, we set out early, and came to a rivulet called Ira, running to the north-west, till it falls into the Orchon, which we passed, and pitched our tents on the other side. The rank grass by accident took fire, and had not water been at hand to extinguish it, and the weather very calm, the consequences might have been fatal. We travelled farther this day than the former, as fewer inconveniences arose from the refrifness of the horses.

The 24th, we continued our journey towards the south-east, along smooth roads, through a pleasant country; and, at evening, reached a rivulet called Shara, or the yellow rivulet, on the banks of which we set

set up our tents. The vallies now were more contracted, and less wood upon the hills than formerly.

The 25th, we came to a rivulet called Kara, or the black rivulet, from the colour of the water, which is tinged by the richness of the soil.

The 26th, we proceeded. The country retained much the same appearance, and the weather was very fine ; but not a single inhabitant was yet to be seen. In the evening, I walked from our tents, with some of our company, to the top of a neighbouring hill, where I found many plants of excellent rhubarb ; and, by the help of a stick, dug up as much of it as I wanted.

On these hills are a great number of animals called marmots, of a brownish colour, having feet like a badger, and nearly of the same size. They make deep burrows on the declivities of the hills ; and it is said, that in winter they continue in these holes, for a certain time, even without food. At this season, however, they sit or lie

lie near their burrows, keeping a strict watch ; and, at the approach of danger, rear themselves upon their hind-feet, giving a loud whistle, like a man, to call in the stragglers ; and then drop into their holes in a moment.

I should not have mentioned an animal so well known as the marmot, had it not been on account of the rhubarb. Wherever you see ten or twenty plants growing, you are sure of finding several burrows under the shades of their broad spreading leaves. Perhaps they may sometimes eat the leaves and roots of this plant. However, it is probable the manure they leave about the roots contributes not a little to its increase ; and their casting up the earth makes it shoot out young buds and multiply. This plant does not run and spread itself like docks, and others of the same species, but grows in tufts at uncertain distances, as if the seeds had been dropped with design. It appears that the Mongalls never accounted it worth culti-

vating, but that the world is obliged to the marmots for the quantities scattered at random in many parts of this country ; for whatever part of the ripe seed happens to be blown among the thick grass can very seldom reach the ground, but must there wither and die ; whereas, should it fall among the loose earth, thrown up by the marmots, it immediately takes root, and produces a new plant.

After digging and gathering the rhubarb, the Mongalls cut the large roots into small pieces, in order to make them dry more readily. In the middle of every piece they scoop a hole, through which a cord is drawn, in order to suspend them in any convenient place. They hang them, for most part, about their tents, and sometimes on the horns of their sheep. This is a most pernicious custom, as it destroys some of the best part of the root ; for all about the hole is rotten and useless ; whereas, were people rightly informed how to dig and dry this plant, there would not be one pound

pound of refuse in an hundred, which would save a great deal of trouble and expence, that much diminish the profits on this commodity. At present, the dealers in this article think these improvements not worthy of their attention, as their gains are more considerable on this than on any other branch of trade. Perhaps the government may hereafter think it proper to make some regulations with regard to this matter.

I have been more particular in describing the growth and management of the rhubarb ; because I never met with an author or person who could give a satisfactory account where, or how it grows. I am persuaded, that, in such a dry climate as this, it might easily be so cultivated as to produce any quantity that could be wanted.

I omit any computation of the distances of places along this road, as the whole of it from the borders to Pekin has been measured by a wheel, or machine, given to the caravan

caravan by the governour of Siberia for that purpose. I shall afterwards subjoin the exact distances taken from this measurement.

The 27th and 28th we pursued the same road, over hills and through vallies : For, tho' few travel this way, the caravans, with their heavy carriages, leave such marks as are not soon effaced. It is only of late that the caravans travelled this road. Formerly they went farther to the north, by a Russian town called Nertzinsky, and thence to a Chinese city called Naun. That road is more convenient than the present, as it lies through places better inhabited ; but the present is shorter, and therefore taken by most travellers.

The 29th, we reached a river called Buroy, where we lodged. At this dry season all these rivers are fordable ; and they abound with sturgeon and other fish. Next morning, Mr Venant, our chief cook, dropped down, as he was coming out of his tent, and immedately expired, notwithstanding all possible care was taken for his

his recovery. We interred him as decently as time and circumstances would admit, and proceeded to a river called Bor-gaulty, where we pitched our tents for this night.

October 1st, after a long day's journey, we reached a rivulet called Koyra. The face of the country appeared nearly the same as formerly.

The 2d, after another long march, we came to the banks of the river Tola, the largest we had seen since we left the Se-linga.

Next day we crossed the Tola at a pretty deep ford, where the river was in breadth about the flight of an arrow at point blank. It was noon before our camels got over, and too late to proceed. We were therefore obliged to set up our tents on the east bank of the river, which was over-grown with tall oziers.

Here our conductor furnished us with fresh horses and camels. From the bor-ders to this place our stages were regulated
by

by brooks and rivers, for the conveniency of getting water : And, for the same reason, as there are no rivers nor brooks from hence to the wall of China, fountains and springs will be our only stages.

On the banks of the Tola we found many Mongalls encamped, with numerous flocks of cattle, being the first inhabitants we had seen since our leaving the border. The Russians, and the Mongalls who are subjects of Russia, claim all the country westward from the Tola, which, they say, is the natural boundary between the two empires. This would indeed be a considerable addition to the dominions of Russia : But as both these mighty monarchs are abundantly provided with a vast extent of territory, neither party think it worth while to dispute about a few hundred miles of property, which obtained would perhaps not balance the cost, or contribute but little to the advantage of either. *

The appearance of the country was now greatly altered to the worse. We saw no more

more pleasant hills and woods; neither could I find one single plant of rhubarb. The soil was dry and barren, and the grass not to be compared to what we had already passed over.

The 4th, after every man had drunk his fill of the pure and wholesome water of Tola, and filled his bottle with it, we departed with some regret, as we could hope for no more rivers or brooks till we came to the wall of China. We soon entered the desert commonly named by the Mongalls the Hungry Desert. How far it deserves that title, will be seen as we advance.

In the evening, we reached some pits, called Tola-tologoy, of brackish water, where we pitched our tents. The road still pointed to the south-east, with little variation, over grounds that rose a little at first, but afterwards gradually declined. We saw many Mongolian tents and cattle dispersed along the desert.

The 5th, we set out again, and, in the evening, came to some fountains, called Chelo-

Chelo-tologoy, of pretty fresh water. The country was quite level, and appeared to the eye as plain as the sea. The soil was dry, barren, and gravelly, and neither tree nor bush to be seen; a prospect not very agreeable,

The 6th, early in the morning, we proceeded eastward, through the same sort of flat country. The weather was very fine, and the roads excellent. In the evening, we arrived at a pool, called Tylack, of brackish water, where we remained the following night. This day we saw several large flocks of antelopes, and some Mongalls in their tents, which was no disagreeable object in this continued plain. We passed few of these tents without visiting them, where we always found an hospitable reception, and were entertained with some zaturan, a kind of tea which I formerly described. And, if we happened to stay till our baggage was gone out of sight, the landlord conducted us by the shortest

way

way to the springs that terminated the next stage.

The next day, we came to the wells called Gachun. Our biscuit being now spent, we were reduced to live on mutton only, during the rest of our journey thro' this desert ; which we accounted no great hardship, as it was extremely fine. It is not a little surprising, that, notwithstanding the barren appearance of this unsheltered plain, the cattle are in good condition, but particularly the sheep. The short grass, though in many places thinly scattered, must be of a very nourishing quality. This will naturally proceed from the climate, and the soil, which every where partakes of a nitrous quality, as plainly appears from the scurf of salt round the edges of the lakes and ponds, and the taste of the water, generally brackish in the springs and pits.

The 8th, our conductor furnished us with a fresh set of cattle, which detained us later than our usual time of setting out.

VOL. I.

3 D

This

This day, the soil was very much inclined to gravel, containing a number of red and yellow pebbles, many of which being transparent, made a fine appearance while the sun shone. We were informed there were sometimes stones of value found here, which so much excited our curiosity, that each of us, every day, picked up a considerable quantity. On examination, most of them were thrown away, as altogether useless; the few we thought proper to retain were wrought into very good seals. A man might gather a bushel of such stones every day in this desert. One of our people, a Grecian by birth, who understood something of the nature of stones, found one that he called a yellow sapphire, and valued it at fifty crowns. Perhaps these pebbles might be of that kind which the lapidaries call cornelian; for they are sufficiently hard, and take a fine polish.

The 9th, we set out early, and travelled to a pool named Oko-toulgu. This day, a lama from the Kutuchgu, going to Pekin, joined

joined our company, who, by his habit and equipage, seemed to be a person of eminence. In marching along the tedious desert, the conversation turned on a terrible earthquake, which happened during the month of July last in China, between the long wall and Pekin, and had laid in ruins several villages and walled towns, and buried many people in their ruins. The lama inquired what was the opinion of the learned men in Europe concerning the cause of this phaenomenon. We told him, it was commonly reckoned to be subterraneous fire; and then asked, in our turn, to what cause such extraordinary appearances were imputed by his countrymen? He replied, that some of their learned lamas had written, that God, after he had formed the earth, placed it on a golden frog; and, whenever this prodigious frog had occasion to scratch its head, or stretch out its foot, that part of the earth immediately above was shaken. There was no reasoning on a notion so fantastical; we therefore left the lama to please

please himself with his hypothesis, and turned the discourse to some other subject.

The 10th, we came to the springs called Korpartu. The appearance of things this day were almost the same as on the preceding days. The soil appeared so barren, that none of the common methods of improvement could make it bear any kind of grain, or even alter its present condition. The dispositions of its inhabitants, the Mongalls, seem wonderfully suited to their situation, as they appear more contented with their condition than those who possess the most fruitful countries.

In the evening of the 11th, we arrived at Khododu, where we found the water clear, and pretty fresh, bursting, in a strong spring, from the gravelly earth, and running in a stream to a considerable distance, till it loses itself in the sand. This was the first running water we had seen since we left the Tola. And we were as happy, while sitting round this fountain, and broiling our mutton-chops, as others at a table

plen-

plentifully furnished with Burgundy and Champaign. Our appetites were indeed very keen ; to which daily exercise, the coldness of the air, and drinking nothing but water, greatly contributed.

Next morning, being the 12th, there was a little frost upon the ground. Several flocks of gray plovers came to drink at the spring, of which our people killed as many as our present circumstances required. These poor harmless birds seemed insensible of danger ; and, perhaps, they had never before heard the report of a gun ; for, no sooner was the piece fired, than they took a short flight round the fountain, whistling as they flew, and immediately alighted to drink again. The plover is a pretty bird, and pleasant to eat ; and the soles of its feet are as hard as so much horn, which prevent its being hurt by the stones or gravel. In the evening, we came to the wells called Bouk-horlike, without any thing material happening, or any difference on the face of the country.

The

The 13th, we continued our journey to the wells of Buduruy, where we were again furnished with fresh horses and camels.

The 14th, we came to a place called Kadan-Kachu, where we were obliged to dig a pit, four feet deep, in order to procure water; which was very bad, having both a disagreeable smell, and bitter taste; but was drinkable, when boiled with some tea. We could, however, get none for our cattle, as the high wind filled the pits with sand as fast as we could dig them. This sand is of a whitish colour, and so light and dry, that it is driven by the winds into your face and eyes, and becomes very disagreeable. Most of our people, indeed, were provided with a piece of net-work, made of horse-hair, which covered their eyes, and is very useful in drifts, either of sand or snow.

The 15th, we travelled over deep sands; and in the evening arrived at other springs, called Tzagan-teggerick. The wind continuing

nuing high, it was with much difficulty we set up our tents. It is to be observed that, on these deep and light sands, our European tents are of little use, as there is no earth in which the tent-pins can be fastened. The Tartar tents are much preferable; for, their figure being round and taper, like a bee-hive, the wind takes but little hold of them, and they stand equally well on a sandy, or on any other surface. They are, besides, warmer, more easily erected, taken down, and transported.

The 16th, we left the deep sand, and travelled along the same sort of dry gravelly ground as formerly. In the evening, we pitched our tents at the springs called Sadjin. The variety of objects, in this dreary waste, are so few, that in this, as well as in other respects, it much resembles the sea. Here one can see no farther than if he was placed on the surface of the water, out of sight of land; the rounding of the globe, in both cases, being the same. Sometimes, in the morning, I have
been

been agreeably surprised in fancying I saw, at a small distance, a fine river, having rows of trees growing upon its banks ; but this was only a deception of the sight, proceeding from the vapours magnifying some scattered shrubs into great trees.

The 17th, we came to some wells of very bad water, called Oudey, where we found fresh horses and camels waiting for us. Our conductor resolved to lose no time, being apprehensive that we might be overtaken in the desert by the frost and deep snow, which usually happen at this season. Such an event would have retarded our march, and incommoded us not a little in many respects. We therefore travelled as long stages, as the convenience of water, and the strength of our cattle, would permit.

The 18th, after a long day's journey, we came to the wells called Ulan-kala. We found, almost every day, Mongalls in their tents, which stood like so many hives, dispersed through this solitary plain.

The

The 19th, we mounted again, and travelled to the springs named Tzilan-tegge-rick. This day we saw several flocks of antelopes ; and, indeed, few days passed in which we did not see some of these animals.

The 20th, we came to a place called Ourandabu. The weather still continued fair, the sky clear, and the mornings frosty. The water at this place was tolerable ; but we were obliged to dig for it. When it happened that we had a long stage from one spring to another, for fear of coming too late, we usually sent a couple of men before us, in order to gather fuel, and to dig pits, that the water might have time to settle before our arrival.

The 21st, we proceeded, and in the evening arrived at a lake of salt-water. After digging, however, we found some fresher. Were it not that these lakes and pits are scattered through this desert, it must have been altogether uninhabited, either by man or beast. This consideration, among

many others, has often led me to admire the infinite wisdom of Almighty God, in the dispensations of his providence, for the support of all his creatures.

In my opinion, these springs are produced by the rains and melted snow in the spring ; for the water, sinking in the sand, is thereby prevented from being exhaled, in summer, by the heat of the sun, which must be very scorching in this desert, in which there is not the least shade to be found.

The 22d, we quitted the salt lake, in a cold frosty morning, and a strong northerly wind, which was very disagreeable. At evening we reached the wells of Kulat. These pits take their names from the quality of the water, as salt, sour, sweet, bitter, or from the different tribes of people who inhabit the country in the neighbourhood.

In the midst of our fatigues, we had the satisfaction to be among a friendly people,
who

who did every thing in their power to lessen our wants:

Next day, we reached the wells of Min-gat. The weather, though cold, was not unpleasant. And, the 24th, having got fresh horses and camels, we came, in the evening, to a pond of brackish water, called Korunteer, upon the extremity of a dismal bank of sand, running across our road.

The day following, we entered on the sand-bank, along a narrow and crooked passage between two hillocks. Every one prayed for calm weather while we travelled over the sand ; which put me in mind of being at sea. We continued our journey through deep sand till about noon, when all our horses and camels being tired, we halted in a hollow place, where we dug, and found very bad water. We remained here till next morning.

Our cattle being a little refreshed, tho' they had been very indifferently fed among the sand, where nothing was to be seen but some tufts of withered grafts, we set out again.

gain. Along this bank there is not the least track or path of any kind ; for the finallest blast of wind immediately effaces it, and renders all the surface smooth.

We had gone but a few miles, when most of our people were obliged to alight, and walk on foot, the horses being quite tired with the deepness of the sand ; which made our progres extremely slow. The weather, fortunately, was still very calm. About noon, we pitched our tents in a hollow place, encompassed with high hillocks of sand. I observed that, in the open desert, we had already passed, the prospect was much confined ; but here it was quite straitened ; for, if you ascended one of these mounts, you could see nothing but mount rising above mount, like so many sugar-loaves, or rather like so many cupolas.

In the evening it began to blow a little at north-east, which drove about the light sand like snow ; but, about midnight, the wind rose to such an height, that all our tents were overset at once, and our beds filled

filled with sand. As it was near morning, we thought it not worth while to pitch them again. We therefore prepared ourselves to set out at the dawn, in hopes of getting over the sand-bank before night ; which, by riding and walking by turns, in order to hasten our progress, we happily effected ; and, in the evening, reached the springs of Kochatu.

At the place where we passed the sand, it was not above twenty English miles in breadth, which took us up three days. We could have travelled four times that distance on the plain, with more ease both to ourselves and cattle. I am informed this bank of sand runs a great way southward, and, in some places, is above thirty leagues broad. They, whose business calls them often to cross the sands, have thin leather coats made on purpose, and round pieces of glass tied before their eyes.

This sand-bank appears like the waves of the sea ; for the hillocks, some of which are about twenty feet of perpendicular height,

height, are of so light a nature; that the wind carries them from place to place, levelling one, and forming another: And hence it is easy to conceive, that a weary traveller, lying down on the lee-side of one of these hillocks, might, in a few hours, be buried in the sand; which is reported to have often happened in this and other sandy deserts.

The 28th, we proceeded along the plain to the springs called Chabertu. I cannot but take notice of the uncommon manner the people here have of killing their sheep. They make a slit with a knife between two ribs, through which they put their hand, and squeeze the heart till the creature expire; by this method all the blood remains in the carcase. When the sheep is dead, and hungry people cannot wait till the flesh is regularly dressed, they generally cut out the biscuit and rump, wool and all, and broil them on the coals; then scrape off the singed wool and eat them. This I have found by experience to be no disagreeable

greeable morsel, even without any kind of sauce.

The next day we travelled another stage to the wells of Saminsa, where we found better water than usual. The length and thickness of the grass showed that the soil now began to mend. This day there fell some snow, and the wind was cold and northerly.

The 30th, we got fresh horses, and proceeded to the springs of Krema. From the appearance of the grass one would conclude, that the soil at this place was very fine. We saw great numbers of horses belonging to the Emperor turned out to graze. Notwithstanding all the haste we had hitherto made, we were this day overtaken by a fall of snow, which proved very inconvenient, not so much on account of the cold, but it covered all fewel, so that we could find none to dress our victuals.

The 31st, we came to a place called Naringkaruffu, where, to our great satisfaction, we found a small brook of fresh water,

water, and some Mongolian huts. I observed, that, from the sand-bank eastward, the soil becomes gradually better every day. This was now the fortieth day since we left the border; during which time we had not halted one day, nor seen a single house, and the twentieth and eight from the time we quitted the river Tola, and entered the desert, in which we had neither seen river, tree, bush, nor mountain. Though we were obliged now and then to fetch a compass, on account of the watering places, yet in general our course deviated but little from the south-east point.

The 1st of November, we halted at this place, that we might have time to put things in order before we passed the long wall, which was now at no great distance.

Next day we proceeded, and about noon we could perceive the famous wall, running along the tops of the mountains, towards the north-east. One of our people cried out Land, as if we had been all this while at sea. It was now, as nearly as I can compute,

compute, about forty English miles from us, and appeared white at this distance. We could not this night reach the passage through the mountains, and therefore pitched our tents in the open plain as usual. We now began to feel the effects of the cold; for the snow, continuing to lie upon the desert, proved very inconvenient on many accounts, but particularly by retarding the progress of our heavy and cumbersome baggage. But we comforted ourselves with the hopes of soon seeing an end of all our toils, and arriving in a rich and inhabited country; for, though all of our people were in good health, they began to be very weary of the desert, and no wonder, as many of them had lain in the open field ever since we left Selinginsky.

November 3d, after travelling about an hour we passed the vestiges of a camp, which seemed to have been regularly designed. I was informed that the Emperor encamped here, when he led his troops a-

gainst the Mongalls, called by the missionaries in China the Western Tartars.

The nearer we came to the mountains we were the more surprised at the sight of the so much celebrated wall of China, commonly called for its length the endless wall. The appearance of it, running from one high rock to another, with square towers at certain intervals, even at this distance, is most magnificent.

About noon, we quitted the plain, and entered an opening between two mountains. To the left, the mountains are very high. On the right, they decline as far as they are within view ; but, I am told, they rise again to a great height.

We descended by a narrow path about eight feet broad, between the mountains, till we came to a small Chinese monastery, situated on the declivity of a steep rock. Curiosity led us to visit this solitary place : But the road being impassable to horses, we alighted and walked thither. On our arriving near the place, the monks came out

out to meet us, with the usual friendly salutation of the country, which is performed by laying one of their hands on the other, and then shaking them, and pronouncing these words *Cho-loy-cho*. The compliment being returned, they conducted us into the apartments of their little chapel, and treated us with a dish of green tea, which was very agreeable. In the chapel was a sort of altar-piece, on which were placed several small brass images; and, in one of the corners, I observed a sack filled with wheat. The habit of the monks was a long gown with wide sleeves. On their heads was a small cap, and their long lank hair hung down over their shoulders. They had very few hairs in their beards. This being the first Chinese house we met with, I have on that account been more particular in describing it. Everything now appeared to us as if we had arrived in another world. We felt especially a sensible alteration in the weather; for, instead

instead of the cold bleak wind in the desert, we had here a warm and pleasant air.

We again proceeded along the narrow path, but of breadth sufficient for a wheel-carriage. The road being steep, and in many places rugged, we walked down the hill, and in half an hour came to the foot of it, where we found ourselves surrounded on all sides by high rocky mountains. Our route now lay along the south side of a rivulet, full of great stones, which had fallen from the rocks in rainy weather. In the cliffs of the rocks you see little scattered cottages, with spots of cultivated ground, much resembling those romantic figures of landscapes which are painted on the China ware, and other manufactures of this country. These are accounted fanciful by most Europeans, but are really natural.

After we had travelled about seven or eight miles, along the bank of the brook, we came in the evening to a Chinese village, at the foot of a high mountain, where we lodged in clean rooms, with warm fires
of

of charcoal. There were no chimneys in the rooms ; but, instead of these, the charcoal was put into a portable grate of brass or iron, and allowed to burn clear in the open air ; after which it was brought into the apartment. Though the desert is one continued plain, it lies much higher than the plains and villages of China ; for, when we entered the defile, the ascent was very inconsiderable when compared with the descent on the other side.

Here we began to taste of the fine fruits of China ; for soon after our arrival in the village, our conductor sent a present to the ambassador of some baskets of fruits, consisting of water-melons, musk-melons, sweet and bitter oranges, peaches, apples, walnuts, chesnuts, and several other sorts which I never saw before, together with a jar of Chinese arrack, provisions of several sorts, and some Chinese bread, called bobon, made of wheaten flour, and baked over a pot with the steam of boiling-water. It is very light, and not disagreeable in taste ; at least

least it seemed so to us, who had seen no bread for a month before.

Next day we halted to refresh ourselves after our long fatigue. I took this opportunity to walk up to the top of the mountain, in order to view the adjacent country, but could only see a continuation of the chain of mountains, rising one above another, and to the northward some glimpses of the long wall as it runs along them.

The 5th, we proceeded eastward down the south bank of a river, whose channel was covered with great stones. The road is cut out of the rock for a considerable length at those places where there is no natural passage between the rocks and the river, which must have been a work of great labour. This river cannot fail to be a complete torrent in time of great rains.

Having travelled about six or eight miles, we arrived at the famous wall of China. We entered at a great gate, which is shut every night, and always guarded by a thousand

thousand men, under the command of two officers of distinction, one a Chinese, and the other a Mantzur Tartar; for it is an established custom in China, and has prevailed ever since the conquest of the Tartars, that in all places of public trust there must be a Chinese and a Tartar invested with equal power. This rule is observed both in civil and military affairs. The Chinese pretend, that two in an office are a sort of spies upon one another's actions, and thereby many fraudulent practices are either prevented or detected.

C H A P.

C H A P. VIII.

*From the Wall of China to Pekin ;
our Entry into that City.*

AS soon as we had entered the gate, these two officers, and many subalterns, came to compliment the ambassador on his safe arrival ; and asked the favour of him to walk into the guard-room and drink a dish of tea. We accordingly dismounted, and went into a spacious hall on the south side of the gate. This apartment was very clean, having benches all around, and is kept on purpose for the reception of persons of distinction. We were entertained

ed with variety of fruits and confections, and several sorts of tea. After staying about half an hour, the ambassador took leave of the gentlemen, and we proceeded on our journey. We travelled about four miles farther, and came to a considerable town named Kalgan. At some distance from the place we were met by the commandant, and the Mandarin Tulishin, who had paid us a visit at Selinginsky. They accompanied the ambassador to his lodgings, which were in houses apart from the rest of the town; and provisions were sent us in great plenty.

From the wall to this place the country to the north begins to open, and contains some villages, corn-fields, and gardens.

The same evening, the ambassador and the gentlemen of the retinue were invited to sup at the commandant's house, and horses were sent to carry us thither. We alighted in the outer-court, where the commandant in person waited for us, and conducted us through a neat inner-court

VOL. I. 3 G into

into a hall, in the middle of which stood a large brass chaffing-dish, in shape of an urn, with a fire of charcoal in it. The floor was covered with mats, and the room quite set round with chairs, and little square japaned tables. The ambassador sat at a table by himself, and the rest of the company at separate tables, by two and two. We were first entertained with tea, and a dram of hot arrack ; after which supper was brought, and placed on the tables, without either table-cloth, napkins, knives, or forks. Instead of forks were laid down to every person a couple of ivory pins, with which the Chinese take up their meat. The dishes were small, and placed upon the table in the most regular manner, the vacancies being filled with saucers, containing pickles and bitter herbs. The entertainment consisted of pork, mutton, fowls, and two roasted pigs. The carver sits upon the floor, and executes his office with great dexterity. He cuts the flesh into such small bits, as may easily be taken up by the guests,

guests, without further trouble. The meat being cut up is given to the footmen, who supply the empty dishes on the tables. The whole is served in China-ware, and neither gold nor silver is to be seen. All the servants perform their duty with the utmost regularity, and without the least noise. I must confess, I was never better pleased with any entertainment.

The victuals being removed, the dessert was placed on the tables in the same order, and consisted of a variety of fruits and confections. In the mean time a band of music was called in, which consisted of ten or twelve performers, on various but chiefly wind-instruments, so different from those of that class in Europe, that I shall not pretend to describe them. The music was accompanied with dancing, which was very entertaining. The dancers were nearly as numerous as the musicians. Their performances were only a kind of gesticulation, consisting of many ridiculous postures; for they seldom moved from the same

same place. The evening being pretty far spent, we took leave, and returned to our lodgings.

The 6th, a great fall of snow, and a cold frosty wind, obliged us to halt at this place.

Next day, the frost and snow still continued; notwithstanding we set out, and passed over a stone-bridge near this place, paved, not with small stones, but with large, square, free stones, neatly joined. After travelling eastward about thirty English miles, we reached a large and populous city called Siang-fu. We were met without the gate by some of the principal inhabitants, and conducted to our lodgings.

When we arrived, the governour was out a-hunting with one of the Emperor's sons. As soon as he returned in the evening, he waited on the ambassador, and complimented him in a very polite manner, excusing himself for not waiting on him sooner. At the same time, he gave his Excellency

lency a formal invitation to supper ; for it is appointed by the court that foreign ambassadors should be magnificently entertained in all the towns through which they pass : But the ambassador, being somewhat indisposed, desired to be excused.

Our route this day was through a fine champaign country, well cultivated, but containing very few trees. We passed several small towns, and many villages, well built, and inclosed with walls. The roads were well made, and in good order, running always in straight lines where the ground will allow. I had heard a great deal of the order and oeconomy of these people, but found my information far short of what I daily saw in all their works and actions. The streets of every village run in straight lines.

Upon the road we met with many turrets, called post-houses, erected at certain distances from one another, with a flag-staff, on which is hoisted the imperial pendant. These places are guarded by a few soldiers,

soldiers, who run a-foot from one post to another with great speed, carrying letters or despatches that concern the Emperor. The turrets are so contrived as to be in sight of one another; and, by signals, they can convey intelligence of any remarkable event. By this means the court is informed, in the speediest manner imaginable, of whatever disturbance may happen in the most remote provinces of the empire. These posts are also very useful, by keeping the country free from highwayman; for should a person escape at one house, on a signal being made, he would certainly be stopped at the next. The distance of one post-house from another is usually five Chinese li or miles, each li consisting of five hundred bow lengths. I compute five of their miles to be about two and an half English.

The 8th, we halted at this place. As we could not be present at the entertainment to which we were invited last night by the governour, he had resolved that the delicacies

delicacies prepared on that occasion should not be lost, and therefore sent into our court twelve tables, whereon were placed, by a number of people, all the victuals that were dressed the preceding night with the desert, and several sorts of tea. The whole was afterwards brought into the hall, and there placed in form upon the tables. When this was done, an officer of distinction came to desire the ambassador to taste of his Imperial Majesty's bounty. We accordingly sat down at the tables in great order. Every thing was very good, but mostly cold, having been carried through the streets to some distance. After we had removed from the table, the person who had the direction of the entertainment, called our servants, and ordered them to sit down at the tables and eat. This produced a very diverting scene; but, had it not been complied with, the governour would have thought himself highly affronted.

In the evening, the Emperor's third son went through this city, on his way towards the

the capital. He was carried upon mens shoulders in a palankin, a vehicle very easy for the traveller, and well known in European settlements in India: The Emperor's sons have no other names than those of first, second, third, &c. This prince had only a small retinue of a few horsemen.

Our new conductor, Tulishin, invited the ambassador and his retinue to pass the evening at his lodgings. His Excellency excused himself, as he had not been at the governour's. All the gentlemen, however, accepted the invitation. The entertainment was elegant, and something like that I formerly described, accompanied with dancing and music, and quail-fighting. It is surprising to see how these little birds fly at one another as soon as they are set upon the table, and fight, like game-cocks, to death. The Chinese are very fond of this diversion, and bet as high on their quails as the English do on cocks. They are also great lovers of cock-fighting; but it is reckoned among the vulgar sports. The
quails

quails are generally parted before they hurt one another too much, and reserved in cages till another occasion.

The 9th, having sent off the baggage in the morning, the ambassador returned the governour's visit. We only staid to drink tea ; after which we immediately mounted, and pursued our journey to a small town called Juny, where we arrived in the evening. Near this place is a steep rock, standing on a plain, inaccessible on all sides, except to the west, where a narrow winding path is cut in the rock, which leads to a Pagan temple and nunnery built upon the top of it. These edifices make a pretty appearance from the plain ; and, as the story goes, were built from the foundation in one night by a lady, on the following occasion. This lady was very beautiful, virtuous, and rich, and had many powerful princes for her suitors. She told them, she intended to build a temple and a monastery of certain dimensions, with her own hands, in one night, on the top of this

VOL. I. 3 H rock ;

rock ; and whoever would undertake to build a stone-bridge over a river in the neighbourhood, in the same space of time, him she promised to accept for a husband. All the lovers having heard the difficult task imposed on them, returned to their respective dominions, except one stranger, who undertook to perform the hard condition. The lover and the lady began their labour at the same time, and the lady completed her part before the light appeared ; but as soon as the sun was risen, she saw from the top of the rock, that her lover had not half-finished his bridge, having raised only the pillars for the arches. Failing, therefore, in his part of the performance, he also was obliged to depart to his own country ; and the lady passed the remainder of her days in her own monastery.

The river is about a quarter of a mile from the rock, and the pillars still remain about five or six feet above the water ; they are six or eight in number, and good substantial

substantial work. This tale I relate as a specimen of many fabulous stories, which I heard every day, and the people firmly believe. In the monastery there are at present many monks and nuns.

The chain of mountains running to the north, which bound this plain to the west, are very high, rugged, and barren. Their breadth from the desert to the plain habitable country of China, I compute not to exceed fifteen or twenty miles, and in many places it is much less. But their length, I am informed, is above one thousand English miles. They encompass all, or the greatest part of the empire of China, to the north and west. These impregnable bulwarks, together with the almost impassable deserts, have, in my opinion, so long preserved this nation from being over-run by the western heroes. One would imagine, that a country, so fortified by nature, had little need of such a strong wall for its defence ; for, if all the passes of the mountains are as narrow and difficult as that where

where we entered, a small number of men might defend it against a mighty army.

Juny is but a small place ; it suffered greatly by the earthquake that happened in the month of July the preceding year, above one half of it being thereby laid in ruins. Indeed, more than one-half of the towns and villages through which we travelled this day had suffered much on the same occasion, and vast numbers of people had been buried in the ruins. I must confess, it was a dismal scene to see every where such heaps of rubbish.

All the best houses being thrown down by the earthquake, we were lodged in the priests apartments of a temple, which had escaped the general devastation. Our conductor treated the monks with very little ceremony, and desired them to seek other lodgings for themselves. These priests were not at all superstitious, as appeared sufficiently from the little reverence they paid to their idols, and statues of reputed saints. They conducted us into the temple,

temple, and several apartments adjoining, where stood many images of saints, some of which were monstrous figures of stone and plaster. One of the priests gave us the history of some of them, which I thought too absurd to be inserted. We then returned into the temple, which was a small but neat building. In one end of it we saw an altar, rising by steps to the cieling, on which were placed a number of small images, cast chiefly in brass, resembling men and women, birds and beasts. We were entertained in the temple with tea till the priests had removed their beds. At the entrance is hung a large bell, attended by a priest, who tolls it on seeing passengers, in order to invite them to say their prayers; which having done, they generally leave a small gratuity to the temple.

In the night, we were a little alarmed with the shock of an earthquake, which awakened all our people, but did no damage.

Next

Next day, our conductor notified to the ambassador, that he could proceed no farther till he received an answer to some despatches he had sent to court. These news were not altogether agreeable, as we apprehended another shock of an earthquake. Nothing, however, of that kind happened during the two days we were obliged to remain at this place.

The 12th, we continued our journey to a little town, where we lodged. This, and most of the towns and villages through which we passed to day, had suffered greatly by the earthquake ; particularly one considerable walled town, where very few houses remained, and the walls were levelled with the ground.

About noon, next day, we came to a large, populous, and well built city, with broad streets, as straight as a line. Near this place runs a fine river, which appears navigable, having across it a noble stone bridge, of several arches, and paved with large square stones. In the evening, we arrived

arrived at a small town, after passing through a very pleasant and fruitful country.

On the 34th, we halted at this little town : But our baggage, and his Majesty's presents, advanced a stage farther. These, by order of the Mandarin, our conductor, were carried on men's shoulders, covered with pieces of yellow silk, as every thing is which hath any connection with the court. Whatever is distinguished by this badge is looked on as sacred ; and he who has the care of any thing belonging to the Emperor needs no other protection ; such is the reverence paid him all over the empire. The yellow colour is chosen by the Emperor, because, among the Chinese, it is the emblem of the sun, to which he is compared.

The following day, our road, lying over some rocks, was very rugged. In some places it was cut, for a considerable length, above twenty feet deep, through the solid rock, which appears to have been a work
of

of great labour and expence. But no people I ever saw take such pains to make their streets and high-ways easy to travellers as the Chinese. In some places of the rocks were cut out images of Chinese saints ; but the workmanship very mean.

Near this place, we passed through six or eight strong semicircular walls within one another, which have the endless wall for their common diameter, and take in a great compafs. In all these walls there are large well built gates, guarded by a constant watch, both in times of peace and war. At one of them, the ambassador was saluted with three great guns, from a tower over the gate-way. These walls seem to be of the same materials and architecture with the long wall, having square towers at the distance of a bow-shot from each other. While we stopped at one of the gates to refresh ourselves, I took the opportunity to walk into one of these towers, where I saw some hundreds of old iron cannon thrown together as useless. On examination

examination I found them to be composed of three or four pieces of hammered iron, joined, and fastened together with hoops of the same metal. The Chinese have, however, now learned to cast as fine brass cannon as are any where to be found. From this tower I was led, by a broad stone stair, to the top of the wall, which is above twenty feet in breadth, and paved with large square stones, closely joined, and cemented with strong mortar. I walked along this flat, till I came to a rock, where I found a high stair of above a thousand steps, the whole breadth of the wall, which led to a tower on the summit, from whence I could see like a stair, on the other side, forming a descent to a narrow passage between two rocks. I observed also, that the wall was neither so high nor broad where it was carried over another rock to the south-west, as at the place where I stood. But time not allowing me to go farther, I returned by the same way to our company ; and, after staying a few hours,

VOL. I. 3 I we

we proceeded this afternoon to the town of Zulinguang, where we lodged.

The next day, after travelling about two hours, we came to the last semicircular wall. Here ended all the hills and mountains. Our road now lay through a fine champaign country, interspersed with many small towns and villages. In the evening, we reached a large neat city, called Zang-ping-jew. In the market place stood a triumphal arch, whereon were hung a number of streamers, and silken pendants, of various colours. The streets were clean, straight, and broad ; in some places covered with gravel, in others paved with flat square stones.

As soon as we reached our lodgings, the governour of the place came to salute the ambassador, and invited him to an entertainment, prepared by order of his Majesty.

The invitation was accepted, and we immediately went to the governour's palace. The entertainment was very magnificent,
some-

somewhat of the same kind with that I formerly described, and accompanied with music and dancing. This place is situated in a fruitful plain, about thirty English miles northward of Pekin.

The 17th, after travelling about a dozen of miles, we came to a small town called Shach. The weather being very fine and warm, the governour came to meet the ambassador, and desired him to refresh himself a little, by drinking tea. Here we halted about an hour, and then proceeded six or eight miles farther, to a small village, about four miles from the capital, where we lodged.

Next morning, two mandarins came from court, to congratulate the ambassador on his arrival, and brought some horses, on which he and his retinue were to make their entry. The furniture of the horses was very simple, and far inferior to the costly trappings of the Persians.

My lodgings in this village happened to be at a cook's house, which gave me an
oppor-

opportunity of observing the ingenuity of these people, even on trifling occasions. My landlord being in his shop, I paid him a visit, where I found six kettles, placed in a row on furnaces, having a separate opening under each of them, for receiving the fewel, which consisted of a few small sticks and straw. On his pulling a thong, he blew a pair of bellows, which made all his kettles boil in a very short time. They are indeed very thin, and made of cast iron, being extremely smooth, both within and without. The scarcity of fewel, near such a populous city, prompts people to contrive the easiest methods of dressing their victuals, and keeping themselves warm during the winter, which is severe for two months.

About ten of the clock, we mounted, and proceeded towards the city, in the following order :

An

An officer, with his sword drawn.

Three soldiers.

One kettle-drummer.

Twenty-four soldiers, three in rank.

The steward.

Twelve footmen.

Two pages.

Three interpreters.

The ambassador, and a mandarin of distinction.

Two secretaries.

Six gentlemen, two and two.

Servants and attendants.

The whole retinue was dressed in their best apparel. The soldiers in uniform, carrying their muskets like horsemen standing sentry ; drawn swords being refused by our conductor, the officer only had that privilege.

We travelled from the village, along a fine road, through a cloud of dust, and multitudes of spectators ; and, in two hours, entered the city at the great north gate ;

gate ; which opened into a spacious street, perfectly straight, as far as the eye-sight could reach. We found it all sprinkled with water, which was very refreshing, after the dust we had passed through.

A guard of five hundred Chinese horsemen was appointed to clear the way ; notwithstanding which, we found it very difficult to get through the crowd. One would have imagined all the people in Pekin were assembled to see us ; though I was informed that only a small part of the inhabitants of the city were present. I observed also great crowds of women unveiled ; but they kept in the windows, doors, and in corners of the street. The soldiers did not behave with roughness to the people, as in some other places of the east, but treated them with great mildness and humanity. Indeed the people, of themselves, made as much way as was possible for them, considering their numbers. After a march of two hours, from the gate where we entered, we at last came to our lodgings,
in

in that part of the city called the Tartar's town, which is near the center of Pekin, and not far from the Emperor's palace.

We lodged in what is called the Russia-house. It was allotted, by the present Emperor, for the accommodation of the caravans from Moscovy, and is surrounded with a high wall of brick, which incloses three courts. The first from the street is appointed for the guard of Chinese soldiers. The second is a spacious square, on the sides whereof are apartments for servants. The third is divided from the second by a high brick-wall, thro' which you enter by a great gate. Opposite to this gate is the great hall, which rises a few steps above the level of the court. The floor is neatly paved with white and black marble; and, on the same floor, to the right and left of the hall, are two small bed-chambers. This hall was occupied by the ambassador. In the same court are two large houses, divided into apartments, in which the retinue was lodged. All these structures are but of one

one storey, with large windows of latticework, on which is pasted white paper. The cielings are very light and airy, consisting only of strong laths, with reeds laid across them, and done over on the inside with paper. The roofs project considerably over the walls, and are covered with fine light glazed tiles, which, as far as I could learn, are of a quality to last ages. The bed-chambers only of the hall are neatly finished with lath and plaster.

The same evening, the master of the ceremonies came to compliment the ambassador. He, in the Emperor's name, inquired into the chief subject of his commission; and, having received a satisfactory answer, retired.

This gentleman, named Aloy, was by birth a Mongall Tartar, and a great favourite of the Emperor. He was a person of great politeness, and a good friend to the Christians, especially the missionaries, who received fresh marks of his kindness every day. In his youth he conversed much with
the

the Jesuits, who taught him geography, and some other branches of science; which contributed not a little to raise his character among the Chinese, and recommend him to the notice and favour of the Emperor.

Thus, we happily arrived at the famous and long wished for city of Pekin, the capital of this mighty empire, after a tedious journey of exactly sixteen months. It is indeed very long, yet may be performed in much less time. I am of opinion that travellers might go from St Petersburgh to Pekin, and return, in the space of six months, which, were it necessary, I think I could easily demonstrate.

After the departure of the master of the ceremonies, the aleggada, or prime minister, sent an officer to salute the ambassador, and excuse himself for not paying him a visit immediately, as it was then late in the night, but promised to see him next day. At the same time, he sent great variety of fruits and provisions, as a mark of respect,

VOL. I. 3 K not-

notwithstanding we were abundantly supplied with these things by those appointed for that purpose.

At ten of the clock at night, the officer on guard in the outer-court locked our gate, and sealed it with the Emperor's seal, that no person might go out or come in during the night. The ambassador, not approving of this proceeding, as soon as the gate was opened in the morning, sent his secretary, and an interpreter, to the prime minister, to complain of his being confined. The aleggada said he was altogether ignorant of what had happened, but expressly forbid any such behaviour for the future. In Persia, indeed, and some other nations of the east, it is the custom to restrain foreign ministers from conversing with the inhabitants, till they have had an audience of the Prince.

END OF VOLUME FIRST.

T R A V E L S
F R O M
S T . P E T E R S B U R G H
I N
R U S S I A ,
T O
V A R I O U S P A R T S
O F
A S I A .

I L L U S T R A T E D W I T H M A P S .

I N T W O V O L U M E S .

B Y J O H N B E L L ,
O F A N T E R M O N Y .

V O L U M E S E C O N D .

E D I N B U R G H :
P R I N T E D F O R W I L L I A M C R E E C H ,
A N D S O L D B Y
G E O . R O B I N S O N S A N D C O . L O N D O N ,

M D C C L X X X V I I I .

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE high character which these Travels bear in point of authentic information, and the great variety of curious matter to be found in them, respecting those countries through which the Author travelled, by a route which as yet is very little known, joined to the extreme scarcity of this Book, from the demand for it upon the Continent, were the motives for the publication of this new Edition. The Maps in the former Edition being wretchedly executed, and at the same time quite erroneous and imperfect, the Publisher has substituted in their place new and accurate Maps, taken from the latest and best authorities, particularly the Russian Atlas, in which the Author's route is carefully traced, together with the several towns, villages, and stations, which are mentioned in the course of his Travels.

DS

7

B43

1788

v.2

Librarian

Edwards

4-28-45

51859

2 vols. **C O N T E N T S.**

VOLUME SECOND.

C H A P. IX.

Occurrences at Pekin, Audience of the Ambassador, &c. p. 1

C H A P. X.

Continuation of Occurrences at Pekin, &c. p. 37

C H A P. XI.

Occurrences at Pekin continued; the Festival held at Court on the New Year, &c. p. 75

C H A P.

C H A P. XII.

*Some account of the present Emperor
of China, the Chinese Wall, &c.* p. 112

C H A P. XIII.

*Our Departure from Pekin; Occurrences,
&c. during our Journey back
towards Moscow,* p. 154

C H A P. XIV.

*Our Arrival at the Town of Sur-
gute; our Journey thence to Mos-
cow; some Account of the Creature
called Mammon,* p. 192

Journal of Mr DE LANGE.	233
A Journey to DERBENT.	427
A Journey to CONSTANTINOPLE.	489

J O U R N E Y
F R O M
S T P E T E R S B U R G H
T O
P E K I N.

C H A P. IX.

*Occurrences at Pekin, Audience of
the Ambassador, &c.*

THE 19th, the prime minister, accompanied with the master of the ceremonies, and five Jesuits, came to compliment the ambassador. As soon as they entered the gate, two of their attendants walked before them, at some distance, making a humming noise, the usual sign that some person of distinction is coming. Aloy desired the ambassador would give him a copy of his credentials; which was

VOL. II.

A

not

not easily complied with, till these ministers absolutely insisted on it ; alledging that the Emperor never received any letters from his best friends, among whom he reckoned his Czarish Majesty the chief, without knowing the contents. The Latin copy was at last produced, the original being in the Ruffian language ; and the master of the ceremonies and the missionaries having translated it into Chinese, took their leave. But the aleggada remained for the space of three hours, talking on different subjects. This minister, it seems, was a great sportsman. He asked to see the ambassador's dogs, which were a few greyhounds, and some French buck-hounds. He was desired to receive, in a present, any of them which pleased him best ; but he would accept only of a couple of greyhounds.

In the mean time, the Emperor sent an officer to inquire after the ambassador's health ; who brought along with him a table, carried by four men, and covered with yellow silk, on which was placed variety

sity of fruits and confections, and, in the middle, a large piece of excellent mutton. The officer acquainted the ambassador that these provisions were brought from the Emperor's own table, and therefore hoped he would eat of them. This circumstance was accounted a singular mark of the Emperor's favour.

The day following, the ambassador had a visit from the president of the council for western affairs, called Asschinoma, accompanied by four missionaries, two of which were Messieurs Paranis and Fridelii. The conversation turned chiefly on the ceremonial of the ambassador's introduction to the Emperor, which was a matter not easily settled. The principal points, insisted on by the ambassador, were, that he might deliver his credentials into the Emperor's own hands, and be excused from bowing thrice three times on entering his Majesty's presence; to which custom all must submit who appear before the Emperor. The president, on the contrary, asserted, that the constant practice in China, for many ages past,

past, was directly opposite to these demands ; that their Emperors never received letters of credence with their own hands ; that the custom was for the ambassador to lay them on a table, at some distance from the throne, or the place where the Emperor may happen to sit : after which they were delivered to the Emperor by the officer appointed for that purpose.

At the same time, the president invited the ambassador to an entertainment, to be given at a palace in the city, where he said the Emperor would be present, and speak with him. His Excellency replied, He would accept of the invitation, provided he might on that occasion deliver the Czar his master's letter. He was told, this was neither a proper place nor time for that purpose ; but that the Emperor intended to give him a public audience very soon, and receive his credentials in form.

The ambassador was apprehensive that the Emperor, having already seen a copy of his credentials, should he also see himself

self at the entertainment; his public audience might thereby be retarded; and therefore declined the invitation. It appeared, however, afterwards, that this suspicion was without foundation, and that the Emperor intended nothing more than to do honour to the ambassador.

The 21st, the aleggada paid a second visit. His servants brought tea ready made, some jars of arrack, with fruits and confections. From this day little material happened, except daily messages from court relating to the ceremonial, till the 27th, when this affair was at last adjusted, on the following terms : " That the ambassador should comply with the established customs of the court of China ; " and, when the Emperor sent a minister to Russia, he should have instructions to " conform himself, in every respect, to the ceremonies in use at that court." This affair gave the ministry at Pekin much trouble ; and, I must confess, the missionaries took great pains to soften matters on both sides.

On

On the 28th, the day appointed for the ambassador's public audience of the Emperor, horses were brought to our lodgings for the ambassador and his retinue; the Emperor being then at a country house called Tzan-shu-yang, about six miles westward from Pekin. We mounted at eight in the morning, and about ten arrived at court, where we alighted at the gate, which was guarded by a strong party of soldiers. The commanding officers conducted us into a large room, where we drank tea, and staid about half an hour, till the Emperor was ready to receive us. We then entered a spacious court, inclosed with high brick-walls, and regularly planted with several rows of forest-trees, about eight inches diameter, which I took to be limes. The walks are spread with small gravel; and the great walk is terminated by the hall of audience, behind which are the Emperor's private apartments. On each side of the great walk are fine flower-plots and canals. As we advanced, we found

found all the ministers of state, and officers belonging to the court, seated upon fur-cushions, cross-legged, before the hall, in the open air ; among these, places were appointed for the ambassador and his retinue ; and in this situation we remained, in a cold frosty morning, till the Emperor came into the hall. During this interval, there were only two or three servants in the hall, and not the least noise was heard from any quarter. The entry to the hall is by seven marble steps, the whole length of the building. The floor is finely paved with a neat checker work of white and black marble. The edifice is quite open to the south ; and the roof supported by a row of handsome wooden pillars, octangular, and finely polished ; before which is hung a large canvas, as a shelter from the heat of the sun, or inclemencies of the weather.

After we had waited about a quarter of an hour, the Emperor entered the hall at a back-door, and seated himself upon the throne ; upon which all the company stood.

stood. The master of the ceremonies now desired the ambassador, who was at some distance from the rest, to walk into the hall, and conducted him by one hand, while he held his credentials in the other. Having ascended the steps, the letter was laid on a table placed for that purpose, as had been previously agreed ; but the Emperor beckoned to the ambassador, and directed him to approach ; which he no sooner perceived, than he took up the credentials, and, attended by Aloy, walked up to the throne, and, kneeling, laid them before the Emperor, who touched them with his hand, and inquired after his Czarish Majesty's health. He then told the ambassador, that the love and friendship he entertained for his Majesty were such, that he had even dispensed with an established custom of the empire in receiving his letter.

During this part of the ceremony, which was not long, the retinue continued standing without the hall, and we imagined, the letter being delivered, all was over. But the

the master of the ceremonies brought back the ambassador, and then ordered all the company to kneel, and make obeisance nine times to the Emperor. At every third time we stood up, and kneeled again. Great pains were taken to avoid this piece of homage, but without success. The master of the ceremonies stood by, and delivered his orders in the Tartar language, by pronouncing the words *morgu* and *bos*; the first meaning to bow, and the other to stand; two words which I cannot soon forget.

This piece of formality being ended, the master of the ceremonies conducted the ambassador, and the six gentlemen of the retinue, with one interpreter, into the hall. Our clerks, inferior officers, and servants, remained still without, together with many courtiers and officers of distinction. We were seated on our own cushions, in a row upon the floor, to the right of the throne, about six yards distance: And, immediately behind us, sat three missionaries, dressed

VOL. II. B in

in Chinese habits, who constantly attend the court. On this occasion they served by turns as interpreters.

Soon after we were admitted, the Emperor called the ambassador to him, took him by the hand, and talked very familiarly on various subjects. Among other things, he told him, that he was informed his Czarish Majesty exposed his person to many dangers, particularly by water, at which he was much surprised, but desired he would take the advice of an old man, and not hazard his life, by committing himself to the rage of the merciless waves and winds, where no valour could avail. We were near enough to hear this piece of friendly and wholesome advice.

This conversation being finished, the Emperor gave the ambassador, with his own hand, a gold cup-full of warm taraf-sun, a sweet fermented liquor, made of various sorts of grain, as pure and strong as Canary wine, of a disagreeable smell, tho' not unpleasant to the taste. This cup was brought

brought about to the gentlemen, and all of us drank the Emperor's health, who observed, that this liquor would warm us that cold morning. His Majesty also found many faults with our dress, as improper for a cold climate, and, I must confess, I thought him in the right.

On the left side of the throne sat five Princes, sons to the Emperor, together with all the ministers and grandees of the court. The tarassun, however, was handed about to none but ourselves, and the Jesuits behind us. Eight or ten of the Emperor's grandsons now entered the hall. They were very handsome, and plainly dressed, having nothing to distinguish them, but the dragon with five claws, woven into their outer garments, and a yellow tunic of satin, bearing the same device, with little caps on their heads faced with sable. After them came the musicians carrying their instruments. By this time the hall was pretty full ; and, what is surprising, there was not the least noise, hurry, or confusion.

Every

Every one perfectly knows his own business; and the thick paper soles of the Chinese boots prevent any noise from their walking on the floor. By these means every thing goes on with great regularity, but at the same time with wonderful quickness. In short, the characteristic of the court of Pekin is order and decency, rather than grandeur and magnificence.

The Emperor sat cross-legged on his throne. He was dressed in a short loose coat of sable, having the fur outward, lined with lamb-skin, under which he wore a long tunic of yellow silk, interwoven with figures of golden dragons with five claws; which device no person is allowed to bear except the imperial family. On his head was a little round cap, faced with black fox-skin; on the top of which I observed a large beautiful pearl, in the shape of a pear, which, together with a tassel of red silk tied below the pearl, was all the ornament I saw about this mighty monarch. The throne also was very simple, being made
of

of wood, but of neat workmanship. It is raised five easy steps from the floor, is open towards the company, but has a large japanned screen on each side to defend it from the wind.

The master of the ceremonies, and a few officers of the household, were dressed in robes of state, of gold and silver stuffs, with monstrous dragons on their backs and breasts. Most of the ministers of state were dressed very plain, having nothing like ornaments about them ; a few only had large rubies, sapphires, and emeralds. These precious stones are cut into the shape of pears, through which a hole is drilled, to fix them on the top of their bonnets. These holes diminish the value of the stones, one half at least, at an European market. I once saw, however, one of these rubies, with a hole drilled through it, which was bought at Pekin for a trifle, valued at ten thousand pounds Sterling in Europe. But such bargains are rarely to be met with, this being a stone of the first class

class for bigness and purity. As for diamonds, the Chinese, it seems, do not much esteem them ; for few diamonds are found in China, and these very rudely cut and shaped, and so, indeed, are all their colour-ed stones.

It was now about noon, at which time our entertainment began to be served up, (of which I shall also give some account.) There were first brought neat little tables, covered with variety of fruits and confec-tions, and placed before all the company. It seems to be the fashion in this country to bring the desert first, at least that was the case at all the entertainments where I was present. In this, as in many other things, the behaviour of the Chinese is quite con-trary to that of the Europeans. Soon af-ter the fruits, the viuctuals were served in the same manner, and placed on small tables before the guests. They consisted of fowls, mutton, and pork, all very good of their kinds ; and the whole was either boiled, or stewed with pickles, but nothing roasted.

roasted. The Emperor sent several dishes from his own table to the ambassador, particularly some boiled pheasants, which were very agreeable.

The music played all the time of dinner. The chief instruments were flutes, harps, and lutes, all tuned to the Chinese taste. There was also some vocal music; an old Tartar, in particular, sung a warlike song, to which he beat time, by striking, with two ivory rods, upon a chime of little bells that hung before him. A young Tartar sung a call to war, dancing at the same time, and keeping time by drawing the head of an arrow across his shield. Then entered two little girls, who danced and sung while the instruments played. After them came tumblers, who performed various feats of activity in the court before the hall. These were succeeded by wrestlers, fencers, and other performers of the same species. The Emperor sent frequently to the ambassador, to ask how he liked the music, dancing, and other entertainments.

ments. He also inquired about several princes and states of Europe, with whose power by sea and land he was not unacquainted. But, above all, he wondered how the kingdom of Sweden could hold out so long against so great a power as that of Russia. After this conversation, the Emperor informed the ambassador that he would soon send for him again; but, as the night was cold, he would detain him no longer at present, and immediately stepped from his throne, and returned to his private apartments by the same passage he left them. We also mounted, and repaired to our lodgings in the city, so well satisfied with the gracious and friendly reception of the Emperor, that all our former hardships were almost forgot.

The 29th, the Mandarin Tulishin came to our lodgings with two clerks, and took a list of the presents sent by the Czar to the Emperor. These consisted of various rich furs, clocks, repeating watches set in diamonds, mirrors; and the battle of Pol-tava,

tava, nicely turned in ivory, done by his Czarish Majesty's own hands, and set in a curious frame. The ambassador, at the same time, delivered to the Mandarin, as a present from himself to the Emperor, several toys of value, a fine managed horse, some greyhounds, and large buck-hounds.

Every thing was entered in a book very exactly, even the names and qualities of each particular dog. There was also tied about the neck of each dog a yellow silk-cord, drawn through a hole in a little bit of wood, which hung from the dog's neck, as a mark of its belonging to the court. The Chinese, in general, are very fond of little harlequin dogs that play monkey tricks. A servant of ours had one of that kind, which he sold for an hundred ounces of silver.

The same day, all the fruits and confections of the entertainment given at the audience which remained, were sent to the ambassador's lodgings. They were carried in great state through the streets, covered

with yellow silk ; and an officer of the court walked before the procession.

Next day, the Emperor sent to our lodgings several large dishes of massive gold, containing a kind of delicate fish, called mu, already dressed, but in such a manner that I did not know to what to compare it. Also some bowls filled with excellent vermicelli, and a sort of pastry-puffs, baked over the steam of boiling water, exceeding in whiteness any thing of that kind I ever saw. All these things were sent from his Majesty's own table ; an honour which he grants but seldom. It seems he was resolved we should have provisions in abundance ; for, besides all these, we received our daily allowance, in which we were by no means stinted.

After dinner, the master of the ceremonies, accompanied with the captain of the eunuchs, and three Jesuits, came to visit the ambassador. This eunuch was a great favourite of the Emperor, on account of the knowledge he had acquired in mathematics.

matics and mechanics. He made the ambassador a present of a small enamelled gold-watch, and a wind-gun, both of his own making. The Emperor himself is a great lover of the arts, so far, that who-ever distinguishes himself in any useful branch of them, is sure to meet with proper encouragement. The eunuch also made a present to the ambassador of a steel to strike fire, and then desired to see the presents, which was granted. At taking leave, Aloy told the ambassador, that the Emperor intended to give him a Chinese dress, which was more convenient and warmer than the European.

December the first, Merin-Sanguin, a general officer, and brother to the first minister of state, came to visit the ambassador. Notwithstanding the high rank of this military gentleman, he had no sword about him ; for at Pekin, no person, not even officers and soldiers, except when on duty, wears a sword, or any other weapon in the city.

The

The day following, the ambassador had a second audience of the Emperor at the same palace. On this occasion the Czar's presents were carried to court, by a number of people sent for that purpose. The Emperor viewed them all at a distance; after which they were delivered to an officer appointed by his Majesty to receive them. This audience was held in a private hall within the inner-court, where only the officers of the household, and the gentlemen of the retinue were present. We were entertained in the same manner as before. The Emperor conversed very familiarly with the ambassador on various subjects, and talked of peace and war in particular in the style of a philosopher. In the evening, we returned to the city, in a cold north-wind, which blew the dust about in clouds. Scarcely had we arrived, when the fruits and confections, according to custom, were sent to our lodgings.

This evening, one of the Emperor's grandsons came to visit the ambassador.

He

He was a genteel youth, about fourteen years of age, and had not above half a dozen of attendants.

Next day, the weather continued cold and frosty. The sky was clear, and a strong wind at north-west, blowing the dust about. I observed that the north-west winds are the coldest in this place ; as they come over the vast tracts of ice and snow in Siberia.

The 4th, there was a fall of snow, to the deepness of seven or eight inches, which was immediately thrown into heaps, and the streets clean swept. This day the missionaries sent a present to the ambassador, consisting of several sorts of venison and wild-fowl, and a greater variety of fine fruits and confections than I ever saw in any country, together with a couple of jars of wine made by themselves. Among the fruits there were some species which I had never before seen, particularly a sort of apple, about the size of a common orange, with a smooth skin, of a yellowish colour,

colour, very soft and sweet, or rather luscious; also a fruit about the bigness of a walnut, but quite round, resembling in taste a prune, but far more delicious: It contains a smooth hard stone, and the whole is covered with a thin brownish shell, so brittle that it is easily broken between the finger and thumb. Some of these shells are rough, and others smooth. They serve to prevent the tender fruit from being devoured by birds, and from flying dust; and, what is something uncommon, the fruit does not adhere to the shell, but a small vacuity is left between them. It is not only pleasant to the taste, but is accounted very wholesome.

The 5th, the ambassador had a third audience of the Emperor, in the palace at Pekin. As some affairs relating to the two Empires were to be discussed, the secretary only, M. de Lange, accompanied the ambassador. After he was introduced, the Emperor told him, he had given orders to the tribunal for western affairs to hear the subject

subject of his commission, and then retired to his own apartments, leaving his ministers to transact the business, which was soon finished on this occasion ; and the ambassador returned to his lodgings.

The 6th, being St Nicolas's day, a great festival in the Greek church, the ambassador went to the Russian chapel in Pekin to hear divine service. This house stands within the city, under the east wall, and was built by the bounty of the present Emperor Kamhi, on the following occasion.

About the year 1688, there happened a difference betwixt the government of Siberia and the Chinese, about a small fort called Albazin, which the Russians had built upon the banks of the river Amoor. The Chinese alledged the fort was erected on their territories ; and, jealous of the approach of such powerful neighbours, made several fruitless representations to the governour of Siberia to have it demolished. The Emperor, at last, impatient of longer delay,

delay, sent an army of above one hundred thousand men, to do by force what could not be accomplished by negotiation. They invested the place on all sides, and raised batteries against it. After a vigorous defence, the garrison, consisting of about three or four hundred Cossacks, was obliged to surrender for want of provisions. No terms could be obtained, and all the Russians were made prisoners of war. In consequence of which they were carried to Pekin, where the Emperor generously assigned them houses apart from the rest of the inhabitants, permitted the free exercise of their religion, and gave them a daily allowance equal with his own soldiers. By this mild treatment they were enabled to build the little chapel which they still possess. The descendants of these prisoners are pretty numerous, and useful to their countrymen, the Russians, as interpreters. I formerly mentioned that these disputes were ended on the following terms ; the prisoners on both sides were to remain unexchanged,

exchanged, and the fort of Albazin to be destroyed; since which time the two empires have continued in good correspondence. The inhabitants of Siberia, indeed, regret much the loss of their fort, as it stood in a fine climate, gave them possession of a large extent of country northward from the Amoor; and, besides, opened a passage down that river to the Japanese Ocean. It was, however, the occasion of establishing the Greek church in China, which still continues to flourish, though its members are not very numerous. As one priest dies, another from Siberia succeeds him, who minds chiefly his own small flock, and thinks very little of making converts. This circumstance prevents their being obnoxious to the Roman missionaries, who can have no suspicion of their interfering with the interests of their church. These missionaries are constantly employed in making proselytes, and their endeavours have been attended with some success.

VOL. II.

D

The

The 7th, we dined at the alleggada's, where we were magnificently entertained. There was no other company but ourselves, and we staid the whole day. This was the most elegant and complete entertainment of any I saw in China.

About ten o'clock in the morning, chairs were sent for the ambassador and gentlemen of the retinue, and horses for the servants, though the prime minister's house was very near our lodgings. The chairs were carried through two courts, and set down at the entry into a hall, where the alleggada waited to receive the ambassador. After entering the hall, we were seated on neat cane chairs, with japanned frames, inlaid with mother of pearl. The apartment itself was very simple, open to the south, and the roof supported on that side by a row of well-turned wooden pillars. It had no cieling, but the rafters appeared finely polished, and perfectly clean. The floor was paved with a checker-work of white and black marble; and in the middle of it stood

stood a large brass chafing-dish, in shape of an urn, full of charcoal. At the entry were placed two large China cisterns, filled with pure water, in which played some scores of small fishes, catching at crumbs of bread thrown into the water. These fishes are about the size of a minnow, but of a different shape, and beautifully varied with red, white, and yellow spots, and therefore called the gold and silver fish. I never saw any of them out of this country, though, I imagine, they might easily be brought to Europe, as they are by no means of the tender kind. I had about twenty of them standing in a window at my lodgings ; in a morning, after a frosty night, I found all the water frozen, most of the fishes stiff, and seemingly dead ; but, on putting them into cold fresh water, they all recovered, except two or three.

After we had drunk a dish of tea, a collation of broths and viands was placed on the tables, intermixed with variety of fruits and confections. Every person had a table apart,

apart, and all were served in the same manner. This repast, it seems, was only breakfast, though it might well have passed for dinner.

After this entertainment the alleggada carried us first to see his dogs, of which he had great variety. I formerly observed that this gentleman was a great sportsman. He took greater pleasure in talking of hounds than politics; though, at the same time, he had the character of a very able minister, and an honest man.

We were now conducted through all the different apartments of his house, excepting only those of the ladies, to which none have access but himself, and the eunuchs who attend them. We saw a noble collection of many curiosities, both natural and artificial; particularly a large quantity of old porcelain or China ware, made in China and Japan, and at present to be found only in the cabinets of the curious. They consisted chiefly of a great number of jars of different sizes. He took much pleasure in

in telling when and where they were manufactured ; and, as far as I can remember, many of them were above two thousand years old. He added, that, both in China and Japan, they had lost the art of making porcelain in that perfection they did in former times ; and the fault, in his opinion, lay in the preparation of the materials. These curiosities were piled up on shelves to the very roof of the house, and in such order and symmetry as had a pretty effect.

From the house we went into a little garden, inclosed with a high brick-wall. In the middle of it stood a small basin, full of water, surrounded with several old crooked trees and shrubs ; among which I saw that which produces the famous tea. The climate about Pekin being too cold for this shrub, there are only a few bushes of it to be found in the gardens of the curious. I shall not at present enlarge on this useful plant, which appeared like a currant-bush, as an opportunity will occur of giving a fuller account of it before I leave

leave this place. There was a walk round the garden, which, together with that in the middle, was covered with small gravel. At each end of the middle walk was a piece of artificial rock-work, with water running under it, through holes so natural they looked as if made by the current of the stream. The rocks were about seven feet high, and shaded with some old bended trees. This garden, and many other things in China, display the taste of the inhabitants for imitating nature.

From the garden we were called to dinner, where we found a plentiful and elegant entertainment, set out in the finest order, far exceeding any thing of that kind we had seen before. We had no music nor dancing ; and the whole was conducted with surprising decency and regularity. The entertainment lasted about two hours, after which we returned to our lodgings.

This day, our gates were opened to people of all characters, and merchants and others allowed to go in and out at pleasure.

sure. Though all communication was not prohibited before this time, it was, however, difficult, and not to be obtained without permission of the proper officer.

The 8th, we dined at the south convent, where the Italian missionaries generally reside. Here all the Jesuits in the place, to the number of ten or twelve, were assembled. We met with a friendly reception, and a most splendid entertainment.

This convent stands within the city, upon a piece of ground given to the fathers by the Emperor. He gave also ten thousand ounces of silver towards building and adorning the chapel, which is indeed very neat, and handsomely decorated with pictures of saints, and scripture-pieces, by the best hands. An account of this remarkable benefaction of the Emperor Kamhi is cut out, in the Chinese language, in letters of gold, and fixed above the great gate, which makes the place more respected. When we arrived, one of the priests was officiating in the chapel, where were assembled about

bout one hundred Chinese converts. At dinner we had a few bottles of wine, made in the convent ; but I cannot say it was good, though the grapes were fine, and of an agreeable taste.

After dinner, we were conducted to the Emperor's stables, where the elephants are kept. The keeper asked the ambassador to walk into his apartments till they were equipped ; then we went into the court, and saw these huge animals richly caparisoned in gold and silver stuffs. Each had a rider on his back, who held in their hands small battle-axes, with a sharp pike at one end, to drive and guide them. We stood about an hour admiring those sagacious animals ; some of them very large, who, passing before us at equal distances, returned again behind the stables, and so on round and round, till there seemed to be no end of the procession. The plot, however, was at last discovered by the features and dress of the riders ; and the chief keeper told us there was only sixty of them. The
climate

climate about Pekin is too cold for them to breed ; and all these were brought from warmer countries. The Emperor keeps them only for show, and makes no use of them, at least in these northern parts. Some of them were brought near to the place where we sat, and made obeisance to us, by kneeling and making a dreadful noise ; others sucked up water from vessels, and spouted it through their trunks among the mob, or wherever the rider directed. The sagacity of these animals is most surprising, and approaches so near to reason, that, in this respect, they surpass all the brute creation. After this show, we took leave of the Jesuits, who had accompanied us hither, and returned to our lodgings.

Next day, all the gentlemen dined at the palace of the Emperor's ninth son, in consequence of an invitation from his chief eunuch, who is a great friend to the Russia house. As the invitation was not from the Prince, the ambassador would not accept of it. Our entertainment was very

magnificent, and accompanied with music, dancing, and a kind of comedy, which lasted most part of the day. The comedians were of both sexes ; if the women's parts were not performed by boys dressed like actresses. As the play was in the Chinese language, I could understand nothing of it, except from the gesture and action of the performers. It seemed to be a parcel of detached dissimilar interludes, without any principal end, or unity of design. I shall, therefore, only mention one scene, which appeared to me the most extraordinary. There entered on the stage seven warriors, all in armour, with different weapons in their hands, and terrible vizards on their faces. After they had taken a few turns about the stage, and surveyed each other's armour, they at last fell a quarrelling ; and, in the encounter, one of the heroes was slain. Then an angel descended from the clouds, in a flash of lightning, with a monstrous sword in his hand, and soon parted the combatants, by driving them all off

off the stage ; which done, he ascended in the same manner he came down, in a cloud of fire and smoke. This scene was succeeded by several comical farces, which to me seemed very diverting, though in a language I did not understand. The last character that appeared on the stage was a European gentleman, completely dressed, having all his cloaths bedaubed with gold and silver lace. He pulled off his hat, and made a profound reverence to all that palfed him. I shall leave it to any one to imagine, what an awkward figure a Chinese must make in this ridiculous habit. This scene was interrupted, and the performers dismissed, by the master of the feast, from a suspicion that his guests might take offence. The play being finished, we were entertained with jugglers, who exhibited a variety of legerdemain tricks with great dexterity.

The banquet was prolonged the whole day, excepting the time spent in these interludes. No sooner was one course carried

ried off, than another was instantly placed upon the tables, and the whole concluded with deserts of fruits and sweet-meats. One would scarce have imagined, that luxury had made such progress among the sober and industrious Chinese. It must indeed be observed, that there is almost no drinking at their entertainments, as they use no liquor on these occasions but tea, and now and then a dram of hot arrack. The Chinese handle the two ivory or wooden pins, which they use instead of forks, with such dexterity, that they can even take up needles with them. In place of napkins they sometimes employ a few square pieces of paper.

C H A P.

C H A P. X.

*Continuation of Occurrences at Pe-
kin, &c.*

THE day following, the ambassador had a fourth audience of the Emperor, at the palace in the city. This interview was also private, and the ambassador was attended only by his secretary. The Emperor repeated the assurances of his friendship for his Czarish Majesty, talked strongly on the vanity and uncertainty of all human affairs, adding, that he was now an old man, and, by the course of nature, could not live long, and desired to die in
peace

peace with God and all mankind. At taking leave, each of them was presented with a complete Chinese suit of cloaths, made of strong silk, interwoven with dragons claws, and lined with sable.

The 12th, we dined at the French or western convent, where we again found all the missionaries. The chapel, and other edifices, are handsome, but not so grand as the Italian convent. Father Paranim is president of this convent ; he is a man of parts and address, and in great favour with the Emperor. I was informed this entertainment was given at the expence of the court, and had some reason to believe it was so, as it far exceeded what might reasonably be expected from the Jesuits. The Emperor's band of music played all the time of dinner ; after which we had jugglers and tumblers of great activity. Among the many feats and tricks performed by these people, I shall only mention two or three, which seemed most uncommon. The roof of the room where we sat was supported

supported by wooden pillars. The juggler took a gemlet, with which he bored one of the pillars, and asked, whether we chose red or white wine? The question being answered, he pulled out the gemlet, and put a quill in the hole, through which ran, as from a cask, the wine demanded. After the same manner, he extracted several sorts of liquors, all which I had the curiosity to taste, and found them good of their kinds.

Another of these expert youths took three long sharp-pointed knives, and, throwing them up by turns, kept one always in each hand, and the third in the air. This he continued to perform for a considerable time, catching constantly the falling knife by the handle, without ever allowing it to touch the floor. The knives were exceeding sharp, so that, had he missed laying hold of the handles, he must infallibly have lost some of his fingers.

The same person took a wooden ball, somewhat less than those commonly used
in

in bowling-greens, with a hole through the middle of it, and a rod two feet long, about the size of a walking staff, pointed at the extremity, to fit the hole in the ball. He then tossed the ball above a yard high, and caught it again upon the point of the rod, not in the hole of the ball, but wherever it happened to meet the point ; and, in this manner, he continued to throw up and catch the ball for a considerable time. He now placed the ball upon the point of the rod, taking no notice of the hole, and twirled it round like a top so quickly, that the motion could not be observed. This seemed extremely dextrous, for all the while he played with the ball in appearance ; and, when the motion began to slacken, gave it a fresh twirl with his hand, as if the rod and ball had been fastened to each other.

This person also placed a large earthen dish, above eighteen inches diameter, upon the point of the same rod, and twirled it round in the same manner as he did the ball.

ball. During this swift motion, he did not always keep the point in the centre of the vessel ; on the contrary, he often held it within three inches of the brim. I shall only mention one instance more.

There were placed erect, upon the pavement of the room, two bambos, which are a kind of cane. The length of them was about twenty-five feet ; at the lower end I reckon them to be near five inches diameter, and at the top about the breadth of a crown piece. They were straight, light, and smooth, and each supported by two men. Two boys then climbed up the poles, without the least assistance ; and, having reached the top, stood upright, sometimes on one foot, and sometimes on the other, and then upon their heads. This being done, they laid one hand on the top of the pole, and stretched out their bodies almost at right angles to it. In this posture they continued for a considerable time, and even shifted hands. I observed that much depended on the men who held the poles ;

one of the two at each pole having it fixed to his girdle, and they kept a steady eye on the motions of the boys. There were about twenty or thirty of these performers, who all belong to the Emperor, and never display their art without his permission. I am fully persuaded that, in tricks and feats of dexterity, few nations can equal, and none excel the Chinese.

After these diversions, we were conducted to the Emperor's glafs-house, which his Imperial Majesty often visits with pleasure. It was erected by himself, and is the first manufactory of the kind that ever was in China. The person employed to superintend and carry on this design was Kilian Stumpff, a German father, lately deceased; a man in great favour with the Emperor, and well known in China for his ingenuity and literature. His Majesty is so fond of this glafs-work, that he sent several of the most curious of its productions in a present to his Czarish Majesty. It is surprising that the Chinese, who have been constantly

ly

ly employed for so many ages in the manufacture of China-ware, should never have stumbled upon that of glass. This shows evidently, that the degree of heat necessary in their ovens must not be very great, or their materials free from sand ; for it is certain they had no knowledge of glass of any kind till this house was erected. I was informed, that, not long ago, some Europeans brought to Canton a parcel of prisms, or triangular glasses, which the Chinese took for natural productions of rock-crystal, and bought them at the rate of one hundred ounces of silver a-piece : But, from the great quantity imported, they soon discovered their mistake.

On the evening of the 14th, an officer came from court, desiring the ambassador to wait on the Emperor at his palace of Tzangsuang, and bring his musicians along with him. These consisted of performers on violins, trumpets, and kettle-drums.

Next

Next day, we arrived at the palace about ten of the clock, and had immediate admittance to the Emperor's private apartments, few being present but the officers of the household and Father Paranim. After a short conference, the music was ordered to play. There were in the room ten or twelve of the Emperor's grandsons, who seemed much entertained with the instruments. I asked an elderly gentleman who stood by me, how he liked the music? he said it was very good, but their own was better. No ladies were to be seen, though, I believe, several of them were behind a screen, at the other end of the room.

The music being over, the Emperor ordered one of the princes to conduct the ambassador into the gardens belonging to the palace; into which we entered, along a draw-bridge, over a canal of pure water. They abounded with shaded walks, arbours, and fish ponds, in the Chinese taste. The young princes entertained themselves by shooting with bows and arrows. Some of them

them displayed great dexterity, being accustomed from their infancy to this exercise, which is accounted both genteel and healthy; as the drawing of the bow extends and strengthens the muscles both of the breast and arms. One of the princes shewed us a bow and arrows used by the Emperor when young, by which it appeared that he had been a person of extraordinary bodily strength. After we had surveyed the gardens in every quarter, we took leave of the princes, and returned to the city.

This day, arrived in Pekin Signior Mezzobarba, ambassador from his Holiness the Pope to the Emperor. This gentleman was a cardinal, and patriarch of Alexandria. His retinue was composed of ecclesiastics of different orders, and a few servants, who were all lodged in the Italian convent. They came from Europe to Macao in a Portuguese ship, from thence to Canton, and then by land to this place.

The

The design of this embassy was to inquire into the disputes and misunderstanding that had lately arisen in this country betwixt the Jesuits and Dominicans, relating to certain rites annually performed by the Chinese Christians, at the tombs of their deceased parents, or other relations. This custom seems to be the same with that of the parentalia anciently in use among the Greeks and Romans. It is universal in China, from the Emperor to the meanest peasant. It seems the Jesuits permitted their converts to visit the tombs of their relations ; alledging, that, without such indulgence, no person would embrace Christianity, and that time would wean them from such superstitious ceremonies. The Dominicans, on the other hand, affirmed that it was next to idolatry, and declared it unlawful to allow any such custom, strictly prohibiting all conformity in their converts. These differences, in all probability, will not soon be determined. The Emperor himself tried to make the parties compromise

raise matters ; but, finding [his endeavours ineffectual, he left them to agree or dispute according to their pleasure. He inclined, indeed, to favour the opinion of the Jesuits, which he thought most reasonable. At any rate, it must be acknowledged an instance of uncommon condescension, for an heathen Emperor to interest himself so much in the peace of a Christian church.

The 16th, Mr De Lange and I paid a visit to the Fathers Fridelly and Keaggler, at the Oriental or German convent. This place is large enough ; but neither the chapel nor buildings are near so magnificent as those of the two other convents. It is called oriental, because situated in the eastern district of the city. Both these fathers, and several other ecclesiastics of inferior rank in this convent, are Germans. One of the fathers was a clock-maker ; and, by such means, they frequently insinuate themselves into acquaintance with people of distinction, who protect them in times of danger. For, in China, they have

have still a great number of enemies, who would gladly see both them and their religion extirpated ; but the favour of the present Emperor hath hitherto prevented or disappointed the design of such persons.

The 17th, I sent to inform the Captain of the Chinese guard, that I intended to take a turn through the city, who immediately gave orders for a soldier to attend me. When we passed through the gate, the clerk marked our names in his book, and dashed them out at our return. I went into several shops, where were sold different kinds of merchandise; particularly those of the goldsmiths, whose business it is to exchange gold for silver, or silver for gold. In these shops are found vast quantities of those valuable metals, cast into bars of different sizes, and piled up one upon another; which are sold only by weight, as there is no current coin in this country; except one small round piece of brass, with a square hole in the middle, through which may be run a string, for the convenience of

of carrying them to market. This coin, called joss by the Chinese, is about the value of one tenth of a penny Sterling, and is extremely useful among the common people. With one of them a man can buy a dish of hot tea, a pipe of tobacco, or a dram of brandy, in the streets; and a beggar may dine for three of them. There are, indeed, few beggars to be seen in the city; but, notwithstanding the labour and industry of the inhabitants, they are so numerous, that it is hardly possible to prevent many from being reduced to the utmost necessity. There are cooks shops, where dogs and cats, and such other creatures, are dressed for the entertainment of these people. These coins have Kamhi, the name of the Emperor, on one side, and the words Tum Pao, or the universal price, on the other.

When the Chinese have occasion to buy any thing above the value of sixpence, they cut off a piece of silver, and weigh it, which is done in a trice.

Although the want of current coin seems ill calculated for the despatch of business, the Chinese find no inconvenience on that account. It is in so far preferable to money, that it loses little by wearing in the circulation, which coin does perhaps more than is generally imagined.

In most of the shops I found both men and women unveiled. They were extremely complaisant, and gave me a dish of tea in every shop. These people expose their gold and silver, and other goods of value, with as much freedom and security, as the merchants do in London or Amsterdam.

The 19th, Lange and I went to the French convent, but not one of the ecclesiastics were at home, having all gone to attend Signor Mezzobarba at an audience of the Emperor, except an old gentleman, Monsieur Bouvett, who had formerly written a small treatise, entitled, "Le Portrait "de l'Empereur de la Chine," which he had printed in Europe.

The

The 20th, cold and windy.

The 21st, frost and snow, which softened the air, and laid the dust.

Next day, the ambassador, with Secretary Lange, went to the council appointed for western affairs, and had a conference on the subject of his embassy.

The winter here lasts only about two months, but is very sharp and piercing while the wind is northerly. If the wind, indeed, is southerly, the air is mild and pleasant, and the sky clear. I mentioned above, that the Chinese have a method of keeping themselves warm during the cold, which I shall now describe as distinctly as I can.

In building a house, they make two stove-holes, one in each side-wall, about three feet from the gable-end. The holes are a foot square; one serves for receiving the fuel, and the other to let out the smoke, when the stove is finished. There is a partition of brick, which runs from one side of the house to the other, about five

five or six feet from the gable, and only eighteen inches high, which I shall call the front of the Stove-bench. Between this and the gable are built several other thin partitions of brick, in a direction at right angles to the first, having a small opening at the extremity of each. For example, suppose the passage in the first partition to the right hand, and in the second to the left, and so on, alternately, to the last, which communicates with the hole, on the other side of the room, for letting out the smoke. These divisions being made, the whole is arched, or otherwise covered with brick; above which is laid a layer of clay, or plaster, to prevent the smoke from rising through the surface. It is plain that below this bench there will be a winding channel for the smoke, from one side of the room to the other. A few handfuls of brush-wood, straw, or any kind of fuel, will warm the bench, as much as is necessary, to work or sleep without feeling cold. It is generally covered

vered with mats, felts, or other thick stuffs, according to the ability of the owner.

The 23d, Father Keagler came to visit us. This gentleman had been long in China, and was well acquainted with the language, customs, and manners of the country. In talking of the extent of Pekin, he said that Nankin is at least three times as large. At this rate, Nankin must be one of the largest cities in the world. He added, that it was somewhat diminished since the court had left that place to reside at Pekin. Nankin is a place of the most extensive commerce, and contains the greatest manufactories, of all sorts of silk and cotton stuffs, of any city in the country, besides those of China-ware. It is watered by a fine navigable river, on which are employed an incredible number of boats, in carrying merchandise and passengers.

The 23d, cold northerly wind, and strong frost.

The 24th, Christmas-eve ; the ambassador heard divine service in the Russ church.

The

The 25th, the ambassador, and the whole retinue went to church.

The Emperor sent Father Fridelly, accompanied by several mandarins, with a present to his Czarish Majesty, of six large boxes of tiles, made of China-ware, fit for such stoves as are used in Russia for warming rooms. They were very pretty, blue and white, and, with due care, may last for ages.

January 1st, 1721, the Emperor's general of the artillery, together with Father Fridelly, and a gentleman called Stadlin, an old German, and a watchmaker, dined at the ambassador's. He was by birth a Tartar; and, by his conversation, it appeared he was by no means ignorant in his profession, particularly with respect to the various compositions of gun-powder used in artificial fire-works. I asked him, how long the Chinese had known the use of gun-powder? He replied, above two thousand years, in fire-works, according to their

their records, but that its application to the purposes of war was only a late introduction. As the veracity and candour of this gentleman were well known, there was no room to question the truth of what he advanced on this subject.

The conversation then turned on printing. He said he could not then ascertain precisely the antiquity of this invention; but was absolutely certain it was much ancienter than that of gun-powder. It is to be observed, that the Chinese print with stamps, in the manner that cards are made in Europe. Indeed, the connection between stamping and printing is so close and obvious, that it is surprising the ingenious Greeks and Romans, so famous for their medals, never discovered the art of printing.

On this occasion, Father Fridelly told me, that several of the missionaries, who had the good fortune to be in favour with the Emperor, had often solicited that Prince to become Christian, and allow himself to be

be baptised ; but he always excused himself, by saying, he worshipped the same God with the Christians ; and that such a change of religion might occasion some disturbance in the empire, which by all means he would endeavour to prevent. However this be, it is certain that, on Christmas day, he sent one of his chief eunuchs to the Italian convent, with orders that prayers should be offered for him ; which was accordingly done, and the eunuch remained in church all the time of divine service.

Next day, the ambassador had another private audience of the Emperor, at the palace of Tzan-shu-yang. The weather being very cold, the hall was warmed with several large chaffing dishes, filled with charcoal. We staid above two hours ; during which time his Majesty talked very familiarly, on various subjects, particularly history ; wherein he discovered himself well acquainted with that of the Holy Scriptures, as well as of his own country.

He

He said, that the chronology of the Chinese was far more ancient than that of the Holy Scriptures ; but observed, that it ended back in fabulous accounts, concerning which nothing certain could be determined.

As to Noah's flood, he affirmed, that, at or near the same time, there was a great deluge in China, which destroyed all the inhabitants of the plains, but that such as escaped to the mountains were saved.

He then discoursed of the invention of the loadstone, which he said was known in China above two thousand years ago ; for, it appeared from their records, that a certain ambassador, from some distant island to the court of China, missing his course, in a storm, was cast on the Chinese coast, in the utmost distress. The then Emperor, whose name I have forgot, after entertaining him hospitably, sent him back to his own country ; and, to prevent the like misfortunes in his voyage homeward, gave him a compass to direct his course.

The Emperor also confirmed most of the particulars mentioned above, concerning printing and gun-powder. It is from the Holy Scriptures, most part of which have been translated by the missionaries, that the learned men in China have acquired any knowledge of the western ancient history. And their own records, they say, contain accounts of transactions of much greater antiquity.

At taking leave, the Emperor told the ambassador that he liked his conversation. He desired to be excused for sending for him in such cold weather, and smiling, said, he knew the Russians were not afraid of cold.

I cannot omit taking notice of the good nature and affability of the ancient monarch on all occasions. Though he was now in the eightieth year of his age, and sixtieth of his reign, he still retained a sound judgment, and senses entire; and to me seemed more sprightly than many of the princes his sons.

The

The third, Mr Secretary Lange and I dined at the French convent, where we found Signor Mezzobarba. I never had an opportunity of seeing that gentleman at our lodgings, as nothing passed between him and our ambassador but messages of common civility and compliment.

The 4th, I rode from our lodgings, through the city, and went out at the north gate, at which we entered on our arrival at Pekin. I proceeded eastward to the end of the north wall, and then along the east wall to the south gate, at which I entered, and returned to our lodgings. This tour took me up about two hours and a half, at a pretty round trot; and, at the same rate, I reckon I could have rode quite round the city in less than five hours; whence a judgment may be formed of the circumference of the walls. The suburbs also are very extensive, especially to the east and south, and, being interspersed with many burying places, all inclosed with brick-walls, and planted with cypresses, and other ever-

ever-greens, contribute much to beautify the neighbourhood of this great city. The Chinese are extremely attentive to the fencing and ornamenting these groves or burying places ; a natural consequence of their uncommon respect for their parents and relations while living, and of their extraordinary veneration for them when dead. Annually, on certain days, they resort to these groves, carrying provisions along with them, and celebrate a kind of feast, in commemoration of their deceased relations.

I shall give an example of the filial duty of the Chinese, in a story I have often heard affirmed for true. A youth, finding his parents reduced to extreme poverty, and knowing of no means for their relief, went and sold himself as a slave, and, having received the price from his master, immediately brought it to his aged parents. When this was spent, the boy had no other resource than to run away from his master, and sell himself again to another ; and

and this he practised for several times, with the same view, although he knew the severity of the law in such cases.

The 6th, while walking through the street, I observed an old beggar picking vermin from his tattered cloaths, and putting them into his mouth ; a practice which, it seems, is very common among this class of people. When a Chinese and Tartar are angry at one another, the Tartar, in reproach, calls the Chinese louse-eater ; and the latter, in return, calls the other fish-skin coat ; because the Mantzur Tartars, who live near the river Amoor, subsist by fishing, and, in summer, wear coats made of the skins of fishes. But this habit is used only in summer, for in winter they wear furs.

The 7th, the Emperor sent us a present of various sorts of fine fruits, particularly some excellent oranges. On this occasion, Father Fridelly told me, that the tree was still standing at Canton, from which the seed was taken that the missionaries first sent

sent to Portugal, where it has prospered so wonderfully ; and, from the place whence it was brought, bears the name of the China-orange, I doubt not, that, with due care, some others of the rare fruits and plants in this country, even tea itself, might be propagated in Europe, or in some of the American colonies.

I cannot tell whether the coffee-tree is to be found in China ; but I am certain that none of its seeds are prepared and drunk there, as among the Persians, Turks, and Europeans.

The 8th, the weather was much milder, the wind southerly, with a small mizzling rain, enough to lay the disagreeable dust.

Next day, Secretary Lange and I rode through the streets, to the eastern convent, to visit our friend Fridelly. As we passed, we observed a juggler diverting a crowd. On our coming near, he played several tricks with great dexterity. He took a handful of small pence, formerly mentioned, with holes in the middle of them, and laid

laid them on a table. He then thrust them into his nostril, one by one, with his finger; and this he continued to perform, till the whole was exhausted. After this, he suspended an iron chain, of round links, about four feet long. He then took a mouse out of a box, and made it dance upon the table, quite loose. Then the mouse, at his order, went in at one link of the chain, and out at another, till it ascended to the top; from whence it came down again, the contrary way, without missing so much as one single ring.

The 12th, the Emperor came from Tzanchu-yang, to his palace in the city.

The 13th, the master of the ceremonies came to invite the ambassador to court on the 15th, the first day of the new moon, and, according to the Chinese computation, the first day of the new year. This is one of their highest festivals; and, what added to the solemnity of the present, was its being the beginning of a new seculum or space of sixty years, observed by the Chinese; besides,

besides, the Emperor had reigned all the last seculum, and was now going to enter on the second. On this occasion were to be assembled several Tartar princes, particularly the Kutuchtu, and the Tush-du-Chan, together with many persons of distinction from Korea, and all the dominions of China. This feast begins on the first day, and continues during the increase of the moon.

The 15th, we went early to court, and found most of the grandees assembled in the court-yard, sitting on their cushions, and a few of them in the great hall. We entered the court at the great gates, which are seldom opened, except on such extraordinary occasions. The Emperor soon came, and seated himself upon his throne, which was more magnificent than that at Tzan-shu-yang, but like it plain and unornamented. His Majesty was dressed in the same manner as at our first audience. We were placed within the hall on the right of the throne, and Signior Mezzobarba, with
the

the missionaries, at no great distance from us. In the mean time, all the people of distinction who came from distant places, made their nine bows to the ground without the hall : And, as there was not room in the hall to contain one half of the company, many of them remained in the court during the whole time of the audience. Our entertainment was almost the same as at our first audience ; which, therefore, I shall not describe.

The Emperor was very cheerful, and sent for several of his old acquaintance to speak with him. The Tush-du-Chan, and some other Tartar princes were placed on the left of the throne, with the Emperor's sons and grandsons. In a word, this assembly exceeded, in number and quality, any thing of the kind I ever saw. I was in hopes to have seen the Kutuchtu on this occasion ; but was informed that the Emperor, who shows great respect to this venerable priest, detained him in his private apartments.

VOL. II.

I

This

This palace occupies a large space of ground, encompassed with an high brick-wall. There are several streets for servants and officers of the household. Many of the houses are high, and covered with yellow varnished tiles, which appear like gold in the sun. Northward from the palace is a large canal, of an irregular figure, where the imperial family divert themselves by fishing. This canal is artificial; and the earth dug out of it has raised an high bank, from whence you have a full view of the city, and the country adjacent, to a considerable distance. This mount rises to a ridge, which is planted with trees, resembling the wild and irregular scenes of nature that frequently present themselves in this country. The canal and mount are of an equal length, which I compute to be about an English mile. This must have been a work of vast expence and labour; and, it must be confessed, contributes greatly to the beauty of the place.

The

The 16th was spent in receiving visits of compliment from the ministers and officers of the court, on occasion of the new year.

Next day, the visits were returned by Mr Secretary Lange and Glazunoff, in name of the ambassador.

The 18th, some of the retinue, accompanied with a Chinese friend, went to a great market, held in the suburbs, about a mile without the city to the south-west. Here we found a number of toys, and things of value, both new and second-hand, exposed to sale in the open street.

Near this place stood a magnificent temple, the doors of which being open, we walked into it, and saw, standing at the south end, a monstrous image, about twenty-five feet high, carved and gilt, having twelve arms and hands, a frightful visage, and great goggling eyes. By the touch it seemed to be made of a kind of plaster. This image is called Fo, which signifies God in the Chinese language. Whilst we walked

walked about in the temple, many people entered, who kneeled and bowed several times to the image ; after which they retired, without taking notice of us, or of any body else. In all the lesser temples I had formerly seen, I found a great number of images of inferior deities or reputed saints ; but this was occupied by Fo only, without any rival.

From the temple we went to a public tea-house, where we saw many people drinking tea and smoking tobacco, from thence to a tavern, where we dined ; and, in the evening, returned to the city.

Next day, I was present at the representation of a kind of farce, in the public street, not far from our lodgings. There were about twenty strollers assembled on this occasion, who entertained the crowd with many legerdemain tricks, and unnatural gestures. The stage was covered with silk-stuff of various colours.

During the festival there are many such stage-plays performed in all the public streets.

streets. You also find often high crosses erected, on which are hoisted a number of pendants, and streamers of party-coloured silks, that make a pretty appearance. At this season all the shops are shut; almost no business is done; and the people go about, dressed in their best cloaths, as on holidays in Europe.

The 20th, the ambassador, and all the gentlemen of the retinue, were invited to dine, at a public-house in the city, by a young Chinese gentleman: And all of us accepted the invitation, except the ambassador. Our friend was so polite as to send chairs for his guests about ten of the clock; and, at eleven, we reached the house, which was the largest of that sort I ever saw, and could easily contain six or eight hundred people. The roof was supported by two rows of wooden pillars. This tavern consisted only of one apartment, great part of which was filled with long tables, having benches on each side for the accommodation of the company. During the time

time of dinner we were entertained with music, and after it, by a company of players maintained by the house, who daily act plays on a stage erected at one side of the room. None but people of fashion come to this place.

When a person intends to treat his friends at one of these houses, he sends previous notice of his design, with a note of the company, and the sum to be laid out on each of them : Agreeably to these orders, things are executed with the greatest punctuality. The expence on each of our company could not be less than three or four ounces of silver, as we staid the whole day, and had a splendid entertainment, consisting of many courses and deserts, prepared and served in the best fashion of the country. I cannot but observe on this occasion also, the order and dexterity with which the servants performed their parts in such a numerous assembly. I shall not pretend to give any account of the play, only that the company seemed highly pleased ; and

the

the performers consisted of both men and women, well dressed, and of decent behaviour.

At several tables the people were employed in gaming ; some playing at cards, others at dice and draughts. I saw no money among them, though I was informed some of the Chinese play very high. In the evening, we took leave of our hospitable friend, and returned to our lodgings.

The day following, Father Paranim sent us a present of a large sturgeon, and some other fresh fish, brought from the river Amoor. These can only be carried to such a distance in the coldest season, when they are preserved fresh, by being kept frozen among the snow. This method is practised with success in northern countries ; for, provided the fish is immediately exposed to the frost after being caught, it may be carried in snow for many miles, almost as fresh as when taken out of the water.

The

The 22d, I went along with our new Chinese friend, named Siasiey, to see a manufactory of China-ware, standing on the bank of the river Yu, about twelve English miles eastward of the city. After arriving at the place, we passed through several shades and houses, where I saw a number of people at work. The ovens, in particular, seemed very curious. But my view was so cursory and superficial, that I could form no judgement of the materials, or manner of making these cleanly and beautiful vessels, which still remain unrivalled by the similar productions of any other nation. I inquired into the truth of the opinion which the Europeans entertain, "that the clay must lie a century to digest before it is fit for use;" and was told by a master workman, that a few months preparation was sufficient. So far as I could observe, they made no secret at this place of what they were employed about. I was, however, told, that, to the south, the Chinese are more cautious, and carefully

carefully conceal their art from strangers. One thing I firmly believe, that, although the Europeans understood the art of making porcelain, the Chinese would undersell them at every market in the world. This valuable manufacture is carried on in most of the towns in China ; and as it is sold but a little above the rate of common earthen-ware in Europe, the materials of which it is composed can neither be rare nor costly. This important branch of trade brings an immense treasure into the country, and affords employment to vast numbers of poor, who otherwise would be useless and burdensome to the public. Besides china, they also make a kind of delf, or earthen-ware, for the use of the lower class of people.

Next day, I happened to meet two gentlemen from the peninsula of Korea. Their physiognomies were nearly the same with those of the Chinese, but their dress different. What surprised me most was, that they were as ignorant of the spoken Chi-

nese language as I was, and delivered themselves by an interpreter. When they have any thing material to communicate they put it in writing, which is easily understood by the Chinese. They write in the same manner as the Chinese, from the top of the page, in straight lines to the bottom, and with a pencil, like those commonly used by painters.

Korea is a fine country subject to China, situated betwixt the long wall and the river Amoor, and runs out into a point, towards the island of Japan and the Eastern ocean. The country is very plentiful, and abounds with corn and cattle,

C H A P.

C H A P. XI.

Occurrences at Pekin continued ; the Festival held at Court on the New Year, &c.

THE 24th, the master of the ceremonies came to invite the ambassador to the festival of the new year, which is always when the moon is at the full, to be held at the imperial palace of Tzang-shu-yang on the 29th.

In the mean time, the cold continued very piercing, so that I saw horses, with loaded carriages, cross the ditches, without the walls of the city, upon the ice.

The

The 29th, chairs were sent from court to carry the ambassador, and gentlemen of the retinue ; we arrived there in the evening, and lodged in a house near the palace. Near our lodgings was a pretty garden with a canal, on which was a small pleasure-boat. In the middle of the canal was raised an artificial mount, planted with some barren trees, in imitation of nature. We ascended by a winding path to the top of the mount, from whence we had a fine view of all the country around.

The 30th, being the first day of the festival, we went to court. We were met at the gate by the master of the ceremonies, who conducted us to the bottom of the stairs of the great hall, where we took our places in the open court-yard, among a numerous assembly of grandees, whom we found sitting cross-legged on their cushions. After waiting about a quarter of an hour, his Majesty appeared, and seated himself upon the throne ; upon which all the company stood. The Chinese made their bows,

bows, as is usual on such occasions, but we were permitted to make our compliments in our own fashion. It seemed somewhat strange to a Briton, to see some thousands of people upon their knees, and bowing their heads to the ground, in most humble posture, to a mortal like themselves.

We were immediately brought into the hall, and the ambassador was conducted to the throne, in order to congratulate his Imperial Majesty on the anniversary of the new year. Our station, on this occasion, as at the first audience, was to the right of the throne. All the princes, the Emperor's sons and grandsons, together with the Tush du chan, and some other persons of high distinction, were placed to the left, opposite to us. As the customs of the Chinese are, in many instances, quite contrary to those of the Europeans, so, I have been informed, that, among them, the left hand is the place of greatest honour. After we had drunk a dish of tea, the Emperor beckoned to the ambassador to come to him again, and

and inquired into the customs and ceremonies at the courts of Europe on festivals of this nature ; adding, at the same time, “ he had been informed, that, after drinking to the king’s health on such occasions, the Europeans broke the glasses. He approved, he said, of the drinking part ; but did not comprehend the meaning of ‘ breaking the glasses ;’ and laughed heartily at the joke.

The great hall was, by this time, almost full of company ; and a number of people of distinction still remained in the area, who could not find room in the hall.

The entertainment now began to be served up. The viands were carried about in great order, and placed before the company on large tables. All the dishes were cold, except those set before his Majesty, who supplied us plentifully with hot provisions from the throne.

Dinner being ended, the sports were begun by a company of wrestlers, composed of Chinese and Tartars. Many of them were

were almost naked, having no cloaths but tight canvas drawers. They performed their parts in the area before the hall. When any of them was severely bruised by his antagonist, or much hurt by a fall, which frequently happened, the Emperor sent him a cordial, and ordered him to be properly taken care of. Sometimes also, when he perceived the combatants too eager and warm, a sign was given to part them. These instances of humanity were very amiable in the old monarch, and rendered the sight of such shocking spectacles more tolerable ; for many of these wrestlers received such blows and falls, as were sufficient to have knocked the breath out of their bodies.

To the wrestling succeeded many other games and mock-fights, in which the performers, armed, some with lances, others with battle-axes, quarter-staffs, flails, or cudgels, acted their parts with great dexterity.

Then

Then appeared two troops of Tartars, clothed in coats of tiger-skins, armed with bows and arrows, and mounted on hobby-horses. At first, they behaved as enemies ; but, after some skirmishes with their arrows, the parties were reconciled, and began a dance to a dismal tune of vocal and instrumental music. The dance was interrupted by a person in a frightful mask, of a tall stature, dressed and mounted like the Tartars, who, they said, represented the devil. After making several unsuccessful attacks, on the united body of the Tartars, this formidable hero was at length killed by an arrow, and carried off in triumph. During the dance, each Tartar had a small basket in one hand, and an arrow in the other, wherewith they scraped on the basket, keeping time to the music. This scraping sounded a little harsh to an Italian ear ; for I could observe Signor Mezzabarba and his retinue smiling at the performance.

"

While

While the Tartars performed in the court, one of the Emperor's sons, a prince of about twenty years of age, danced alone in the hall, and attracted the eyes of the whole company. His motions were at first very slow, so that he seemed scarcely to move at all; but afterwards became more brisk and lively. The Emperor was cheerful, and seemed well pleased with the different performers; but particularly with an old Tartar, who played on a chime of little bells, with two short ivory rods. The instruments of music were very various, and all tuned to the Chinese taste. The Emperor told the ambassador, that he knew well their music would not please an European ear, but that every nation liked their own best.

The dancing being over, there was hoisted up a large vessel, resembling a tub, between two posts erected in the area for that purpose. In the vessel were placed three boys, who performed many dexterous tricks, both in the vessel and on the posts, too te-

dious to mention. By this time the sun was set, and the company were soon after dismissed for the night.

Next day, the rejoicings were renewed. We did not, however, go to court before the evening, because the fire-works would not begin till the sun was set. On our arrival, we were conducted through a garden, westward from the palace, in the middle of which stood a large building, with covered galleries all around. Before the house was a canal, having over it a draw-bridge. We took our places on the gravel-walk, just under the gallery, where the Emperor sat with his wives and family. Hard by us was the Kutuchtu in his tent, having one of his lamas standing at the door. This priest never once appeared out of his tent during the whole show. All the grandees and officers of state were seated on their cushions along the bank of the canal. The machinery for the fire-works was placed on the other side of the canal;

canal ; and nobody was permitted to go thither, except the people who managed it.

About five of the clock a signal was given for beginning to play off the fireworks, by a rocket let fly from the gallery where the Emperor sat ; and, in the space of a few minutes, many thousand lanterns were lighted. These lanterns were made of paper of different colours, red, blue, green, and yellow, and hung on posts about six feet high, scattered over all the garden ; which exhibited a very pleasant prospect to the eye.

Another signal was then given, for playing off the rockets. They sprung upwards to a prodigious height, and fell down in figures of stars, displaying a great variety of beautiful colours. The rockets were accompanied with what I shall call crackers, for want of a more proper name. Their explosion resembled the reports of many great guns, fired at certain intervals, and exhibited a view of many charming colours,

colours, and forms of fire. These, with a few fire-works of different kinds intermixed, continued for the space of three hours.

Opposite to the gallery where the Emperor sat was suspended a large round vessel, about twenty feet in diameter, between two posts about thirty feet high. A rocket sent from the gallery lighted a match, hanging from the vessel, which immediately caused the bottom of it to drop down with a loud noise. Then fell out a lattice, or grate-work, all on fire, and hung between the vessel and the ground, burning furiously, in various colours. This continued for ten minutes, and really exhibited a most curious sight. It seems this lattice-work was composed of materials that immediately kindled, on being exposed to the air; for no person was seen near the machine.

The grate-work being extinguished, there appeared a lighted match, hanging from the middle of the vessel, and burning up to it. As soon as the fire reached the vessel,

thirty

thirty fair paper-lanterns, of various colours, dropped from it, and hung, in a straight line, below one another, between it and the ground ; which immediately catched fire of themselves, and formed a beautiful and well proportioned column of parti-coloured light. After this fell out about ten or twelve pillars of the same form, but of a lesser size ; these also took fire as soon as they dropped. This scene continued till the number of one thousand lanterns fell from the vessel, which diminished every time, till the last were very small. I must confess this presented a delightful object to the spectators.

I could not help being surprised at the ingenuity of the artist, in crowding such a number of lanterns into so small and simple a machine as this seemed to be ; and, at the same time, with so much order, that all of them dropped and kindled of themselves, with equal regularity, as if he had let them fall from his hand ; for not even one of them was extinguished by accident, or in
the

the least entangled by another. This concluded the first day's entertainment.

The 31st, in the evening, we returned to court, where was opened a new scene of fire-works, which continued, with great variety, till ten o'clock at night.

The 1st of February, we went again to court, where the fire-works were resumed in many different well executed designs. What pleased me most, was a small mount, raised in the middle of the garden, from which sprung a stream of white and blue fire, in imitation of water. The top of the mount contained a cavity, in shape of a large urn, from which the fire rose to a prodigious height.

Opposite to the gallery, where the Emperor sat, were erected three large frames, about thirty feet high each. On one was a monstrous figure of a dragon ; on the second a man on horseback ; and the third represented an elephant, with a human figure on his back. All these were composed of a deep blue fire, and were interwoven

ven

ven with vines and grapes, hanging about on all sides, of white, red, and blue fire.

Besides these, there were exhibited, on this occasion, many other ingenious designs of fire-works, which far surpassed any thing of the kind I ever saw, though I have been present at performances of this nature exhibited at St Petersburgh by the best artists in Europe. Besides the art displayed in the contrivance and figure, these works furnished, in particular, a wonderful variety of most beautiful colours, far exceeding my ability to describe. I must confess they far outdid my expectations, and even common fame, which seldom lessens things of this nature.

The following day, the Emperor gave the ambassador a private audience, and inquired how he liked the diversions and fire-works. On this occasion, the Emperor repeated what has been already observed concerning the antiquity of illuminations composed of gun-powder ; and added, that, although fire-works had been known .

known in China for more than two thousand years, he himself had made many improvements upon them, and brought them to their present perfection.

The 3d, we returned to the city, in a cold frosty day, and the wind at north-west. We found the rejoicings still going on at Pekin; for stages were erected, and plays represented, in all the principal streets through which we passed.

The affairs relating to the embassy being nearly finished, we began now to prepare for our journey to the westward, which was to take place as soon as the extremity of the cold was abated.

The 9th, three missionaries, Paranim, Demail, and Moran, came to pay their respects to the ambassador, and beg the favour of him, that Signor Nicolai, one of their society, might be permitted to accompany him in his journey to Europe, which was granted, provided it was agreeable to the Emperor. The reason of this request was supposed to be, that Signor Mezzobarba

ba having returned to Rome without accomplishing the ends of his embassy, the Emperor, who favoured the cause of the Jesuits, had concerted with them to send Nicolai to the court of room, in order to represent the state of this affair before Mezzobarba could arrive.

Next day, the Emperor sent three officers with presents to his Czarish Majesty ; the chief of which were, tapestry for two rooms, neatly wrought on a rich silk stuff ; a set of small enamelled gold cups ; some japanned cups, set with mother of pearl ; three flower-pieces, curiously embroidered on taffety ; two chests of rockets, prepared in the Chinese fashion ; about twenty or thirty pieces of silk, in most of which was interwoven the dragon with five claws ; a parcel of different sorts of curious fans for ladies ; also, a box containing some rolls of white Chinese paper, the sheets of which were of a size much larger than common ; besides several other toys, scarce worth mentioning. From these particulars

it appears, that these two mighty monarchs were not very lavish in their presents to each other, preferring curiosities to things of real value.

The 11th, several officers came from court with presents to the ambassador, and every person of the retinue, corresponding to their different stations and characters ; and, so minutely and exactly was this matter managed, that even the meanest of our servants was not neglected. The presents, consisting of a complete Chinese dress, some pieces of damasks, and other stuffs, were, indeed, of no great value. They were, however, carried along the streets, wrapped up in yellow silk, with the usual parade of things belonging to the court ; a circumstance which is reckoned one of the greatest honours that can be conferred on a foreign minister.

Next day, the Emperor sent to ask the ambassador, whether he inclined to accompany him to a hunting-match, in a forest
not

not far distant from Pekin ; to which his Excellency readily agreed.

The 13th, I dined with one of my Chinese friends, called Fangfung. In going thither, I met in the street two men riding upon asses, with their servants leading them by the bridle. I soon perceived they were Kawlees ; which is the name given by the Chinese and Tartars, to the people of Korea, whom I have mentioned above.

The 14th, the weather was very fine and warm.

The 15th, we went to a fair in the suburbs, which is held the first day of every new moon, where we found many things exposed to sale, not commonly found in shops.

The 16th, the weather being favourable, I took a ride round the walls of the city ; which I performed, at an easy trot, in the space of four hours ; whereby the compass of Pekin may be nearly computed. The suburbs, especially to the east and south, are very extensive, and, in many

ny places of them, the buildings are equal to those within the walls.

The 17th, being now on the point of our departure, in order to make the most of the short time we had to stay, I rode about twelve miles eastward from Pekin, accompanied with a Chinese friend, to the banks of the river, which I found crowded with a number of barks, of different sizes, which are constantly employed in carrying provisions, and other stores, to the city, from distant parts of the country. I saw many vessels sailing down the stream, towards the south-east. And I was informed there are nine thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine vessels, constantly employed on this river ; but why confined to such an odd number, I could neither learn nor comprehend. During a month, or six weeks, in winter, this river is frozen over ; at which season, provisions are conveyed by land-carriage, or along the ice.

On this occasion also I visited the China manufactory, in order to try whether I could

could learn any thing of that curious art. But, though the people were very com- plaisant, and showed me every thing I de- sired them, I returned as ignorant as I went thither ; and I am perswaded, that, before a person can get any knowledge of the af- fair, he must be bred a potter, and have time to inspect its whole progress ; of which these people seem to make no se- cret.

The fields along the banks of the river are well cultivated, producing fine wheat, and other sorts of grain. I saw also great plantations of tobacco, which they call tharr, and which yields very considerable profits, as it is universally used in smoking, by persons of all ranks, of both sexes, in China ; and, besides, great quantities are sent to the Mongalls, who prefer the Chi- nese manner of preparing it before every other. They make it into a gross powder, like saw-dust, which they keep in a small bag, and fill their little brass pipes out of it, without touching the tobacco with their fingers.

fingers. The smoke is very mild, and has quite a different smell from ours. It is reported the Chinese have had the use of tobacco for many ages.

I observed, that, in cold weather, the Chinese chewed a kind of nut, about the bigness of a nutmeg, which they called beetle ; it is of an astringent quality. They say, it both keeps them warm, and cleans their teeth.

Next day was spent in preparing for our journey.

On the 18th, all our gentlemen dined with my Chinese friend, named Siasiey, where we met with a friendly réception, and a sumptuous feast. After dinner, our hospitable landlord put about his cups very freely. At last, he took me by the hand, and desired I would let the ambassador return and remain with him ; and he would give me my choice of which of his wives or daughters I liked best. I could not but return my friend hearty thanks for his obliging

bliging offer, which, however, I thought it not proper to accept.

Next day, I went to see the market where provisions were sold. It was a spacious oblong, spread with gravel, very neat and clean. The butchers had their shops in a shade, running quite round the place. I saw little beef, but a great deal of mutton. In the middle was great store of poultry, wild-fowl, and venison ; but, what surprised me not a little, was to find about a dozen of dead badgers exposed to sale. The Chinese, it seems, are very fond of these animals, which are accounted unclean in other parts of the world. All the Chinese merchants have the art of exposing their goods to sale, dressed up in the most advantageous manner ; and, even in purchasing any trifling thing, whatever the case be that holds it, it is half the cost, and often exceeds it in value.

The 21st, being the day appointed for hunting with the Emperor, at one of the clock in the morning, horses were brought to

to our lodgings, for the ambassador, and those who attended him. We immediately mounted, and, after riding about six miles, to the south-west of the city, at break of day we reached the gates of the park called Chayza, where we were received by an officer, and conducted through the forest to a summer-house, about a mile from the gate, in which the Emperor had slept the preceding night. This was a small but neat building, having a double row of galleries, open to the forest on all sides, and an avenue leading to it from the gate, planted with several rows of trees. At some distance from the house, we dismounted, and were met by the master of the ceremonies, who conducted us into a gallery. As soon as we entered, the good old Emperor, who had risen long before our arrival, sent one of his eunuchs to salute the ambassador, and ordered us tea and other victuals. On the south side of the house is a canal, filled with clear water, and several large fish-ponds, which make

a

a great addition to the beauties of this charming place. At a convenient distance from the house, stood about a thousand tents, where the courtiers and grandees had lodged the night before. Breakfast being over, the Emperor, who was very fond of arms, sent to desire a sight of the ambassador's fowling-piece. He returned it, with several of his own to be shown us. They had all match-locks. The Chinese are possessed with a notion, that flints, in their climate, acquire a moisture which hinders their firing. But, as far as I could perceive, the air had little effect upon our flints.

A signal was then given that the Emperor was coming ; upon which all the great men drew up in lines, from the bottom of the stairs to the road leading to the forest, all on foot, dressed in their hunting habits, the same with those used by the officers and cavalry of the army, when in the field, and armed with bows and arrows. We had a proper place assigned us, and

made our bows to his Majesty, who returned a gracious smile, with signs to follow him. He was seated cross-legged, in an open machine, carried by four men, with long poles rested on their shoulders. Before him lay a fowling-piece, a bow, and sheaf of arrows. This has been his hunting equipage for some years, since he left off riding ; but, in his youth, he went usually, every summer, several days journey without the long wall, and carried along with him all the princes his sons, and many persons of distinction, to the number frequently of some thousands, in order to hunt in the woods and deserts ; where he continued for the space of two or three months. Their provisions were restricted to bare necessities, and often to what they caught in the woods of Tartary. This piece of policy he practised chiefly with a view to harden the officers of his army, and prevent their falling into idleness and effeminacy among the Chinese, and, at the same time, to set a good example of the austere-

austerities he recommended, by living on the same hard fare he prescribed to others.

As soon as the Emperor had passed, the company mounted and followed him, at some distance, till we came into the open forest, where all formed into a semicircle, in the centre of which was the Emperor, having on his left hand about eight or ten of his sons and grandsons, and the ambassador on his right, about fifty paces distant ; close by him were the master of the chace, with some grey-hounds, and the grand falconer with his hawks. I could not but admire the beauty of these fine birds. Many of them were as white as doves, having one or two black feathers in their wings or tails. They are brought from Siberia, or places to the north of the river Amoor.

Our wings being extended, there were many hares started, which the company endeavoured to drive towards the Emperor, who killed many of them with arrows as they passed ; those he missed, he made a sign

sign to some of the princes to pursue, who also killed several of them with arrows; but no other person was permitted to draw a bow, or stir from the line. The same rules of hunting I formerly observed are practised by the Mongalls.

From the open field, we continued our route westward, to a place among thickets and tall reeds, where we sprung a number of pheasants, partridges, and quails. His Majesty then laid aside his bow and arrows, and carried a hawk on his hand, which he flew as occasion offered. The hawks generally raked in the pheasants while flying; but, if they took the reeds or bushes, they soon caught them.

After proceeding about two or three miles farther into the forest, we came to a tall wood, where we found several sorts of deer. The young men went in and beat the woods, whilst the rest of the company remained without. We saw much game pass us; but nobody drew a bow till the Emperor had killed a stag, which he did

very

very dexterously, with a broad-headed arrow, after which the princes had leave to kill several bucks; among which was one of that species that bears the musk, called *haberda* in Siberia, of which I have formerly given a description. The Chinese musk is stronger, and therefore preferable to that from northern parts.

We had now been six hours on horseback, and, I reckon, had travelled about fifteen English miles, but no end of the forest yet appeared. We turned short from this wood southwards, till, coming to some marshes, overgrown with tall reeds, we roused a great many wild bears; but, as it was not the season for killing them, they all escaped. The hunting these fierce animals is reckoned the most dangerous of all kinds of sport, except the chace of lions and tigers. Every one endeavoured to avoid them; and several of them run furiously through the thickest troops of horse. The Emperor was so cautious as to have a

com-

company of men, armed with lances, to guard his machine.

We continued the sport till about four o'clock, when we came to a high artificial mount, of a square figure, raised in the middle of a plain, on the top of which were pitched about ten or twelve tents, for the imperial family. This mount had several winding paths leading to the top, planted on each side with rows of trees, in imitation of nature. To the south was a large basin of water, with a boat upon it; from whence, I suppose, the earth has been taken that formed this mount. At some distance from the mount, tents were erected for the people of distinction, and officers of the court. About two hundred yards from it, we were lodged in some clean huts, covered with reeds. The Emperor, from his situation, had a view of all the tents, and a great way farther into the forest. The whole scene made a very pretty appearance.

As

As soon as we alighted, the master of the ceremonies was sent by the Emperor to ask the ambassador how he liked their manner of hunting. He made a suitable return, acknowledging, at the same time, the great honour done him on this occasion.

The Emperor then sent us great plenty of dressed provisions of all kinds; and the officer who brought them pointed out several dishes, which his Majesty sent from his own table, consisting of mutton, venison, pheasants, and other sorts of wild fowl.

After dinner, the Emperor sent two of his chief eunuchs to compliment the ambassador, and inform him, that he intended to entertain him with the baiting of three tigers, which had been kept some time, cooped up in a strong grate-work, for that purpose. The hill where the Emperor's tent stood was surrounded with several ranks of guards, armed with long spears. A guard also was placed before the ambassador's, and the rest of the tents, to secure the

the whole encampment from the fury of these fierce animals. The first was let out by a person mounted on a fleet horse, who opened the door of the coop by means of a rope tied to it. The tiger immediately left his cage, and seemed much pleased to find himself at liberty. The horseman rode off at full speed, while the tiger was rolling himself upon the grass. At last he rose, and growled, and walked about. The Emperor fired twice at him with bullets ; but, the distance being considerable, missed him, though the pieces were well pointed. Upon which his Majesty sent to the ambassador, to try his piece upon him ; which being charged with a single ball, he walked towards the animal, accompanied by ten men, armed with spears, in case of accidents ; till, being at a convenient distance, he took his aim, and killed him on the spot.

The second was let out in the same manner. The horseman, retiring a little, left the creature rolling upon the grass like the first.

first. He then returned, and shot at him with a blunted arrow ; which roused the animal to such a pitch, and made him pursue so closely, that the horseman narrowly escaped within the ranks, where the furious tiger, endeavouring to leap over the men's heads, was killed at the foot of the mount.

The third, as soon as he was set at liberty, run directly towards the Emperor's tent, and was in like manner killed with the spears. A man must be well mounted and armed who hunts this kind of animals in the woods ; where they must be much stronger and swifter than these we saw, which had been confined for many months, and whose limbs, by want of exercise, were become stiff and unwieldy ; but, notwithstanding this disadvantage, the courage and nimbleness even of these animals was very surprising. I have seen four sorts of them, the tiger, panther, leopard, and lynx, which are all very fierce ; but the first is the largest and strongest.

The Emperor in his youth was very fond of hunting these creatures in the woods of Tartary ; but now he confines himself within the limits of the forest, where there is game sufficient to gratify any sportsman.

The killing of the tigers finished the diversion of the day ; after which we retired to our huts, where we were entertained with a plentiful supper sent us by the Emperor. After supper, an officer was sent from his Majesty to the ambassador, who brought the tiger's skin he had shot, telling him, that, by the laws of hunting, he had a right to it.

Next morning, the sport was resumed, and varied little from that of the preceding day. About three o'clock afternoon we came to another summer-house in the middle of the forest, where the Emperor lodged the following night, while we lay in a small neat temple in the neighbourhood, and were entertained by his Majesty in the same manner as before.

The

The 23d, about eight of the clock in the morning, the master of the ceremonies waited on the ambassador, in order to conduct him into his Majesty's presence to receive his audience of leave. The Emperor received him in a most friendly manner in his bed-chamber. He repeated his assurances of the great friendship he entertained for his Czarish Majesty, and expressed great respect for the personal merit of the ambassador. After which the ambassador took leave, and we returned to our lodgings in the city.

I shall only observe further, that this forest is really a most delightful place, is well stored with variety of game, and is of great extent, as will easily be conceived from the account I have given of our two days hunting. It is all inclosed with a high wall of brick. The value of this park, so near the capital, shows the magnificence of this powerful monarch.

The 24th, the ambassador was invited, by the president of the college of mathematics,

matics, to see the observatory, which is situated immediately within the east wall, and commands an extensive prospect. The building is not magnificent, but is furnished with a fine armillary sphere, globes, telescopes, an orrery in good order, and other mathematical instruments of the best European workmanship. This college was erected by the present Emperor, who spares no cost to bring it to perfection ; and the meanest of his subjects, who discover a genius for science, or any useful art, are sure to meet with due encouragement.

The Chinese are indebted to the present Emperor for what progress they have made in astronomy. He chiefly promoted this study by countenancing the Jesuits and other missionaries ; for I have been informed that, before their arrival in this country, the inhabitants could scarcely calculate an eclipse. The Chinese, it is indeed pretended, understood astronomy previous to that period ; but the knowledge of it was

in

in a great measure lost during the many fatal revolutions of the empire.

From the observatory we ascended, by a broad rising passage, to the top of the city-wall, where we saw about fifteen horsemen riding their rounds, which we were told they performed day and night at stated times. The wall is built of brick, and is about twenty-five or thirty feet high, having embrasures and square towers at equal distances, and a wide deep ditch, which may be filled with water at pleasure. On the top of the wall there is a pleasant walk, broad enough for fifteen horsemen to ride a-breast. I suppose the whole is, perhaps, not composed of solid bricks, but the middle filled up with earth and rubbish.

The 25th, we went to all the three convents, and took leave of our friends the missionaries.

The 26th, the ambassador went to the tribunal for foreign affairs, and received a letter from the Emperor to his Czarish Majesty. On this occasion the president acquainted

quainted his Excellency, that he must consider this letter as a singular mark of favour to his master, as their Emperors were not in use to write letters of compliment to any prince ; or, indeed, to write letters of any kind, except those which contained their orders to their subjects ; and that the Emperor dispensed with so material a custom, only to testify his respect for his Czarish Majesty.

The original of this letter was in the Chinese language, and a copy of it in the Mongolian. It was folded up in a long roll, according to the custom in China, and wrapped in a piece of yellow silk, which was tied to a man's arm, and carried in procession before the ambassador. All persons on horseback whom we met dismounted, and stood till we had passed them. Such veneration do these people pay to every thing belonging to the Emperor.

The same day, the ambassador had a visit from a young gentleman, a descendant of the famous Chinese philosopher Confucius,

cius, whose memory and works are greatly respected in China. From what I could learn of this eminent philosopher, he appears to have been a person of extraordinary parts, extensive knowledge, and exemplary virtue. On account of such rare qualities, his family is still honoured and esteemed even by the Emperor himself.

C H A P.

C H A P. XII.

*Some account of the present Emperor
of China, the Chinese Wall, &c.*

BEFORE we leave China, I shall make a few general remarks on the people and country, drawn from the best information I could procure; and shall begin with the long wall.

The long, or endless wall, as it is commonly called, encompasses all the north and west parts of China. It was built, about six hundred years ago, by one of the Emperors, to prevent the frequent incursions of the Mongalls, and other western Tartars,

Tartars, who made a practice of assembling numerous troops of horse, and invading the country in different places. The Chinese frontiers were too extensive to be guarded against such bold and numerous enemies, who, after plundering and destroying a wealthy country, returned to their own, loaded with spoils.

The Chinese finding all precautions ineffectual to put a stop to the inroads of such barbarians, at last resolved to build this famous wall. It begins in the province of Leotong, at the bottom of the bay of Nankin, and proceeds across rivers, and over the tops of the highest mountains, without interruption, keeping nearly along the circular ridge of barren rocks that surround the country to the north and west; and, after running southwards about twelve hundred English miles, ends in impassable mountains and sandy deserts.

The foundation consists of large blocks of square stones laid in mortar; but the rest of the wall is built of brick. The

VOL. II. P whole

whole is so strong and well built as to need almost no repair, and in such a dry climate may remain in this condition for many ages. Its height and breadth are not equal in every place ; nor, indeed, is it necessary they should. When carried over steep rocks where no horse can pass, it is about fifteen or twenty feet high, and broad in proportion ; but, when running through a valley, or crossing a river, there you see a strong wall, about thirty feet high, with square towers, at the distance of a bow-shot from one another, and embrasures at equal distances. The top of the wall is flat, and paved with broad free-stone ; and where it rises over a rock, or any eminence, you ascend by a fine easy stone stair.

The bridges over rivers and torrents are exceedingly neat, being both well contrived and executed. They have two storeys of arches, one above another, to afford sufficient passage for the waters on sudden rains and floods.

This

This wall was begun and completely finished in the space of five years ; every sixth man in China being obliged to work himself, or find another in his stead. It is reported, the labourers stood so close, for many miles distance, as to hand the materials from one to another. This I am the more inclined to believe, as the rugged rocks would prevent all use of carriages ; nor could clay, for making bricks or cement of any kind, be found among them.

The building of this wall, however, was not the only burden the Chinese supported on this occasion. They were also obliged to keep a numerous army in the field to guard the passes of the mountains, and secure the labourers from being interrupted by their watchful enemies the Tartars, who all the while were not idle spectators.

I am of opinion, that no nation in the world was able for such an undertaking except the Chinese : For, though some other kingdom might have furnished a sufficient number of workmen for such an enterprise,

terprise, none but the ingenious, sober, and parsimonious Chinese could have preserved order amidst such multitudes, or patiently submitted to the hardships attending such a labour. This surprising piece of work, if not the greatest, may justly be reckoned among the wonders of the world. And the Emperor, who planned and completed it, deserves fame, as much superior to his who built the famous Egyptian pyramids, as a performance of real use excels a work of vanity.

Besides the main wall, there are several semicircular walls, which have the long wall for their diameter, at the places least fortified by nature, and at the open passes of the mountains. These are strongly built, of the same materials and architecture with the long wall, and are of considerable extent, sometimes on one side of the main wall, and sometimes on the other. In these walls are strong gates, constantly defended by a numerous guard. They are intended to prevent a surprise, and stop sudden

sudden irruptions of the enemy. Even these lesser bulwarks seem works of great expence and labour, but nothing in comparison with the long wall.

After the Chinese had finished their wall, they had respite for a considerable time from the invasions of their enemies, reaping the fruits of their labour in peace and quietness. However, about five hundred years ago, the western Tartars found means to get through the wall, and, with a powerful army of horse, entered the country, carrying terror along with them wherever they went. They at last became masters of the greatest part of China, and kept possession of it for many years, till the Chinese, exasperated by their tyranny, took advantage of their negligence, and drove them back with disgrace to their ancient habitations in the deserts. The Chinese now began to re-establish their former government, to rectify disorders, and repair desolations made by the Tartars. From this time they enjoyed long peace, till the fatal

fatal year one thousand six hundred and forty, when the Mantzur Tartars conquered the whole empire of China ; which conquest they retain to this day, and, by their prudent management and mild government, seem in a fair way to keep it.

I shall briefly relate in what manner this strange revolution was brought about by so small a nation as the Mantzurs ; a people whom the Chinese despised, and who bear no greater proportion to the Chinese than the inhabitants of Wales to the rest of Great Britain.

It happened, during a time of profound peace, that a certain prince of Mantzur, going to fetch his bride, from a place bordering on the province of Leotong, was, without provocation, attacked by a party of Chinese and slain, with most of his attendants, against all laws of justice and good neighbourhood.

The Tartars, though highly exasperated, behaved with uncommon moderation on this occasion. Before proceeding to make reprisals,

reprisals, or taking any step whatever with that view, they sent ambassadors to the court of Pekin, demanding satisfaction for the outrage committed upon one of their princes. The incomplaints were neglected, and the matter, under various pretences, delayed, from time to time, till the Tartars, losing all patience, and positively insisting on an answer to their demands, were affronted, and contemptuously dismissed by the Chinese ministry, to whom the Emperor had referred them. This treatment highly enraged the whole race of the Tartars, who immediately vowed revenge ; and having got an army together, entered the province of Leotong, which lies without the wall, wasting all with fire and sword.

Besides this war with the Tartars, several other circumstances concurred to bring about a revolution in the empire ; for at the same time there happened a great insurrection in China, which at last became general. The rebels were commanded by

one

one named Li, who, after having defeated the imperial army sent to oppose him, invested and took Pekin itself. And the Emperor, rather than fall into the hands of his furious subjects, first hanged his daughter, and then himself, on a tree in his own garden.

The Emperor's general, Usangue, still kept the field with the small remains of his troops, but altogether unable to resist the powerful army of the rebels. He therefore retired northwards ; and all hopes of success being lost, came to a resolution of calling in the Tartars to his assistance. He promised them many rewards, and particularly the province of Leotong, if by their aid he succeeded in forcing the rebels to obedience. Kum-ti, the Tartar chief, readily hearkened to the proposal, and the terms were soon settled between the parties.

In consequence of this agreement, the new allies joined armies, which were both commanded by the Tartar, and advanced towards

towards the long wall : But before they reached the gate, Kum-ti, the Tartar prince, died, and left his son, Xungsti, a child of seven years of age, for his successor. This accident did not retard the progress of the expedition ; for this child was left to the guardianship of his uncle, a man of great abilities and address, and perfectly qualified to conduct the important project then on foot.

Immediately after the death of Kum-ti, the young prince was proclaimed King of the Mantzurs, and commander in chief of the combined army of Tartars and Chinese. In order to magnify the number of Tartars in the army, and consequently render themselves more formidable to the rebels, they luckily fell upon a stratagem, which was, to dress all the Chinese soldiers in Tartar habits : And, at entering the wall, the real Tartars in the army did not exceed eight thousand men, though indeed they were followed by strong reinforcements.

When they arrived at the wall, the Chinese, who kept guard, seeing a child at the head of such an army, which they imagined to consist wholly of Tartars, were so surprised, that they immediately opened the gates, without the least resistance, crying out, long live the Emperor. This circumstance, added to the reports of so formidable an army of Tartars, increasing daily by reinforcements, struck such terror into the rebels, that many of them forsook their leader. The Tartars still advanced, and had daily skirmishes and several battles with the rebels, in which the latter were defeated. In the mean time, the guardian took care to leave garrisons in all the towns through which they passed, with strict orders to use the inhabitants with the greatest humanity. Such mild behaviour gained the affection of the nation in general. And thus he proceeded, from one province to another, till the whole empire submitted to his jurisdiction.

The

The war, which had lasted some years, being now at an end, and peace re-established, the Chinese thanked the Tartars for their good services, and desired they would return to their own country. But the Tartar chief, on various pretences, delayed his departure till such time as he found his party sufficiently strong to fix his nephew, Xungsti, on the imperial throne of China.

Xungsti died a young man, and left his second son, Kamhi, to succeed him. On finding himself at the point of death, he called for his eldest son, and asked him, whether he would take upon him the government? but, being young and modest, he was unwilling to accept, and begged his father would excuse him on that account. Then Kamhi was called, and asked the same question. He was better instructed, and briskly answered, he was ready to obey his father's commands, and would take the weight of the government upon him. This answer so pleased the Emperor, that he named

named him his successor ; and, accordingly, on the death of his father, {he was proclaimed Emperor ; and his behaviour has shown him altogether worthy of that honour. It is, it seems, agreeable to the laws and customs of China, that the Emperor chuse, for his successor, which of his sons he pleases, without regard to primogeniture.

Although the Emperor's name is Kamhi, the western Tartars call him Boghdoychan, signifying chief governour ; but the Chinese, in talking of him, say Vansuy, which signifies many times ten thousand years, meaning, let the Emperor live so long. This is a high title in the Oriental phrase. His sons are called Van, signifying ten thousand years, and are distinguished by the names of Van the first, Van the second, &c. according to their age.

Kamhi, the present Emperor, has about twenty sons, and, it is said, he intends the fourteenth for his successor. He is a prince eminent for prudence and valour, and had,

had, at this time, the command of an army against the Kalmucks.

Kamhi hath yet the remains of a graceful person. His countenance is open, his disposition generous, and he gives great application to business ; qualities absolutely necessary to manage the great affairs with which he is intrusted. His reign has been long and prosperous, though sometimes disturbed by dangerous insurrections, and open rebellions ; but his good fortune and prudent conduct, overcoming all difficulties, restored public tranquillity ; and he has now, for a considerable time, enjoyed perfect peace and happiness. Although the government of China is absolute, it requires no small sagacity and skill to rule an empire of such extensive dominions, and containing so numerous subjects.

After Kamhi had settled his affairs at home, the first step he took was to gain the western or Mongall Tartars to his friendship. The Chinese had no enemies so formidable. The Emperor knew their valour,

lour, and had employed many of them in his army, who did him signal services on many occasions. To effect this, he began to form alliances with their princes and chiefs, by intermarriages between their families and his, where these could take place ; others he allured by rich presents ; so that they are at present little better than his subjects : And, by this master-piece of politics, he succeeded more effectually than if he had employed the whole force of China. The friendship of the western Tartars is of great importance to the Emperor ; for they not only supply Pekin with provisions, the produce of their flocks, but, upon any emergency, can bring to his assistance fifty thousand horse on a short warning.

It may easily be imagined, that great armies and strict discipline are necessary to guard so extensive territories, and keep such a numerous people to their duty. The number of soldiers reported to be in the empire is prodigious, and almost incredible.

I am well informed, that the single province and city of Pekin contain no less than one hundred and twenty thousand effective men, all well paid, cloathed, and armed.

Notwithstanding the vast revenues which are necessary for the support of the government, the duties on inland trade must be very easy; for I was told by a merchant, that he could live in the capital, and trade in what branches of business he pleased, for paying only one ounce of silver annually to the Emperor. Such easy taxes shew the great oeconomy and moderation of Kamhi, whose reign is called the reign of great peace and rest; in Chinese *Tay-ping*.

The Tartars call China Kitay, and the people Kitaytzi; but the Chinese call themselves Chum-quotigen, that is, the people of the middle region.

The empire of China is, in a manner, separated from all the rest of the world; situated in a fine and healthy climate, surrounded

rounded by the ocean to the east and south ; by a chain of high rocks and barren mountains on the north and west, along which runs the famous wall as an additional defence. But what, in my opinion, is a greater security to the empire against invaders than any thing yet mentioned, is the barren desert, stretching for several hundred miles westward, where none but Tartars can subsist, and which scarce any regular army can pass. The seas, to the south and east, are indeed open, and China might be attacked on that side ; but, I am persuaded, no prince will think it proper to disturb his own repose, and that of such a powerful people, inclined to peace with all their neighbours, and satisfied, as they seem, with their own dominions.

I know but one nation who could attempt the conquest of China with any probability of success, and that is Russia ; but the territories of that empire are so extensive in this quarter of the world, as to exceed even the bounds of ambition itself ; and

and the Russians seem to entertain no desire of extending them farther.

What part of China I saw is mostly plain, interspersed with hills and rising grounds. The whole is pleasant and well cultivated, producing wheat and other grain, together with abundance of cattle and poultry.

Besides the necessaries, the Chinese have also many of the superfluities of life, particularly fine fruits of various kinds, too tedious to mention. They have likewise mines of gold, silver, copper, lead, and iron. They set a greater value on silver, in proportion to gold, than the Europeans do; so that gold is exported to good advantage.

In China are many navigable rivers and canals, cut to great distances, for the convenience of water-carriage. The merchants are immensely rich by their inland and foreign trade, which they carry on to great extent with the Russians and Tartars, besides the vast sums of money they receive annually from the Europeans, in exchange

VOL. II. R for

for tea, China-ware, and other merchandise. The trade also to Japan, and the neighbouring islands, is very considerable. What is most remarkable in their payments is, that they receive only dollars, crown and half-crown pieces; undervaluing smaller coins, of equal weight and standard, though they melt all down directly into bars of different sizes.

Tea is universally used, at all times, and by persons of all ranks. Both the green and bohea grow on the same tree, or rather shrub, called by the Chinese tzay. The green tea is called tzin tzay, and the bohea ouy-tzay. When the leaves are gathered at the proper season, they are put into large kettles, and dried over a gentle fire, which makes them crumple up, and prevents their crumbling to dust; which they would infallibly do, without this precaution.

What is designed for bohea is mixed, in drying, with the juice of a certain plant, which gives it the colour and flavour, and qua-

qualifies that sharpness, which, in constant drinking, is hurtful to some tender constitutions. The cultivating, gathering, dressing, and packing, of this useful plant, must employ a great number of hands, and particularly of old and young people, who would be unfit for harder labour.

The high rates at which tea is sold in Europe are a little surprising, considering the prices in China. For, at Pekin, the price of the best tea, either green or bohea, is half an ounce of silver the Chinese pound, which is equal to what it would be at two shillings a pound in England. And, allowing the freight and duties to be high, yet the profits seem somewhat extravagant. I shall only add, on this subject, that the tea commonly sold at Pekin is preferable in quality to what is imported to Europe from Canton ; and that the Chinese drink it without sugar, though sugar is a produce of the country, and consequently very cheap.

Seve-

Several of the Chinese manufactures are brought to great perfection, especially that of weaving silk, damasks, and other stuffs, which are partly worn by the natives, and partly exported. Silks are the common dress of the better sort of people, of both sexes, and coarse cotton-cloth that of the lower class. They use almost no woollen cloths, because, they say, in their climate, they gather too much dust. They have great abundance of raw silk. They make no muslins, nor fine chints; neither are these much used.

The Chinese, it is well known, are excellent performers in several mechanic arts, particularly as potters, dyers, japanners, joiners, and paper-makers. In the article of paper-making they excel even the Europeans.

Their workmanship in metals is but clumsy; except only founding, at which they are very expert. The arts of statuary, sculpture, and painting, have made but small progress among them. They have
excel-

excellent water-colours of all sorts, but none in oil. The chief study of their painters seems to be landscape painting ; and I have seen some of their performances in this way very natural.

They have many quarries of fine marble, of different colours ; but not so much as a single statue is to be seen in the Emperor's garden.

The making of clocks and watches was lately introduced, under the protection of the present Emperor ; who, at his leisure hours, amuses himself with whatever is curious, either in art or nature.

The Chinese are a civilized and hospitable people, complaisant to strangers, and to one another ; very regular in their manners and behaviour, and respectful to their superiors ; but, above all, their regard for their parents, and decent treatment of their women of all ranks, ought to be imitated, and deserve great praise. These good qualities are a natural consequence of the sobriety,

briety, and uniformity of life, to which they have been long accustomed.

The general regularity and decency of manners among the Chinese, is obvious to all who see and observe them with the least attention. And, as they are singular in many things, beyond most other nations, they are so, likewise, in this point of polity, which I cannot omit taking notice of in my transient remarks.

It may easily be imagined, that, in so populous a city, there must be many idle persons of both sexes ; though, I believe, fewer than in most other cities of the world, even in those of much less extent than that of Pekin. In order to prevent all disorderly practices, as much as possible, the government have thought fit to permit, or connive at, certain places in the suburbs, for the reception and entertainment of prostitutes, who are maintained by the landlords of the houses in which they dwell, but not allowed to straggle abroad. I have been informed, that these ladies of
plea-

pleasure have all separate apartments, with the price of each lady, describing, at the same time, her beauties and qualities, written over the door of her apartment, in fair legible characters ; which price is paid directly by the gallant ; by which means, these affairs are conducted without noise in the houses, or disturbances in the neighbourhood. Noisy brawls are very seldom, hardly ever, known at Pekin. Those who are found offending in this way undergo very severe penalties. It is likewise to be observed, that these houses are calculated for the meaner sort of people only ; so that any person, who hath the least regard to his credit or reputation, carefully avoids being seen in them.

I must, however, take notice of one shocking and unnatural practice, which appears more extraordinary in a country so well regulated and governed as China ; I mean that of exposing so many new born infants in the streets. This, indeed, is only done by the poor, who have more wives than

than they can maintain. To prevent the death of these children, there are public hospitals appointed for their reception, and people sent out through the streets, every morning, to pick up, and carry thither, such children as they find exposed. The missionaries also send out people to take up such as have been neglected, who are carried to a private hospital, maintained at their charge, and educated in the Christian religion. And of such persons do the greatest part of the Chinese Christians consist.

I shall now make a few remarks upon the ladies, who have many good qualities besides their beauty. They are very cleanly and modest in their dress. Their eyes are black, and so little, that, when they laugh, you can scarce see them. Their hair is black as jet, and neatly tied up in a knot, on the crown of the head, adorned with artificial flowers of their own making, which are very becoming. The better sort, who are seldom exposed to the air,

have

have good complexions. Those who are inclined to the olive, take care to add a touch of white and red paint, which they apply very nicely.

The ladies of distinction are seldom permitted to stir abroad, except to visit their nearest relations ; and, on these occasions, they are always carried in close chairs, and attended by their servants. The women of all ranks stay pretty much at home. The smallness of their feet, which renders them unable to walk to any considerable distance, makes their confinement less disagreeable. As soon as a girl comes into the world, they bind her tender feet with tight bandages, which are renewed as occasion requires, to prevent their growing. This custom prevails universally, the Tartar ladies residing in China only excepted, who appear to have no inclination to conform to this fashion.

This fashion was introduced into China by a great Princess, who lived some ages ago. She was a Lady of extraordinary

VOL. II. S beauty

beauty and virtue, and has obtained the reputation of a saint ; but, it is reported, her feet resembled those of birds ; on which account she kept them always carefully wrapped up, and concealed even from the Emperor her husband. The ladies of the court followed her example, which, of course, soon became general. The Chinese women never pare their nails, but suffer them to grow to the full length. This proves no impediment in embroidery, and other needle-work, in which they are constantly employed. These they finish with extraordinary neatness, as fully appears from some specimens of them brought to Europe.

The Chinese deserve great praise for their patience in finishing completely every thing they undertake. And, what is still a greater recommendation, their labours are not the effect of whim or caprice, but calculated to serve some useful purpose. The public works about the city of Pekin are instances of these observations. The streets,
in

in particular, are the finest in the world. They are spacious, neat, and straight. The canals which supply the city with water have, at proper distances, commodious stone-bridges over them ; and these canals are not only built with free-stone on the sides, but the bottoms of them paved with broad cut-stones, in the neatest manner imaginable. There are but few springs of soft water in Pekin. And the water, in general, though a little brackish, is by no means unwholesome.

The Chinese are generally of a middle size, and slender make, but very active. They are honest, and observe the strictest honour and justice in their dealings. It must, however, be acknowledged, that not a few of them are much addicted to knavery, and well skilled in the arts of cheating. They have, indeed, found many Europeans as great proficients in that art as themselves. And, if you once cheat them, they are sure to retaliate on the first opportunity.

As

As to the religion of the Chinese, I cannot pretend to give a distinct account of it. According to the best information I could procure, they are divided into several sects, among which that of the Theists is the most rational and respectable. They worship one God, whom they call Tien, the Heaven or the highest Lord, and pay no religious homage to the images of their countrymen. This sect has subsisted for many ages longer than Christianity, and is still most in vogue; being embraced by the Emperor himself, and most of the grandees, and men of learning. The common people are generally idolaters. The few Jews and Mahometans residing here are supposed to have entered China about six or seven hundred years ago, in company with the western Tartars. There is a very inconsiderable sect, called Cross-worshippers. They worship the holy cross; but have lost all other marks of Christianity; which makes it probable the gospel was preached in this country before the arrival of the missionaries,

ries, but by whom is uncertain. The Christians at present are computed to amount to one hundred thousand, of both sexes. I have been told, the Chinese have also some Atheists among them.

I had several opportunities of talking with their physicians. They generally both prepare and administer their own prescriptions, and are very little acquainted with the medicinal system practised in Europe. As they have but few chymical preparations, their chief study is the virtues of plants, which they apply on all occasions, and often with success. They feel the patient's pulse for four or five minutes, and very seldom let blood, even in high fevers. They compare a fever to a boiling pot, and choose rather to take the fire from it than diminish the quantity of liquor it contains, which would only make it boil the faster. Bathing and cupping are much practiced; and they even apply fire, in some cases, particularly for pains in the joints, and gouty disorders. On these occasions,

casions, they apply a lighted match, composed of the downy substance that grows on mugwort to the part affected ; which making a scar, either entirely removes or considerably mitigates the pain.

I cannot but take notice, on this occasion, of a famous plant, called Gingsing, which grows in the province of Leotong. The root of this plant is so much esteemed for its physical virtues, that it is gathered by people appointed by the Emperor for this purpose only, and is valued at the rate of about twenty-five pounds Sterling the pound weight. It is so rare, that the Emperor sent two pounds of it only in a present to his Czarish Majesty. There are two sorts of it ; one looks as if candied, the other like small parsley roots, and has something of the same taste. They slice down or pound it ; and, after infusion and slight boiling, give it to the patient. I could never learn from their physicians what specific qualities this plant possessed, only that it was of universal use. I have heard

heard many stories of strange cures performed by it ; that persons seemingly dead have by its means, been restored to health. I believe, indeed, it may be a good restorative plant ; but, if it really has any extraordinary virtues, I could never discover them, tho' I have made many experiments on it at different times. I should imagine this rare plant might be cultivated, with success, in the country, where it grows naturally ; and it appears improbable the Chinese would neglect such a sovereign remedy.

The great men in China follow the example of the western Asiatics, in keeping eunuchs to attend them, who are their counsellors, and chief confidents, on all occasions. Their business is to take care of the women ; and, being in a manner detached from the world, they are much respected. Castrating is a trade in China ; and so skillful and dexterous are the performers, that few die under their hands. I knew a man who, being reduced to low circum-

circumstances, sold himself to be made a eunuch, after he was 30 years of age.

The language of the Chinese is composed chiefly of monosyllables, and seems to me easily acquired ; at least as much of it as is sufficient for conversation. The difficulty of learning their letters, or rather marks for words, cannot be so great as is commonly represented ; for you scarce meet a common hawker who cannot read and write what belongs to his calling. It requires, indeed, much labour, and considerable abilities, to acquire the character of a learned man in China,

I have mentioned above a few only of their manufactures. I cannot omit taking notice of their paper, which is made both of silk and cotton, and is remarkably clean and smooth. They had been in possession of this art for many ages before they had any intercourse with the Europeans, as appears from their records. Their sheets are made larger than any I ever saw in Europe ; and, though they generally write with

with hair pencils, I have seen Chinese paper that bore our pens and ink very well.

Their ink, called *touſh*, is well known to our painters and designers. I was told the chief ingredient in it is the burnt bones of animals. They have several sorts of it; but the best is very cheap, and is made up in pastes of various figures, stamped with characters or letters. It is generally put up in little flat boxes, sometimes double the value of the ink they contain.

I shall here insert a specimen of Chinese numbers, and a few capital words, with those of several other Asiatic nations.

Chinese Numbers.

- 1 Iga.
- 2 Langa.
- 3 Sanga.
- 4 Siga.
- 5 Uga.
- 6 Leoga.
- 7 Tziga.

VOL. II.

T

8 Paga.

- 8 Paga.
- 9 Tziuga.
- 10 Shiga.
- 11 Shiyyga.
- 12 Shierga.
- 13 Shisenga.
- 14 Shifga.
- 15 Shiuga.
- 16 Shileoga.
- 17 Shiziga.
- 18 Shispaga.
- 19 Shizuga.
- 20 Shielga.
- 30 Shinshiga.
- 40 Tzeziga.
- 50 Ushiga.
- 60 Leoshiga.
- 70 Tzishiga.
- 80 Pashiga.
- 90 Tzioshiga.
- 100 Ibay.
- 1000 Itzen.
- 10,000 Van.

A Specimen of English and Chinese Words.

God, Foy.

The heavens, Tien.

The earth, Tiye.

The sun, Shilo.

The moon, Jualang.

The stars, Tzising.

The devil, Kuy.

Water, Shuy.

Wind, Fung.

Rain, Eu.

Good, Cho.

Bad, Pu.

A good friend, Cho-pung-yu.

Farewell, Mansay lea.

Fire, Choa.

Bread, Bobon.

The

The Mantzur's Numbers.

- 1 Emu.
- 2 Dio.
- 3 Ilan.
- 4 Tuin.
- 5 Suindja,
- 6 Nynguin.
- 7 Naàdan.
- 8 Iaachun.
- 9 Une.
- 10 Ioan, &c.

The Mongall's Numbers, and some of their Words.

- 1 Neggea.
- 2 Choir.
- 3 Gurba.
- 4 Dirbu.
- 5 Tabu.
- 6 Zurga.
- 7 Dolo.

- 7 Dolo.
- 8 Nauma.
- 9 Jussu.
- 10 Arba.
- 11 Arba-neggea.
- 12 Arba-Choir.
- 13 Arba-gurba.
- 14 Arba dirbu.
- 15 Arba-tabu.
- 16 Arba-zurga.
- 17 Arba-dolo.
- 18 Arba-nauma.
- 19 Arba-jussu.
- 20 Choiry.
- 30 Gutshy.
- 40 Dutshy.
- 50 Taby.
- 60 Dirà.
- 70 Dala.
- 80 Naya.
- 90 Irea.
- 100 Dzo.
- 1000 Minga.
- 10,000 Tumea.

God,

God Burchan.

The heavens, Tengery.

The earth, Gadzar.

The sun, Narra.

The moon, Shara.

The stars, Odu.

The clouds, Ulea.

The Tangut's Numbers.

1 Dgi.

2 Neé.

3 Sum.

4 Che.

5 Gno.

6 Duk.

7 Dunn.

8 Dja.

9 Gu.

10 Dju-tamba, &c.

Numbers

Numbers of Indostan.

- 1 Eck.
- 2 Duy.
- 3 Tin.
- 4 Tzar.
- 5 Penge.
- 6 Tzo.
- 7 Tateé.
- 8 Aatsa.
- 9 Nouy.
- 10 Dafs, &c.

The people of Indostan have little or no correspondence with China, being separated from it by impassable mountains, and barren deserts. They call China by the name of Kitat, and the Emperor Amola-Chan.

The Indians call Russia Olt.

The first great Lama, or high Priest, near the borders of India, is called Beyngin-

gin-Bogdu ; and hath his residence at a place called Digerda.

The second is the Delay-Lama, residing at Lahaffar. The Indians call him Tamtzy-Kenna. From Digerda to Lahaffar is a month's journey on foot.

The third is the Kutuchtu, called by the Indians Tarranat, who resides at the Urga, not far from Selinginsky.

The present Great Mogul is called Sheyhalim Patisha. The Indian married priests are the Brachmans ; their monks are called Atheits, and their military men Resput.

The Indian and Tangut numbers, together with these few notes, I had from the Faquir, at Selinginsky ; who told me, that the greatest penance that could be imposed on any of their order, was a pilgrimage to visit these three high priests. Though I have hinted something concerning them, during my stay at Selinginsky, yet, as I shall have no opportunity in future to learn any thing more about those great men, I think

think it will not be unacceptable that I have inserted the foregoing short notes.

I had, from my early youth, a strong inclination to visit the eastern parts of the world ; and Providence afforded me an opportunity, far beyond my expectations, of gratifying my curiosity in the most ample manner. For never, perhaps, were those countries in a more flourishing condition than under the famous Emperors Kamhi and Peter the First ; and, perhaps, such another conjuncture of circumstances may not happen for several ages. I have now finished my account of the observations I made during my residence in China ; and, had we returned by the same route we went eastward, I should here conclude my Journal ; but, as our route was different, in many places, particularly in our passage by water from Selinginsky to Tobolsky, I shall proceed to make my remarks on such places and things only as I have hitherto had no opportunity of mentioning.

C H A P. XIII.

Our departure from Pekin, occurrences, &c. during our journey back towards Mosco.

MARCH 2d, we sent off our heavy baggage early in the morning ; and, about noon, left the fine city of Pekin, accompanied by several Chinese gentlemen, who were to return with Mr de Lange, whom his Czarish Majesty had appointed to remain as his agent at the court of Pekin. In the evening, we reached a large town, called Sangping-ju, where we lodged.

The 4th, Mr de Lange, and our friends, returned to the city, and we continued our journey.

journey. I have already mentioned most of the remarkable towns through which we passed ; and, as little happened on the road worth notice, I shall only observe, that we were entertained by the governors in the same hospitable manner, as before.

The 9th, we arrived at Kalgan, the last town of any note, and about three miles distant from the long wall. We staid here two days, in order to provide bread rice, and other provisions, for our journey over the Hungry Desert.

Next day, the governour waited on the ambassador, and invited him to see some Chinese troops perform their exercise. We accordingly walked into an adjacent field, where we found about four thousand infantry drawn up in six lines. All their guns had match-locks. The field-officers were on horseback, armed with bows and arrows ; but the subalterns on foot, having spears, longer or shorter, according to their rank. All the troops kept a profound silence,

lence, till the commanding-officer ordered the signal to be given for beginning the exercise, which was done by firing a small gun, mounted on the back of a camel. Upon this signal, they advanced, retreated, and performed their evolutions, according to the discipline of the country, in a very regular manner. After finishing this exercise, the whole corps at last divided itself into companies of fifty men each, and kneeling as close to one another as possible, continued in this posture for some minutes; they then rose, and running to their former stations, quickly formed themselves, without the least confusion. From what I observed of their motions, I am of opinion they might easily be taught any exercise whatever.

The 12th, we arrived at the gates of the main wall, which we found open. Here the commander, and several officers of the guard, met us, and invited the ambassador to walk into the guard-room, and drink a dish of tea. After this repast, we proceeded

a

a few miles farther ; but, as it was too late to get over the mountains that night, we took up our quarters at a village where we had lodged in going to Pekin.

Next morning early we left the village, and travelled along the banks of a torrent, which runs through a narrow valley between the mountains. For convenience of the road, we crossed this rivulet several times. The weather was very fine and warm ; and the face of this country extremely pleasant. On the sides of the rocks we saw scattered many neat cottages, surrounded with little gardens, and crooked trees, which the Chinese have naturally designed on some of their japanned and China-ware. After travelling about a dozen of English miles, we ascended the rocks by a winding-path, formed by art ; and, as soon as we reached the summit, we entered on the plain ; for there is little or no descent into the desert from the opening between the rocks. I observed, that all the rivers which spring from the mountains

tains on the north and west of China, run towards the south and south-east ; and those that rise westward of the desert, direct their courses through Siberia, to the north and north-west ; which makes it evident, that the rocks and desert are higher than any places either in China or Siberia. We now felt a very sensible change in the air. In the morning, we left a warm climate ; but here we found the desert all covered with snow. We travelled about five miles farther, and then pitched our tents on the banks of a small rivulet.

The ambassador, considering that to travel along with the heavy baggage would render the journey, at this season, tedious and disagreeable, resolved to leave it under a proper guard, and proceed, by the shortest and speediest way, to Selinginsky. Lo-my, our former conductor, being appointed in the same station, was consulted on this occasion, and agreed to make one of our company ; while the Chinese guard, commanded by another officer, took care of

of the baggage. Our party consisted of the ambassador, Mr Krestitz, myself, and four servants. We packed up beds, and a few necessaries, and set out directly.

We rode very hard all the 14th; and, in the evening, took up our lodgings in a Mongolian tent, along with the family. The outside of the tent was hung round with several pieces of horse-flesh, on which our landlord and his wife supped, and invited us to share their repast; but as we had provisions of our own, we desired to be excused. The disagreeable smell of this supper made us resolve to sleep in the fields for the future till we came to Selenginsky; for, altho' the nights were somewhat cold and frosty, the weather was dry and pleasant.

Next day, having got fresh horses, we proceeded on our journey. Nothing of moment occurred till the third of April, when we arrived, before noon, on the banks of the river Tola. It was now nineteen days since we left our baggage, during which

which time we rode very hard, changing horses generally three or four times a-day ; and this was the first running water we had seen. I cannot help taking notice of the pleasure that appeared in every face at the sight of this stream ; and I need not mention how chearfully we regaled ourselves on this occasion. For my own part, I thought the most delicious wines of Ispahan and Thiras not worthy to be compared to this simple element, so little prized by those who enjoy it in plenty. Our bread was all spent some days before ; however, we had still some mutton, with which we had been supplied, from time to time, during our journey. All this time we observed no road ; but kept mostly about one, or sometimes two days journey to the northward of our former route. The greatest danger attending this way of travelling, arose from the arrows which the Mongalls had set in strong bent bows, covered with sand, for killing antelopes. One of our horses happened to tread on one of these bows ;

bows ; the arrow immediately flew out, and, most fortunately, hit the stirrup iron, otherwise the horse or rider would have been killed upon the spot. We had, indeed, guides to conduct us from place to place ; but they were unacquainted with any snares laid beyond their own bounds.

This day, about noon, some Mongalls unluckily set fire to the long grass before us, which, by means of a strong wind, soon spread to a great distance. We immediately retired to the top of a neighbouring hill, (for now the grounds begin to rise, and the soil is much better near the river), and, setting fire to the grass around us, travelled near a mile in a dismal cloud of smoke. Some of our people who were behind us, and unprovided with flints, were put to hard shifts, having their hair and cloaths all singed. We forded the Tola in pretty deep water, and continued our journey through pleasant valleys, between gently rising hills, some of whose

tops were adorned with woods, which looked as if planted by art.

Nothing worth mentioning occurred till the morning of the 6th of April, when we reached the river Iro, but found the ford so frozen that we could not ride it. As our provisions were now nearly all spent, and we were quite tired of lying in the open air, we wanted to pass the river at any rate. After long search for a ford, we at last found a place clear of ice, but excessively deep. We immediately stripped off our cloaths, mounted our horses, and swam across the river, which was at this place about forty yards broad. After getting all safe to the other side, we lighted a great fire of sticks to dry and warm ourselves, and then set forward to the rivulet Saratzyn, the boundary between the Russian and Chinese territories, which we reached in the evening. From the Tola to this place we had seen no inhabitants, but here we found a few Mongalls, subjects

jects of Russia, who hospitably entertained us with such fare as the place afforded.

The 7th, we set out early, and at noon came to a zimovey, (a single house built for the accommodation of travellers), inhabited by a Russian, who entertained us with good bread, and other homely fare. After a short stay we mounted, and at night came to another of these houses, belonging to the commissary, Mr Stepnikoff, of the caravan, where we were well provided with necessary accommodations.

Next day, we arrived in good health at the town of Selinginsky; and all of us had good reason to return our most grateful thanks to the Almighty Disposer of all events, who conducted us safe through so many dangers, without the least accident befalling any of our company.

The 12th, the ambassador having made the conductor an handsome present, and thanked him for his trouble and obliging behaviour, that gentleman took leave, and returned to China.

Next

Next day, we set out on horseback for Irkutsky. We lodged every night in villages till the 16th, when we arrived at the Pössolsky monastery, situated on the south shore of the Baykall Sea, as formerly observed. The superior received and entertained us with great hospitality, and furnished us horses and sledges for passing the sea upon the ice, which we found perfectly firm, though the people on the south shore were plowing and sowing their oats.

April 7th, having taken leave of the monks, we placed ourselves in the sledges, and drove along a path-way upon the ice. We found several large gaps in the ice, which run for many miles across the sea, and are generally from two to five or six feet wide. These we passed on long boards, which we were obliged to carry along with us for that purpose. They are made, I conjecture, by the air, which being pent up under the ice, bursts out through
 artures. I observed also a number
 of holes, which are made by the
 seals,

seals, who come thither for breath and to bask themselves in the sun. These circumstances render travelling on the ice extremely dangerous, except in day-light, and clear weather. Towards evening, the ambassador and myself, being provided with light sledges, put on at a great rate, in order to get in with the shore before night. This we, happily accomplished, and arrived at a fisherman's house, near the mouth of the Angara; where we found a warm room, and a boar's head, hot from the oven, for supper. But, a little before sunset, a thick fog arose to the westward, accompanied with terrible thick drifts of snow, which soon covered the road upon the ice, and filled every gap and hole. Our poor people, who had not yet reached the land, were caught in the storm, forced to stop short, and lie on the ice all night, with their horses and carriages. We had, indeed, despatched the fishermen to conduct them to the shore; but the snow continuing to fall very thick, they returned without

out being able to find them. This disappointment created in us some uneasiness ; but there was no remedy. We were obliged to wait patiently till the morning, when they arrived in a very distressed condition, half dead with cold and wet. However, by proper accommodation, and some warm liquor, they soon recovered. Next day, we sent back the fledgees to the monastery ; and, after our people had refreshed themselves with a little sleep, about noon, we mounted, and proceeded about four miles, to the small chapel of St Nicolas. We had now passed all the cataracts, and there was no ice to be seen in the river ; we immediately, therefore, got boats and rowed down the stream. In the evening, we put ashore at a small village, where we lodged, and were plentifully provided with variety of excellent fresh fish for supper.

The 19th, in the morning, we went again on board ; and, about two in the afternoon, landed at Irkutsky, and dined with our old friend, Mr Rakitin, the commandant,

dant, who met us on the river, about two hours before we landed. Some days after our arrival, Mr Ismayloff was seized with a fever, which went off in a few days, without any bad consequences. We waited here for our baggage, which did not arrive till the second of July. During this time, little remarkable happened. We diverted ourselves with hunting and fishing ; and, though we lived much at our ease, the time grew tedious, and we wanted much to be gone.

About the 10th of May, the ice began to break up in the Baykall, and continued floating down the river, for some days, in great shoals. The weather was very hot before the ice came down ; but when this happened, an alteration was sensibly felt ; for the air about the sides of the river became extremely chilly. A small part only of the ice, about the mouth of the Angara, floats down that river ; the rest, being scattered along the shore by the winds, is melted down as the season advances. This is accounted

accounted the most unhealthy season of the year; as people, notwithstanding all possible precautions, are very apt to catch cold. I have already made some remarks on Irkutsky, and the country adjacent; I shall therefore only add, that, in summer, which is very hot, the country is much pestered with swarms of muskitoes and large gnats, which are so troublesome, that those who have occasion to go into the fields are obliged to wear nets of horse hair, to defend their faces from the attacks of these insects.

July 2d, the barks arrived safe from Selinginsky, with our people and baggage. They told us many dismal stories of the hardships they had suffered in passing the desert; but, on comparing notes, the difference was not great between their misfortunes and our own.

After our people had rested a few days, and necessaries were procured for the voyage, on the 5th they shoved off, and rowed down the Angara. The ambassador, myself,

self, and two servants, staid behind, in order to proceed in a small shallop, which had a little cabin in the stern, and was rowed with ten oars. The commandant caused it to be built for our use ; and as it sailed quickly, and was rowed by our own men, we could pursue the voyage at pleasure, without being confined to attend upon the heavy barks.

The 7th, we went on board, accompanied by the commandant, and several other gentlemen, and fell down the river to a monastery in the neighbourhood, where we were invited to dine with the superior, who made us a grand entertainment of excellent fish, and furnished us besides with store of provisions for our voyage. In the evening we took leave of the abbot, and the rest of our friends ; and, being assisted by a rapid current, went down the river at a great rate. At night we put ashore, and took up our quarters in a village.

As little of importance occurred during the progress of our voyage, I need not be

VOL. II. Y particular

particular in describing it. The banks of the river on both sides are pleasant and fruitful, and beautifully diversified with tall woods, villages, and corn-fields ; and we found every where great abundance of fish. But what renders this fine country extremely disagreeable, is the swarms of muskitoes with which every part of it is infested. The gnats, about Ilimsky in particular, are of a much larger size, and are reckoned more venomous than any in Siberia ; but have this good quality, that they never enter houses as the muskitoes do. The Tonguses, when they are angry with any person, wish that an Ilimsky gnat may sting him. This may appear but a slight punishment, but it marks the character of these simple people.

The 9th, we sailed the whole day, with a fair wind and strong current, and, in the evening, overtook our barks. Next day, we came to a great cataract, called Padun from the steepness of the fall. This fall we passed safely, as there was water enough upon

upon the rocks for our vessels. The next cataract we met with, which, from its great length, is called Dolgoy, was reckoned more dangerous ; for, besides the length and deepness of the passage, it was extremely crooked, winding from one side to another by turns, among rocks and great stones. In passing these cataracts, the pilot sits upon the bow of the vessel, and makes signs with his cap to the people at the helm which way to steer ; for the waters, dashing against the rocks and great stones, make such an hideous noise, that not a single articulate sound can be heard. The oars, besides, must be plied very hard, in order to prevent the vessel from running to either side ; for, if once she touches the rocks, all the goods must infallibly be lost, and, perhaps, the men's lives ; of which disasters there are many examples.

The 11th, we passed another cataract, called Shamansky, which is reckoned the most dangerous of them all, the channel being very narrow and crooked. Some of

our

our company chose to walk along the banks, rather than run the risk of passing by water: But they repented of their resolution; for they were obliged to scramble over rocks, and through thickets, where they saw many vipers, and other venomous creatures. We stopped, at the bottom of the fall, to take them on board, and refresh our rowers. As the ambassador staid on board, I remained along with him.

Besides these three great cataracts, there are many lesser ones, called by the country people Shivers; but, as the passing them is attended with little danger, I make no mention of them.

It is surprising that loaded vessels should pass these falls against the stream. They are commonly warped up by means of strong anchors and cables, and on the goodness of the tackle all depends; for should it chance to give way, all is lost. This is a laborious piece of work, though not very costly in these parts; and the navigation of this river is attended with no other

other inconvenience, except that of striking against stumps of trees hid under the water.

The 14th, we left the Angara, and entered the Tongusky, a mighty stream, formed by the Angara, and another small river called Elim. The Tongusky points to the northward of the west, and is well stored with excellent fish.

We went ashore this day at a little village called Seeza, situated on a high bank of the Tongusky. Here we were met by our old acquaintance General Kanifer, who came from Elimsky to see Mr Ismayloff. I took notice before of having seen this gentleman in our journey eastward. We despatched our barks, and staid with him two days. After which we proceeded down the river, and he returned to Elimsky by water, attended only by his own servants; for, though he was a prisoner, he had liberty to go where he pleased, as an escape was impracticable in such remote parts.

The

The 17th, we set sail with an easterly wind, and a strong current, which carried us along with great velocity. We passed many villages, and some Tongusian huts, upon the banks, to which we made several visits. We found the men generally employed in fishing in their little canoes, and the women in looking after their children and reindeer, which, at this season, lie near the huts, because the gnats will not suffer them to stay in the woods. In order to banish these troublesome vermin, they light fires all around the place of their abode; and the insects, unable to endure the smoke, immediately fly off. For the same reason, no person stirs abroad without carrying in his hand a small earthen pot filled with smoking coals. The canoes skim upon the water very swiftly, but the least touch of an unskilful hand oversets them. The Tonguse places himself on his knees, in the middle of his boat, keeping it as even balanced as possible; and, with a little paddle only, ventures to cross the greatest

elt rivers. I have seen them haul to the side a sturgeon of great weight. When a Tongue wants to go from one river to another, across a neck of land, he takes his boat upon his back, and carries it whither he pleases.

The 19th, we were overtaken with such a heavy shower of rain, in the middle of the river, that, before we could reach the bank, our boat was half full, notwithstanding all hands were employed in rowing, or scooping out the water. However, after much labour and difficulty, we at last got to land, wet to the skin ; and, what was much worse, all our bedding thoroughly drenched in water. After we had hauled up our boat, and fastened it to a tree, we went into a thick wood, and kindled a great fire to warm and dry ourselves ; but, the rain being abated, a violent storm of wind arose from north-west, so that we were forced to remain all night in this dismal place, at a great distance from any village.

village. In this condition we lay, round a great fire, till next morning.

The 20th, early in the morning, we left the woods, went on board our boat, and proceeded down the river. About noon, we reached a village, on the right hand, where we halted some hours to refresh ourselves, and dry our cloths. In the evening, we pushed off again, and came to another village, where we lodged. On this river are great numbers of water-fowl, of different kinds, which come hither to hatch their young in summer, and fly off, to the south, at the approach of winter. I observed also a large fowl, of a grayish colour, about the size of a kite ; after it has hovered for some time upon the wing, if it spies a fish in the water, it stoops suddenly, strikes its prey, and even dives below water to catch it ; after which, it flies to the bank, and eats it.

There are also wild goats upon the rocks along the shore. They are very large animals, with long and thick horns. Their shaggy

shaggy coat is brownish, having a black ridge down the back. They have long beards, like common goats, but are twice as large. It is surprising to see them leap from one rock to another. They go in pairs about this season ; but, towards winter, retire in herds to the south. On the hills, and in the woods, are all sorts of game, and wild beasts, natural to the climate.

The 21st, we overtook our barks, and kept in company with them till night, when we arrived at a village, where we lodged. In this river are many islands, some of which are very large, and others surrounded with high rocky shores. Most of them are covered with tall birch and pine-trees, fit for masts to the largest ships, and form a beautiful prospect. We had no need to go ashore in order to seek sport, as we found plenty of wild-ducks, and other water-fowl, wherever we came. As to fresh fish, we had more of them, in every village, than we could consume.

The two following days we continued our voyage, without meeting with any thing worth mentioning, and, on the morning of the 24th, arrived at the conflux of the rivers Yenisey and Tongusky, where the latter loses its name, and, both joined, retain the name of Yenisey. The Yenisey falls into the Tongusky from the south, and its course is then turned northward by the current of the other, which, in my opinion, is the larger of the two. It is observed, that the Yenisey does not afford such plenty of fish, nor so good of their kinds, as the other rivers of this country. These two rivers joined form a mighty stream, among the greatest in the world. I think it larger than the Volga at Astrachan. It continues its course to the northwest, daily augmented by other considerable rivers, till it falls into the Icy Sea.

In the evening, we arrived at the town of Yeniseysky, where we were met by our friend Mr Becklimishoff, the commandant, who conducted us first to our lodgings, and then

then to his own house to supper. Our barks also arriving in the evening, the whole company met again at this place, not a little happy at having safely passed the water-falls, and escaped the dangers to which we had already been exposed, tho' we were still above a thousand leagues from the end of our journey.

As we had no time to lose, our baggage was landed next day, and the barks discharged. The packing the baggage for land-carriage took up two days; after which it was transported to a place called Makofsky, on the river Keat, where it was again put on board other barks, which lay ready for that purpose. The road lies to the westward, mostly through thick and dark woods; in dry weather it is tolerably good; but, in heavy autumnal rains, scarce passable. We staid at Yeniseyfsky, through the persuasion of our hospitable landlord, the commandant, till we heard all was ready at Makofsky.

Ha-

Having formerly mentioned the pleasant situation of Yeniseysky, and the fertility of the soil about it, I shall only add, that the harvest at this place was already far advanced, the barley being all reaped, and the people at work in cutting their oats. This seems very early, in a climate so far to the north, and must proceed from the heat of the summer, and the soil being fertilized by the nitrous particles of the snow, which lies so long upon the ground.

August 2d, we left Yeniseysky on horseback, accompanied by the commandant, who staid with us all night, at a village about ten miles from town. Next morning, we took leave of our friend, and proceeded to Makofsky, where we arrived in the evening, and found the barks ready waiting for us.

The 4th, early in the morning, we went on board, and, pushing off from the shore, rowed down the river Keat. The water being shallow, we made but little way the first day; but, as we advanced, it increased daily,

daily, by rivers and brooks from both sides. Before we left Makofsky, we laid in provisions for three weeks, in which time we computed we would enter the Oby ; for, during this long navigation, there is not a single house nor village to be seen, except one religious house, possessed by three or four monks, resembling more an hermitage than a monastery.

The Keat is really a most dismal river. It is not above the flight of an arrow broad, and so overshadowed with tall trees, that you can scarce see the sun. The banks are a perfect wilderness, and so entangled with bushes, that no creature can pass along them but wild beasts ; with which these woods greatly abound. Near the edge of the river, we found great quantities of black currants upon the bushes, the largest and best I ever saw. I was told the bears feed much on this fruit.

The river Keat takes its rise from a lake at a small distance from the Yenisey ; and, were a canal cut between them, which might

might easily be done, there would be a passage by water from Verehaturia to the borders of China. But his Czarish Majesty was at this time employed in works of the same nature, of much greater importance to his country.

The Keat runs in a crooked channel, pointing, in general, to the west. The bottom is ouzy, and sometimes sandy. The barks, at first, run often a-ground on the sand-banks, and the people were obliged to get into the water, and heave them off, by main force, with levers and setting poles ; besides these little inconveniences, we were molested with gnats and musquitoes, in this confined place, more than we had formerly been in any part of our journey. They were not, indeed, so numerous as they had been in the heat of summer; for the nights began to be cold, and the wind northerly. However, no wind could reach us in this close place ; and I even wished myself in the desert again, where I might breathe the fresh air. In short, the appear-

appearance of this place put me in mind of the descriptions given by the Poets of the river Styx.

During our tedious voyage down the dark Keat, our only diversion and exercise was shooting wild-ducks. One day, Mr Hmayloff and myself went down the river, in a small canoe, rowed by two soldiers, at some distance before the barks. We met with a large flock of ducks, which swam up a narrow creek, in order to avoid us. We sailed a little way after them ; and, in the mean time, our barks passed us, and continued before us till night, still imagining they had not overtaken us. This day's sport cost us dear ; for, our rowers being quite fatigued, we were obliged to relieve them, and row in our turns, till at last we came up with the barks, both hungry and tired. To make some amends, we had a good dish of wild-ducks for supper.

The 20th, we met with two Ostiacks in their canoes, who had come from the river Oby, to catch fish, and kill ducks, and had their

their fishing tackle and bows and arrows along with them. We were glad to see any human creature. We called them on board, and they willingly staid with us till we entered the Oby, and supplied us with plenty of fish and wild-fowl. These were the first of the tribe of the Ostreaks I had seen. I shall give some account of them when I describe our voyage down that river, on the banks of which they have their habitations.

I formerly mentioned the great abundance of black currants growing on the banks of the Keat. We found them an excellent and wholesome fruit; many of our people eat great quantities of them without the least bad effect.

After a tedious voyage, with little variety, we arrived on the 28th at a village called Ketskoy, a few miles distant from the Oby. After procuring, at this place, what necessaries we wanted, and refreshing ourselves a few hours, we continued our voyage, making what way we possibly could,
for

for fear of being frozen up, near some desert place on the Oby, before we came to Tobolsky, where we intended to land. We had no rain all the time we were upon the Keat; which was a lucky circumstance, as our oars were upon deck. Had our barks drawn only about eighteen inches water, as was intended, we should not have been above fourteen days on this river, and thereby saved much time and labour; but, coming from China, every person in the retinue had a little, which overloaded the vessels, and retarded their progress. The next day, we entered the famous river Oby, which, from its breadth and depth of water, appears at least equal to the Volga or Yenisey, and could carry ships of considerable burden.

The 30th, we reached the first town upon the Oby, called Narim, situated on the north bank, about a gun-shot from the river, and a few miles from the mouth of the Keat. It commands a fine prospect, up and down the river, and of the woods

VOL. II. A a to

to the south. Near the town, are a few corn-fields, and garden-grounds, abounding with greens and roots. This place has a small fortress, governed by a commandant. The inhabitants are generally dealers in furs, which they buy from the Ostiacks ; and either carry them themselves to the borders of China, where they are exchanged for the commodities of that nation, or dispose of them to merchants going thither.

The 31st, we dined with the commandant, and spent the rest of the day in laying in a stock of provisions. We found, at this place, plenty of fine fish, particularly sterlet, sturgeon, and mucksoon, and many more, too tedious to mention. The last is peculiar to the Oby and Irtish.

Here I met with Mr Borlutt, a native of Flanders, who had been a Major in the Swedish service, and sent to this place a prisoner of war. He was a very ingenious gentleman, and had a particular turn for mechanics. The commandant treated him

him more like a friend than a prisoner ; which, indeed, was the case of most of those unfortunate gentlemen whom the fate of war had sent to this country. His Czarish Majesty, well considering their circumstances, sent them to a plentiful country, where they could live at their ease, till peace was restored.

September 1st, having provided ourselves with necessaries, and got new rowers, our former ones returning to Yeniseysky, from whence they came, in the evening we went again on board, and, putting off in fine calm weather, rowed down the Oby at a great rate ; our course being much favoured by the rapidity of the current. We passed several villages, and a little monastery called Troytza. The banks to the north are pretty high, but to the south flat ; by which means, on the melting of the snow in the spring, they are overflowed to a great extent. The river runs towards to the north-west, with little variation. We continued our voyage night and

and day, except in great darkness, or a gale of contrary wind, when we were obliged to lie by in some creek.

The Ostiacks I mentioned above differ from all the other tribes of natives in Siberia, both in complexion and language. Many of them are fair, resembling the people of Finland ; and they have many Finnish words in their language. Their manner of life is nearly the same with that of the Tonguse, who border with them to the eastward. In summer, they live in the woods, in huts covered with birchen bark. In winter, they dig pits, across which they lay stakes, above them spread earth to keep them warm. They have a fire in the middle, and a hole in the roof to let out the smoke. During this season they live chiefly on fish, dried and smoked, wild-fowl, or what else they catch in hunting. Many of them are stout fellows, fit for any service. Two of them, with their bows and arrows, a short spear, and a little dog, will attack the greatest bear. They are

dex-

dexterous archers, and fishermen. We had always a number of them in canoes round our barks, who supplied us with plenty of fish and wild-fowl, of various sorts, at an easy rate. Give them only a little tobacco, and a dram of brandy, and they ask no more, not knowing the use of money.

The Ostreaks, though a savage people in their manner of life, are far from being barbarous ; for a single Russian will travel about all their abodes, in order to purchase furs, without fear of any violence. They are also remarkable for their honesty ; and the small tribute of furs, which they pay annually to his Czarish Majesty, they bring punctually to the place appointed.

In summer, they wear nothing but coats and short drawers, made of fish-skins, dressed after their fashion ; but, in winter, are clothed with skins of deer, and other wild beasts.

They have no cattle except rain-deer which supply their children with milk ; and

and are, besides, of great service to them on many accounts.

As to their religion, they are ignorant heathens, like the rest of the natives of Siberia. They have many both male and female shamans, who are in great esteem among them. These shamans have many small images, or rather blocks of wood, rudely cut with a knife or hatchet, representing a human figure, dressed up in rags of various colours, by which they pretend to foretel future events, such as the good or bad luck of those that go a-hunting. But these are no better than others of the same species, already mentioned, who impose on the ignorance or credulity of their neighbours.

From what I have now and formerly said concerning these poor savage tribes, it will appear that they are involved in the most profound ignorance. Their manners are so rude, and minds uncultivated, that many of them seem stupid, and altogether unmindful of any thing beyond their present employment. I have, however, met with

with men of reflection among them, who agreed with the rest of mankind, in acknowledging one great Almighty Creator of this world, and of every thing else.

The Archbishop of Tobolsky has of late baptised many of the Ostreaks, and other natives, in a tour he made through Siberia with that view ; and it is to be hoped his successors will follow his laudable example.

C H A P.

C H A P. XIV.

*Our arrival at the town of Surgute,
our journey thence to Mosco, some
account of the creature called mam-
mon, &c.*

AFTER a voyage of ten days from the town of Narim, during which little remarkable happened, we arrived, on the 11th of September, at another town, called Surgute, situated on the north bank of the Oby, and defended by a small fort. The inhabitants, like the people of Narim, are mostly traders in furs. The adjacent country, on both sides of the river, is overgrown with dark and tall woods, where

there

there is no cultivated ground, except a few gardens. Bread is got at a small charge, by water-carriage, from Tobolsky, and other places on the river Irtish.

In the banks of the Oby, about this place, are found great quantities of that kind of ivory called, in this country, mammon's horn. Some of it also is found on the banks of the Volga. Mammon's horn resembles, in shape and size, the teeth of a large elephant. The vulgar really imagine mammon to be a creature living in marshes, and under ground, and entertain many strange notions concerning it. The Tartars tell many fables of its having been seen alive. But to me it appears that this horn is the tooth of a large elephant. When, indeed, or how these teeth came so far to the northward, where no elephants can at present subsist during the winter season, is what I am unable to determine. They are commonly found in the banks of rivers which have been washed by floods. The commandant of this place had his

entry ornamented with several very large ones, and made me a present of one of them.

I have been told by Tartars in the Baraba, that they have seen this creature, called Mammon, at the dawn of day, near lakes and rivers ; but that, on discovering them, the mammon immediately tumbles into the water, and never appears in the day-time. They say it is about the size of a large elephant, with a monstrous large head and horns, with which he makes his way in marshy places, and under ground, where he conceals himself till night. I only mention these things as the reports of a superstitious and ignorant people.

I have observed, in most of the towns we passed, between Tobolsky and Yenesiesky, many of these mammons horns, so called by the natives ; some of them very entire and fresh, like the best ivory, in every circumstance, excepting only the colour, which was of a yellowish hue ; others of them mouldered away at the ends, and,

when

when fawn asunder, prettily clouded. The people make snuff-boxes, combs, and divers sorts of turnery ware, of them.

They are found in the banks of all the great rivers in Siberia, westward of Len-cousky, when the floods have washed down the banks, by the melting of the snow in the spring. I have seen of them weighing above one hundred pounds English. (I brought a large tooth, or mammon's horn, with me to England, and presented it to my worthy friend Sir Hans Sloane, who gave it a place in his celebrated museum ; and was of opinion also that it was the tooth of an elephant. This tooth was found in the river Oby, at a place called Surgute).

The 12th, after we had been supplied with a fresh stock of provisions, and fresh rowers, we proceeded towards the next stage, called Samarofsky-Yamm, near the conflux of the Oby and Irtish. The wind being contrary, we made but slow progress. The near approach of winter, which usually

ally begins about the first of October, made us hasten forward as fast as possible.

Next day, the wind being easterly, we hoisted our sails, and run along at a great rate; and, the 14th, arrived at a small village on the north shore. The south bank still continued low and flat. At this village we saw great quantities of wild geese, picked, and smoked, and hung in shades, for winter provisions. We had some of them dressed; but I cannot much praise them for agreeable food. The people of this place catch vast numbers of them in day-nets, more on account of the down and feathers, than of their flesh, which is but of small value. We let our barks proceed, and detained a boat to follow them, as soon as we had seen the method of catching the wild geese. The sportsman conducted us into a spacious open plain, encompassed with wood and water. Here he had his large nets, with wide meshes spread, and a small hut, made of green branches, to conceal himself. Upon the grass

grafe were scattered about a score of geese-skins stuffed, some of them standing, others sitting, in natural postures. As soon as he sees a flock flying over his head, he calls, with a bit of birchen bark in his mouth, exactly like the wild geese. On hearing the call, they take a turn round, and then alight among the stuffed skins ; which being perceived by the sportsman, he immediately draws a string, and claps the nets over the whole flock, or as many of them as are within their reach. The geese always alight and rise with their heads to the windward ; to prevent, therefore, such as escape the day-net from flying off, he has a deep long net, placed on tall slender poles, to windward, which entangles great numbers in their rising. I am persuaded this method might easily be practised, in other parts of the world, to greater advantage ; though, I believe, there are no where such quantities of water-fowl, especially geese of different kinds, as in these northern climates, where, free from annoyance,

noyance, they bring forth their young among woods and lakes, and, at the approach of winter, fly off to the Caspian Sea, and other southern regions.

There is here one species of geese, called kazarky, of a size less than the common wild goose, having beautiful scarlet spots about the head, and some feathers of the same colour in its wings. Of this sort I saw great flocks about the Caspian Sea in winter. Besides these, there are numbers of swans, and all sorts of water-fowl, natural to the climate.

The woods are stored with game, and various sorts of wild-fowl, particularly the coc-limoge, the heath-cock, and several others too tedious to mention. The manner in which the coc-limoge is caught by the Osseacks is somewhat curious.

They make a paling, about four or five feet high, running from any wood, along a sandy bank, to the edge of the river, having the stakes set so close, that the fowls cannot pass between them. In this paling they

they leave openings, at certain distances, large enough to afford a passage for these birds ; and, rather than take the wing, the cock will seek a passage from one end of the hedge to the other. In these openings are set springs, on bent branches, which, as soon as touched, fly up, and catch the fowl, either by the neck or feet. The Osteacks brought us these, and other wild-fowl, in great plenty.

The 15th, in fine weather, we continued our voyage, using our sails or oars, by turns, as circumstances obliged us. Little material happened till the 19th, in the evening, when we left the Oby, and entered the river Irtish ; and, night coming on, we put ashore, where we staid till next morning. On entering the Irtish, we had a strong current against our course, which had been down the stream, in all the different rivers, from Selinginsky to this place.

Before I proceed farther, I shall take a view of the famous Oby. It is one of the largest rivers in the world, and runs as long

a course as any in Siberia, or perhaps in any other quarter of the globe. It rises in the desert, several hundred miles southward of the Baraba ; and is daily augmented, by many streams of different names, till it reaches a place called Belogarsky, where it takes the name of Oby, at the conflux of two large rivers, the Alley and the Tzaritt. These rivers joined, form the Oby. The Oby signifies *both* in the Russian language. But I am of opinion this river had that name long before Siberia was known to the Russians, as the natives still give it that name.

In going eastward, we passed the Oby upon the ice, at a place called Tzausky Ostrogue, where it made no great appearance, in comparison of what it does after receiving the rivers Tom, Tzulim, Keat, Irtish, and many others, when, indeed, it may be reckoned in the number of the largest rivers in the world. It points generally to the north, with various windings, till it meets the Keat, when it turns to

to the north-west ; and runs in that direction many miles, till, meeting with the Irtysh, it turns short, in a rapid current, towards the pole, swallowing up many rivers and brooks in its course, and at last, it discharges itself into the Northern Ocean, at a great bay called Obskaya-Guba, or the Lips of the Oby.

Few rivers in the world contain greater plenty and variety of fish than the Oby. The banks to the south produce woods in abundance, interspersed with corn-fields, and good pasture. I have been informed, that in these parts are rich mines of copper and iron, and even silver.

At the conflux of the Oby and Irtysh are several large islands, and, farther north, several villages ; but only one town of any note, called Bergosa, situated on the left hand.

I may here observe, that geographers generally agree, that a line drawn from the place where the river Tanais, now called Don, discharges itself into the sea of Azof,

VOL. II. C c or

or the Black Sea, to the mouth of the Oby, is the proper boundary betwixt Europe and Asia.

The 20th, early in the morning, we shoved off from the shore, and made the best of our way up the Irtish. In the evening, we reached Samariofsky-Yamm, where we lodged this night.

Next day, having taken on board fresh labourers, and the wind being northerly, and very cold, we put off in haste, hoisted sail, and went along at a great rate. The wind continuing from this point, was a certain sign that winter was at no great distance, and that we might soon expect to be met by shoals of floating ice.

The 22d, the north wind still continued very strong, to our great joy : For, altho' there are many villages on the Irtish, we dreaded the being frozen up near some desert place.

Next day, there fell a little snow, which softened the coldness of the air ; but, at the same time, the wind unfortunately
chopped

chopped about to the westward, and retarded our progress.

The 24th, we continued our voyage; and, next day, the wind again becoming northerly, we used our sails all that day and night. We proceeded, without any thing material happening, till the 29th, when we reached Demiansky, a town standing on the eastern bank.

Next day, we set out immediately, after taking in fresh rowers. The fields were now covered with snow, and the frost so strong, that the ice began to float in the river, and we expected every day to be frozen up.

These signs of approaching winter influenced Mr Ismayloff to leave the barks, to follow as should be possible for them, while himself made the best of his way to Tobolsky, in a small boat. Accordingly, carrying me along with him, we immediately set out towards that place.

October the first, we continued rowing along near the banks, and took in fresh

rowers

rowers as occasion offered. The river was full of great shoals of ice, the frost strong, and much snow. In the evening, we arrived, cold and wet, at a small village, where we lodged in a warm room, about fifty verst from Tobolsky.

Next day, the river was so covered with ice that we could proceed no farther in our boats ; but luckily, in the night, there fell snow enough for sledges. We soon got horses, and such open sledges as the place afforded, and, in the evening, arrived safe at the city of Tobolsky. We went immediately to the palace of Prince Alexie Michaylovitz Cherkasky, the governour, who was an intimate friend of the ambassador. This prince was much esteemed for his capacity, as well as his great probity and honour. We supped with him, and then retired to our lodgings ; but could not avoid commiserating the fate of our fellow travellers, labouring with the ice, and afraid of being frozen up every minute.

The

The 3d, we sent some soldiers to meet the barks, and assist them in coming up the river. And on the 5th, they arrived safe at Tobolsky, where they were next day discharged.

We were obliged to stay here for the falling of the snow, in order to proceed on sledges, the common method of travelling in winter. At this place we thought ourselves at home, having good lodgings, good company, and plenty of provisions, so that we waited patiently for the setting in of winter; besides, we had now a frequented road, lying through a well inhabited country, all the way to Mosco.

During our stay at Tobolsky, I was informed, that a large troop of gypsies had been lately at that place, to the number of sixty and upwards, consisting of men, women, and children. The Russians call these vagabonds tziggany. Their sorry baggage was carried on horses and asses. The arrival of so many strangers being reported to Mr Petroff Solovoy, the vice-governour,

governour, he sent for some of the chief of the gang, and demanded whither they were going ? they answered him, to China ; upon which he told them, he could not permit them to proceed any farther eastward, as they had no passport, and ordered them to return to the place whence they came. It seems these people had roamed, in small parties, during the summer season, cross the vast countries between Poland and this place, subsisting themselves on what they could find, and on selling trinkets, and telling fortunes to the country people... But Tobolsky, being the place of rendezvous, was the end of their long journey eastward ; and they, with no small regret, were obliged to turn their faces to the west again.

Before I leave this new world, as it may be called, of Siberia, I think it well deserves a few general remarks, besides the particulars mentioned in my journal.

This vast extent of eastern continent is bounded by Russia to the west, by Great Tartary

Tartary to the south, on the east and north by the respective oceans; its circumference is not easy to ascertain. Foreigners commonly are terrified at the very name of Siberia or Sibir, as it is sometimes called; but, from what I have said concerning it, I presume it will be granted, that it is by no means so bad as is generally imagined. On the contrary, the country is really excellent, and abounds with all things necessary for the use of man and beast. There is no want of any thing, but people to cultivate a fruitful soil, well watered by many of the noblest rivers in the world, and these stored with variety of such fine fishes, as are seldom found in other countries. As to fine woods, furnished with all sorts of game and wild fowl, no country can exceed it.

Siberia is generally plain, sometimes varied with rising grounds, but contains no high mountains, and few hills, except towards the borders of China, where you find many pleasant hills and fruitful valleys.

Con-

Considering the extent of this country, and the many advantages it possesses, I cannot help being of opinion, that it is sufficient to contain all the nations in Europe, where they might enjoy a more comfortable life than many of them do at present. For my part, I think, that, had a person his liberty and a few friends, there are few places where he could spend life more agreeably than in some parts of Siberia.

Towards the north, indeed, the winter is long, and extremely cold. There are also many dreary wastes, and deep woods, terminated only by great rivers, or the ocean ; but these I would leave to the present inhabitants, the honest Osteaks and Tonguses, and others like them, where, free from ambition and avarice, they spend their lives in peace and tranquillity. I am even persuaded, that these poor people would not change their situation and manner of life, for the finest climate, and all the riches of the east ; for I have often heard them say, that God, who had placed them in this country,

country, knew what was best for them, and they were satisfied with their lot.

During our stay at Tobolsky, a messenger arrived from court, with the glad tidings of peace being concluded between his Czarish Majesty and the crown of Sweden, after a destructive war, which had raged above twenty years. This was very agreeable news to every body, particularly to the officers who had remained so long in captivity. The peace was proclaimed with firing of guns, and other rejoicings usual on such occasions.

November 18th, all the roads being now firm, and fit for sledges, we left Tobolsky in a strong frost. As we returned by the same road we went to the eastward, which I have already described, I shall not repeat the particulars, but only name the towns through which we passed, viz. Tumeen, Epantshin, Verchaturia, and Solikamsky. The weather being excessively cold, we remained two days at this place. From thence we came to Kay-gorod, then to

VOL. II. D d Klinoff;

Klinoff; from which, instead of going towards Cazan, we proceeded straight through the woods towards the town of Nishna-Novgorod, situated at the conflux of the Volga and Ocka. This road is nearest, but very rough and narrow in many places, the country being overgrown with large tall woods, of different kinds, according to the nature of the soil. The principal inhabitants are the Tzeremish, who afford but indifferent accommodation for travellers; however, the people are very courteous and hospitable. Among them are scattered a few Russ villages, and a very few Russ towns of small note; for which reason, I shall only mention the names of such as lay in our road from Klinoff to Kusma-Damiansko, (which last place is situated on the east bank of the river Volga), viz. Bistritsky, a large village; Orloff, a small town; Yurieffsky, a village; Kotelnitz, a small town; a village called Tzorno-Retzky; a large village called Voskresensky; Yaransky, a small town; Tzarevo-Sanchurfsky,

churfsky, another small town ; Shumetrey, a village. Besides these, and some others, we passed through many villages, inhabited by Tzeremishian and Tzoowashian Tartars, to mention which would be too tedious. These people, having destroyed the woods about their villages, live much at their ease, have plenty of corn and cattle, and great numbers of bee-hives, whereby they furnish the markets with great quantities of honey and bees-wax. They also furnished us with changes of horses whenever we had occasion for them ; but their tackling of harness, &c. is so bad, that much time was lost in accommodating them to our heavy carriages, so that we thought ourselves happy when we met with Russian villages, which are far better provided in that respect, and more accustomed to travelling than those poor people, who never go far from their own home.

After a tedious journey, we came out of the woods to the Volga, and travelled along upon the ice, which, in some places,

was

was not very firm. In the evening we reached Nishna-Novogorod, where we staid some days to refresh ourselves, and kept our Christmas with the commandant.

We proceeded again on the 28th, and little material happening, arrived safe at the capital city of Mosco, on the 5th day of January 1722, where we found his Czarish Majesty, and all the court, who had lately arrived from St Petersburgh, and preparations were making for grand fire-works, triumphal arches, and other marks of joy, on account of the peace: With which I shall conclude my journal.

I THINK it will not be unacceptable to the reader, if I subjoin a list of the places and distances between St Petersburgh and Pekin. They are as follows.

It is to be noted, that the distances between St Petersburgh and Tobolsky, in Siberia, are all measured versts, each verst being 500 Russ fathoms, each fathom consisting of seven feet English measure; so that a Russian verst measures exactly $1166\frac{2}{3}$ yards.

Versts.

From St Petersburgh	
to Yefshore	35
Toffinsky-Yam	23
Lubany	26
Chudova	32
Spaskoy Poliste	25
Podberezwa	23
Novogorod	22
Bronitza	35
Zaitsoff	30
Kristitskom	31
Carried over	282

	Verfts.
Brought over	282
to Yazhetbeetsach	39
Zemnigorskum	23
Edrovo	22
Kotelofsky	35
Vishny-Volotshoke	36
Vidropusko	33
Torshoke	36
Medna	33
Tweer	28
Gorodna	31
Zavidova	27
Klinn	27
Peshka	30
Tshorny Graz	24
City of Mosco	28
Novo-Derevenoy	27
Bunkovo	26
Kyrzatsky	29
Lipnach	28
Undola	17
Volodimer	22
<hr/>	
Carried over	<u>883</u>

	Verfts.
Brought over	883
to Selo-Sudogda	34
Moshkach	30
Selo-Dratshevo	26
Murom	30
Selo-Monachovo	25
Selo-Pagofsty	29
Selo-Bogoroditzky	39
Nishna-Novgorod	28
Zyminka	25
Selo-Tatintza	31
Belozerika	35
Fokina	29
Selo-Sumkach	34
Kosma-Damiansko	20
Bolshoy Rutky	10
Kumea	50
Shumetrey	30
Zarevo-Santzursky	30
Potavinoy-Vrage	47
Yaranskay	29
Selo-Voskresensky	34
<hr/>	
Carried over	1528

	Versts.
Brought over	1528
to Tshorna-Retzka	47
Kotelnizy	46
Yurioffsky	20
Orloff	26
Selo-Bistritz	21
Klinoff	30
Slobodfsky	28
Selo-Prokofieffsky	30
Selo-Solovetzkoy	33
Troitska-monastery	22
Kruto-Gorsky.	25
Katharinsky-monastery	25
Tikofsky	35
Leonsky	25
Kay-Gorod	35
Reka-Volva	34
Korish Retska Beresofsky	25
Selo-Ysinofsky	30
Zezefsky	15
Selo-Koffinsky	36
Logginoff	32
<hr/>	
Carried over	2148

	Versts.
Brought over	2148
to Selo-Syrinsky	28 :
Nikonoff	25
Town of Sollikamsky	30
Martinskoy	25
Yanvey	35
Moltzanoff	35
From Moltzanoff to Verkutaria are five stages, making 181	
thence to Saldinskaya Po-	
goftia	27
to Maggnevoy	46
Fominoy	28
Babichinoy	53
Turinsky	53
Slattkoy	50
Selo-Roshdesvinsky	50
Tumeen	51
Sosnovoy	46
Pokrofska-Slaboda	31
Iskinskoy	35
Carried over	2977

	Versts.
Brought over	2977
to Backfarino	34
Sheftakovo	26
Dechterevo	39
City of Tobolsky	43
	<hr/>
	3119
 From St Petersburg to Mos-	
co	734
 From Mosco to Kusma-Da-	
miansko	564
 From Kusma-Damiansko to	
Zarevo-Santzursky	120
 From Zarevo-Santzursky to	
Sollikamsky	813
 From Sollikamsky to Tobol-	
sky	888
	<hr/>
	3119

It

It will be observed, that, in our journey outwards to China, we went by Cazan, which must make the distance we travelled between St Petersburgh and Tobolsky, more than the above (which is the shortest road) by at least 200 versts.

The route continued from Tobolsky eastward, down the river Irtish, and up the rivers Oby and Keat by water.

From Tobolsky	Versts.
to Samarioffsky-Yamm	570
the town of Surgute	262
the town of Narim	590
the town of Makofsky	
up the river Keat	1480
by land, to Yeniseyfsky	92
to Elimfsky, along the	
river Tongusky	627
to Irkutsky	450
cross the Baykall lake to	
Selinginsky	394
to Saratzine, the boun-	
dary between Russia	
and China	104
Carried over	<hr/> 4569

Brought over to the river Tola	4569 467
the wall of China, cross the Hungry Stepp, or Desert,	1212
the city of Pekin	200

From Tobolsky to Pekin	6448
From St Petersburgh to To- bolsky	3119
	9567

N. B. The versts between Tobolsky and Pekin are computed, which generally exceed the measured verst.

It will be noted, that the route above recited is that by which we returned from China.

JO U R-

J O U R N A L

OF THE RESIDENCE OF

MR D E L A N G E,

AGENT OF HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY

OF ALL THE RUSSIAS,

P E T E R T H E F I R S T,

A T T H E

C O U R T O F P E K I N,

DURING THE YEARS 1721 AND 1722.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH.

TRANSLATION
OF THE
EDITOR's PREFACE
TO THE
READER.

THIS Journal is a very curious, and an authentic piece, and certainly merits the attention of the public, as well for its use, as the novelty of the subject it treats of.

As the world is not so sufficiently informed of what passes in those distant countries, as to form a tolerable judgment of what the court of Russia may have to do with that of China, I am now about to give a succinct relation

relation thereof to the reader, that it may serve him as an introduction to the work.

It is now well known that the frontiers of Siberia are contiguous to those of China ; for this reason, it is natural to think that the court of Russia should have more frequent correspondence with that of China than any other court of Europe. Nevertheless, this correspondence between the two courts is of no ancient date, as it did not commence but since the Mongall Tartars made themselves masters of China, about the year 1040 ; for it was about that time that the Russians, after being possessed of Siberia from the latter end of the sixteenth century, began to spread themselves over that vast country, not having met the least resistance from the ancient inhabitants of those parts ; till, at last, they came to establish themselves about the lake Baykall, and the river Amoor, thereby becoming near neighbours to the Mongall Tartars ; by intercourse with them the Russians soon came to understand that their nation had possessed

possessed themselves of China; and that it was the Prince who was actually their Chan who filled at that time the throne of China.

The court of Russia was not ignorant of the extreme opulence of the empire of China ; and, apprised that the distance from Siberia could not be great, resolved to try if they could not draw some advantages from that discovery, by establishing a regular commerce between Siberia and China ; promising themselves no less, than to draw into Russia, from that empire, a great part of its riches. For this purpose, the court of Russia sent, successively, several ambassadors, or envoys, to China ; who succeeded so well, that the Chinese, at length, consented to the entry of the caravans into their dominions, from Siberia, on conditions very advantageous to Russia.

During these transactions, the Russians daily gained ground on the frontiers of the Mongall Tartars ; and even made no scruple, when they thought fit, of establishing themselves on their territories, with a

VOL. II. F f design

design to approach on one side, along the river Amoor, towards the Oriental Sea ; and, on the other side, along the river Seilinga, towards the frontiers of China.

In the mean time, the new government of China was not long of comprehending that all these new settlements, which the Russians made upon the frontiers of the Mongalls, would in time render their power too formidable to the subjects of China ; and might come at last to be very dangerous to the repose of China itself, in case any misunderstandings between the two nations should arise. On these considerations, they resolved to oppose settlement to settlement, and to build some towns and villages on the frontiers of the Mongall Tartars, at some distance from the last settlements of the Russians ; in order thereby to prevent their penetrating further into the country, to the prejudice of the Tartar subjects of China.

In consequence of this resolution, the Chinese built, about the year 1670, the towns

towns of Mergeen and Naun, and the borough of Xixigan, with several other boroughs and villages thereabouts ; which they peopled with colonies of Mongalls, subjects of China.

Thence arose disputes between the two empires, on the subject of their frontiers. And, in place of the negotiations being confined to affairs of commerce, and mutual protestations of amity and friendship, on one side and the other, the grand object of all their aims came now to be the accommodation of the affair of the frontiers, and the regulation of limits between the two empires. But, in as much as one would preserve to themselves the right of doing as they thought fit, and the other would, at all hazards, keep them from doing what they thought dangerous, there arose a great coolness between them ; which came to blows in the years 1684 and 1685. It is true, that they laboured incessantly, both on the one side and the other, for a re-establishment of good harmony

mony between the two nations ; to this end there were held two different congresses, at the town of Nerchinsky, between the plenipotentiaries of Russia and those of China. But those gentlemen met with so many difficulties, in reconciling their different sentiments and interests, that they were obliged to separate without success. At last, F. Gerbillon, a Jesuit, returned again to the town of Nerchinsky, in quality of plenipotentiary of the court of China, and there, in 1689, signed a treaty of peace, and perpetual alliance, between the two empires ; which was afterwards ratified, in the usual forms, by both the courts.

That treaty was not very advantageous to the Russians, because it set bounds to their establishments on these frontiers, which was a very disagreeable article. And, as they believed the Chinese would not regard it very strictly, provided they did not advance further on the side of the Selinga, and the towns they had lately built to the southward of the frontiers, the Russians
again

again began to make new settlements along the river Amoor ; and, at last, to build along the south bank of that river, thirty leagues beyond their limits, a town they called Albazin ; in hopes that the Chinese could not be without Siberian furs, and would rather choose to wink at these enterprises, than enter into a new war. But they were quite mistaken in their calculation ; for the Mongalls furnished such quantities of furs to China, from the time they had orders from the Chan to spread themselves along the banks of the Amoor, that the Chinese began to perceive that they could be sufficiently supplied with furs, without those from Siberia. And in these sentiments they spoke freely their thoughts of these new enterprises of the Russians.

In the mean time, the Russians gave them good words and fair promises, but continued to carry on their point, flattering themselves that they might find some favourable opportunity of pacifying them.

Never-

Nevertheless, the Chinese growing doubtful of the Russians complying with their demands, which they thought well founded, at length they had recourse to force ; and, in the year 1715, made the Mongalls subjects to China, take arms, and laid siege to the town of Albazin, the place which was the principal ground of their complaints. This siege continued three years ; and, as the late Peter the Great was occupied in his grand designs to the westward, he would not continue the quarrel with China.' Thus they let the town fall into the hands of the Mongalls, and agreed to a new provisional treaty with the court of Pekin. But, as other differences on the frontiers still subsisted, the court of Russia sent again, in 1719, an envoy extraordinary to Pekin, to regulate entirely what remained to be adjusted between the two empires ; and seeing that, by means of these differences, the commerce of the caravans was much lessened, the true object of his negotiation was to re-establish that commerce ;

merce ; and, to that end, to try to induce the court of China to consent to the residence of an agent from Russia, at the court of Pekin, who might take care to watch over the affairs of the caravan, and so preserve a good understanding between the two empires. The envoy of Russia, having happily executed the last part of his commission, left, at his departure from Pekin, Mr de Lange, as agent of Russia at the court of Pekin, who was the author of the following Journal.

The public is obliged for this tract to a foreign minister, who resided many years at the court of Russia, and who permitted it to be communicated to the public. But, to make the reading of it more agreeable, and more useful to the world, it was thought fit to add some little remarks in the places which required elucidation, that nothing might be wanting to the reader on so interesting a subject.

J O U R-

J O U R N A L

O F

MR D E L A N G E, &c.

March 1721.

MR DE ISMAYLOFF, ambassador and envoy extraordinary of his Czarish Majesty, having fixed his departure from Pekin to be on the 2d of March, after having finished his negotiations at the court of China in the best manner he possibly could *, I took the resolution of ac-

VOL. II. G g companying

* Mr De Ismayloff, a gentleman of great merit, and a Captain in the regiment of the Preobraschinsky guards, was sent, in the year 1719, by the late Emperor

companying him to the wall of China ; but the gentlemen of the ministry thought proper to refuse me a passport ; pretending that, as I was ordered by his Czarish Majesty to reside at the court of the Chan *, it was necessary that I should have permission of the Bogdoi-Chan himself, not only for going as far as the grand wall, but also for every time that I would go to stay a night without the walls of Pekin ; to the intent that the court might always be assured

for Peter the Great, to China, with the character of ambassador and envoy extraordinary, to renew the treaties between Russia and China, and to endeavour to bring the court of Pekin to agree to a regulated free commerce with Russia.

* All the Tartars give to their reigning princes the title of Chan ; and, as the house which at present fills the throne of China is come from that branch of Pagan Tartars known to us by the name of Oriental Mongalls, the Emperors of China conform themselves to the established custom of their nation, preserving, to this time, the title of Chan. Vide Hist. Genealog. des Tartares.

red that no ill accident should happen to me, being a foreigner *. And, as the Bogdoi-Chan had already quitted his residence of Pekin, to take the diversion of hunting, it was not without a good deal of trouble that I obtained permission to accompany Mr De Ismayloff as far as Czampinsa, which is a town 60 ly † distant from Pekin, from whence I returned, being escorted by a clerk of the council for the affairs of the Mongalls, and some soldiers ;

* Mr De Ismayloff, at his departure from Pekin, left, by virtue of his instructions, Mr de Lange, in quality of agent of Russia, to treat of, and bring to a conclusion, a regulation of commerce, and the establishment of an easy correspondence between the two empires ; and, although the Chinese ministry opposed most strenuously the residence of the said agent, at their court, on pretence that it was contrary to the fundamental constitutions of the empire ; yet the said ambassador knew so well how to take his measures, that the Bogdoi-Chan gave his consent to it, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the ministry to the contrary.

† One ly of China is exactly 360 geometrical paces.

diers ; and thus came back to Pekin on the 6th.

The 7th, early in the morning, I saw enter the court-yard of my house a man who had the appearance of a poor beggar ; he brought with him some poor starved fowls, and salted cabbage, together with some pots of taraflun, which is a fermented liquor, made of grain, and what the Chinese drink instead of wine, making it warm before they drink it. This man, having set it all down in my court-yard, was returning, when I ordered him to be called back, to inform me of the meaning of his so doing. Upon which he told me, " That " it was part of the provisions he had " bought for me, by order of the college " who have the charge of the Emperor's " magazines of provisions ; but that, not " being able to bring all at once, he was " going to fetch the rest." Whereupon, being informed by him what his occupation was, I understood, " That he had " made a contract with the said college to " furnish

"furnish me, every nine days, with a certain quantity of provisions for my house." Upon which I ordered him to take every thing away that he said he had bought for me, and to bring no more to my house, till I should receive previous information, from the council for foreign affairs, how much I was daily to receive by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, and through whose hands I was to receive them.

Whereupon I sent to let the Mandarins (who were appointed to propose to the council what might regard me) know what had occurred with this man, who came, in the above manner, to bring me provisions on the part of the Bogdoi-Chan ; and also that I should always most respectfully receive whatever the Bogdoi-Chan, from his friendship for his Czarish Majesty, should order for my subsistence, in case it was sent me in a proper manner ; at the same time, desiring them to acquaint me with the particulars of what the court had ordered for my subsistence. Whereupon those gentlemen

lemen sent me the following answer,
“ That I should receive the same allow-
“ ance which I had received before, during
“ the residence of the envoy extraordinary
“ at this court, and that they had already
“ made an agreement to deliver my allow-
“ ance regularly.” I represented to them
thereupon, “ That I never had any sepa-
“ rate allowance during the residence of his
“ Excellency the envoy at Pekin, having
“ had the honour of eating always at the
“ same table with him ; that, for this rea-
“ son, I could now receive nothing, until
“ I should know precisely wherein it was
“ to consist ; and that, after I should know
“ what the allowance was to be, I should
“ desire them to pay me the amount of
“ the same in money, which they were to
“ pay to the purveyor.” These gentlemen
were not wanting in letting me know,
“ That I ought not so nicely to examine
“ what the Bogdoi-Chan, without any
“ obligation, had ordered to be given me
“ out of his mere grace.” But I assured
them,

them, in strong terms, in my turn, "That
 "I absolutely would receive nothing on
 "these terms; for I was very doubtful
 "whether the Bogdoi-Chan was informed,
 "that such a person was trusted with the
 "disposition of what allowance he was
 "pleased to order for me." This resolu-
 tion much discomposed the gentlemen
 Mandarins, who had reckoned on supply-
 ing their own tables with my provisions;
 but, seeing how difficult it was to obtain
 their ends on this occasion, they at last de-
 livered to me the following specification,
 and said it was what the Bogdoi-Chan
 had ordered for my allowance, viz. per
 day,

- 1 fish.
- 1 sheep.
- 1 pot of tarassun.
- 1 fowl.
- 1 bowl of milk.
- 2 oz. of tea.
- 2 oz. of butter.

2 oz.

250 JOURNAL OF 1731.

2 oz. of lamp-oil.

½ gin salted cabbage.

2 small measures of rice.

15 gin of wood.

To my interpreter per day,

1 oz. of tea.

½ gin of flour.

2 oz. of butter.

2 oz. of lamp-oil.

2 small measures of rice.

8 gin of wood.

And every 9 days a sheep.

To every one of my domestics per day,

1½ gin of beef.

1 oz. of salt.

1 measure of rice.

5 gin of wood.

To a dragoon who was left behind by the envoy at Pekin, upon account of some tapestries they were working for his Czarish Majesty,

1 measure of rice.

1 oz. of tea.

½ gin of flour.

2 oz.

2 oz. of butter.

2 oz. of lamp-oil.

5 gin of wood.

And every 9 days a sheep.

By *laen* you are to understand ounces,
and by *gin* pounds.

Upon delivering this specification, the Mandarins acquainted me, "That, as they were obliged to buy the fish, the fowls, the sheep, and the milk, for my provisions, with ready money, I might receive the value of those things in money; but, in regard to the other articles, I must content myself to receive them in kind, from the Chan's magazines *."

VOL. II. H h Upon.

* The Emperor of China receives the greatest part of the tribute of his subjects in the country in provisions and manufactures of the growth of the several provinces, which are afterwards distributed in kind to all persons in the service of this monarchy, and reckoned to them as part of their salary; so that all the gold and silver, that comes into the treasury of the Chan, arises from the tribute of the cities, the duties inwards and outwards, the tolls of passengers, the mines of gold and silver, and fines or confiscations; all which together amount every year to immense sums.

Upon which I assured them, "I should
"make no objection, provided they did it
"in a decent manner, and not by unknown
"people that marched off as soon as they
"had thrown it down in my court-yard,
"as they had once done." At the same
time I demanded of them, "Whether I
"could still have the Chan's horses, to
"make use of them when I should have
"occasion, as I had during the residence of
"the envoy extraordinary." They an-
swered me thereupon, "That I might cer-
tainly have the Chan's horses always;
but then, as the stables of the Chan were
at a considerable distance, it was neces-
sary for me always to acquaint them of
my intentions, the day before I intended
to ride out; upon such notice, they
would take care that the horses should
always be ready at my quarters very ear-
ly in the morning *." To avoid this in-
convenience,

* At Pekin, they always make visits in town on horseback. But the Princes of the blood, and the grand

convenience, and to avoid the being obliged to let them know every day where I would go, I took the resolution to buy six horses, and to keep them at my own expence, though forage was very dear at Pekin. The guard that had been placed upon the envoy's quarters, during the time of his stay at Pekin, under the command of a brigadier, remained still on the same footing after his departure, as did the two Mandarins of the 37th order *, together with a clerk, to receive from me whatever I should have to propose, whether by word of mouth

grand Mandarines, are generally carried in litters on these occasions, attended with a numerous train of domestics.

* Every man appointed to any public charge or dignity in China, from the highest to the lowest, is called by the name of Mandarin ; whence it comes that there are many orders, which are all distinguished, one from the other, by difference of habits, characters, and figures, which are embroidered or sewed on their habits ; insomuch that, upon seeing a Mandarin, it may be immediately known of what order he is ; because every Mandarin is forbid to appear in public without the habit of his order, under pain of the most rigorous penalties.

mouth or by writing, and to make their report to the council of foreign affairs; and this appeared to me a very good omen.

The 9th, the brigadier of the guard of my quarters let me know, that the Bogdoi-Chan would return from hunting the next day, and that if I was desirous to go to meet him, he would give orders, that the Mandarins should be ready to escort me with a guard of horse for the security of my person.

The 10th, I mounted on horseback very early to go to meet the Chan. When his Majesty saw me, he called me to him, and asked me, "If I did not repine to be alone "in a foreign empire, so far from Eu- "rope?" He further asked, "If I was "well, and if I was contented?" Upon which, having with a profound rever- rence thanked his Majesty for my graci- ous reception, I assured him, "That "I found myself perfectly well, and I "could not but be well content with ha-
ving

" ving the honour of residing at the court
" of so grand a monarch." After which
his Majesty, having dismissed me, was car-
ried in his litter to Pekin, followed by a
very numerous court *.

The 11th, 12th, and 13th, I notified to
the Mandarins, solicitors in my affairs,
" That, having several things to get made
" for the Emperor, my master, I should
" have

* The Emperor of China might be then in his 69th
lunar year ; but he was still very well disposed in body
and mind, and was looked upon as a monarch of supe-
rior penetration and genius. The Fathers Jesuits, Mis-
sionaries in China, had great influence with him ; and
he usually consulted them on all affairs of impor-
tance. He mounted the throne anno 1662, aged eight
years, and died in September 1722.

The Prince, his 3d son, who already commanded
the armies of the empire, succeeded to the empire ; for
the deceased Emperor had confined his two eldest sons
in a close prison, some years before his death, upon
some alledged attempts to rebel, true or false, and de-
clared them excluded from succeeding to the empire.
Nevertheless their brother set them at liberty, imme-
diately upon his accession to the empire, and heaped fa-
vours on them, to make them forget the loss of their
right, which he possessed.

" have great occasion for the money which
" divers merchants of Pekin were owing to
" the commissary Gusaitnikoff, who had
" been lately at Pekin with the caravan of
" Siberia * ; and I craved their assistance
" to facilitate the recovery of those sums,
" seeing the debtors had engaged them-
" selves, before the envoy extraordinary,
" to pay me the same immediately after his
" departure." The Mandarins explained
themselves very favourably thereupon ; but
our debtors, having got notice of it, retired
into the country, which obliged me to
leave this affair to another opportunity.

The 15th, the Bogdoi-Chan went to Czchan-zchumnienne, which is a house of pleasure belonging to his Majesty, 12 ly westward of Pekin, where he frequently makes his residence. But having observed, in his passing, that the triumphal arches, and other like ornaments, which are raised

on

* They give the title of Commissary to those who have the direction of the caravans, which come from Siberia to Pekin to trade.

on his birthday, on both sides of the grand road, paved with square flat stones, that reaches from Pekin to Czhanzechum-nienne, were not of the usual magnificence, all the ministry were disgraced for many weeks. Upon which the ministers, having instantly ordered the demolition of all that had been built, caused to be built up anew, from the palace of the Empress at Pekin quite to Czhanzechum-nienne, a great number of triumphal arches, and of most magnificent columns, of an exquisite taste, all embellished with gildings, and festoons of all sorts of rich silks, of most lively figures and colours. At the same time, in several places, they erected theatres of great beauty, where the most able comedians exerted their talents, in representing the most difficult and curious parts of their professions accompanied with the grandest concerts of music, both vocal and instrumental, diversified with the amusements of dancing, and feats of uncommon agility. All these entertainments being prepared,

the

the ministers went in a body to the imperial palace, supplicated the monarch on their knees, with their faces prostrate to the ground, that he would be pleased to admit them to his good graces, and that he would be pleased to send some, in whom he could confide, to examine their new structures *. But the Bogdoi-Chan ordered them to be told, " That he would see " nothing of what they had done, and that " he would never celebrate his birth-day " at Pekin more, for that he was as much " Emperor of China at Czchan-zchumni- " enne, as he should be though sitting on " the imperial throne at Pekin †."

The

* The honours which they pay to the Emperors of China approach even to adoration ; all those who have audience of him, being obliged to prostrate themselves three times before him, from which none are exempted, not even ambassadors, or other foreign ministers ; Mr de Ismayloff, notwithstanding his quality, being obliged to go through that ceremony, as well as all others.

† The deceased Emperor of China held the great lords of China very cheap ; for he very well knew, that,

The 17th, I desired the Mandarins, solicitors for my affairs, to come to me upon business that regarded the council. Upon which they sent me word, that, one of them being ill, the other dared not to middle in matters that regarded the council, without the participation of his comrade. This obliged me to wait the recovery of the sick Mandarin, and till I could see them both together.

The 18th, 19th, and 20th, I was willing to avail myself of the opportunity the sickness of one of my Mandarins gave me, to make some visits to merchants of my acquaintance, and to the Father Jesuits, hoping thereby to induce them to return my visits, and give me opportunity of

VOL. II. I i knowing

that, in their hearts, they bore the Tartar yoke very impatiently. Nevertheless, since the very severe executions he ordered in the beginning of his reign, he seldom punished with death the great Chinese Mandarins, who fell into disgrace, contenting himself with condemning them to pay exorbitant pecuniary fines; which incapacitated them from doing any thing against his authority, whatever desire they might have so to do.

knowing something of the commerce of this empire. But I found that they all received my visit with very forced civilities, and great reserve, particularly the merchants, who endeavoured to appear much occupied about other important affairs ; so that, seeing it very difficult to bring them into my views, in the present conjuncture, I thought it best to postpone these sorts of visits to a more proper time. But they, not doubting that such a reception would occasion my making many reflections, let me know, by a third hand, " That my visits should be always most agreeable to them, and that they wished, with all their hearts, to divert me every day better than the custom of their country permitted them ; and likewise, on occasion, to come and see me, were it not for fear of the soldiers, who followed me every where, which prevented them : For, in case they should not place the soldiers in the same chamber with themselves and me, and entertain them with every thing " to

" to their liking, they were capable of accusing them of having a clandestine commerce, of great importance, with me, or other suspicious negotiations, which would not fail of costing them considerable sums of money, and possibly might prove their entire ruin *." It is true, the Fathers Jesuits could not alledge such fears

* The Princes of the house of the Tartars, who at present reign in China, have learned, at the expence of their predecessors, that they ought not to depend too much on the fidelity of the Chinese ; for this reason, all the military of the empire is, in a manner, composed of Mongall Tartars, who, on that account, enjoy considerable privileges, which makes them very insolent and almost insupportable to the Chinese. And as the number of these Tartars were not deemed sufficient to curb the Chinese, considering the vast extent of the empire, the late Bogdoi-Chau found it necessary, in order to augment their number, to make a law, whereby all the Tartar Mongalls, men or women, who should marry with Chinese, were obliged to bring up their children according to the customs of the Mongalls, and to teach them the Mongalls language ; and that, by means of this precaution, all those children should be deemed naturalized Mongalls, and enjoy the privilege of native Mongalls.

fears of the soldiers of my guard as the merchants ; their belonging to the court put them on quite another footing than the ordinary rank of people were upon ; but they pretended that, as they were foreigners, they were obliged to act with great caution, in order to prevent suspicion *. This did not surprise me at all, in regard to a nation, the genius of which I already had a tolerable knowledge of. The affairs I had to manage were of a very difficult nature, and in all countries the entering properly into such ought to be the principal care ; but I, nevertheless, flattered myself, that this unpromising aspect, at my entering on my functions, would take a more favourable turn, as soon as the Bogdoi-

* This was but an excuse of the Jesuits, to prevent the visits of Mr de Lange, whose residing at Pekin could not be very agreeable to them, as it was to act in the affairs of a monarch who had turned all the Jesuits out of his empire, and would suffer no other Roman Catholic missionaries, but the Capuchins, to reside in his dominions.

doi-Chan should receive the credentials I had from the Emperor, my master.

The 22d, my Mandarins came together to see me, and to know what I had to propose to the council ; upon which I requested them,

“ 1. To put the Allegamba, or president “ of the council for foreign affairs in mind, “ in my name, that they had let my credentials, from the Emperor my master, “ remain in my hands beyond the usual “ time ; and that I waited, through his “ hands, the order of the Bogdoi-Chan, to “ appoint when he would please to receive “ them.

“ 2. To acquaint the president, that I “ had resolved to hire a house for myself, “ near the quarters of the Russians, against “ the arrival of the caravan, to the end “ that the said quarters might be repaired, “ which, from age, were gone to ruin, and “ might be entirely beat down by the approaching rainy season ; that, unless this “ reparation be made, the commissary
“ would

" would not know where to lodge on his
 " arrival at Pekin, except he would run
 " risk of having the merchandises dama-
 " ged."

" 3. To demand for me a passport, with
 " the necessary escort, for some baggage,
 " left at Pekin during the time of the am-
 " bassade, which I wanted to send out of
 " hand to Selinginsky *." The said bag-
 gage was some raw silk which I had bought
 on account of Mr Nicolai Christizy, with
 cash and effects that he had left in my
 hands †.

The

* Selinginsky is the last fortress belonging to Russia, towards the north-west of China. This town is in the country of the Mongalls, upon the east side of the river Selinga, 30 days journey from Pekin, in lat. 51. 30. The climate of Selinginsky is very mild, and the country about is very pleasant. The Mongall Tartars did not accustom themselves to the cultivation of ground; yet every thing that is sown or planted there thrives exceedingly.

† Through all Russia they use hardly any other silk but that of China, which is undoubtedly the best in the world; it being certain, that two pounds of Chinese silk will go as far in manufacturing as three pounds of either Persian or Italian silk.

The answer, which I received immediately after from those gentlemen, contained in substance, " That the Emperor himself having allotted that house for my quarters, no person would readily inform him that I was not satisfied with it ; and that, without a special license from him, no person in all Pekin, were it even the imperial Prince himself, would dare to let me a lodging, seeing it would thereby look as if the Bogdoi-Chan had not an inhabitable house for a foreigner." To which I replied, " That I made no doubt of so great a monarch's having houses enough for lodging as many foreigners as he pleased ; but, that I was well persuaded, when the Bogdoi-Chan should be informed of the condition that house was in, he would not oblige me to inhabit it longer. Besides, that it was acting contrary to the common right, allowed by all the world, to restrain a person, in a public character, from hiring a lodging, with his own money,

"money, which might be commodious for
"him, without a previous application to
"the Emperor himself." They answered
me thereupon, "That the usages in Eu-
"rope were not practised by them; and,
"as all the countries in the world had their
"particular customs, China had her's,
"which would not be altered on any con-
"sideration whatever." They also told me
plainly, "That they could not write to the
"council on this subject, for that they
"knew of a certainty, that no person durst
"make the proposition to the Emperor."

Upon which having told them, "That,
"as the case was so, I must submit to re-
"main there, till the impossibility of abid-
"ing longer may force me to have re-
"course to other measures." They of
themselves proposed to me, "That the
"Chan might be petitioned to allot me o-
"ther quarters, without alledging that my
"present quarters were in so miserable a
"condition." But, seeing I did not pre-
tend to go out, but because it was in such

a

a ruinous state, they persisted in saying, it was impossible for them to make the proposal to his Majesty on that footing.

The 23d, the aforesaid Mandarins came again to me to acquaint me, "That the "president would consult the other members of the council upon my credential "letters, and would put the Emperor in "remembrance, when occasion should offer. But, concerning the sending away "the baggage, I must have patience till "after the Emperor's birth-day, seeing the "preparations for its celebration so fully "employed every body, that nothing else "was attended to, though of ever so great "consequence."

April.

The 1st of this month, the Aloy, or master of the ceremonies of the Chan, invited me, by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, to come to Czchan-Zchumnienne. Upon which I went there instantly. I was no sooner arrived, but I sent to notify the

VOL. II.

K k

same

same to the said Aloy, and forthwith went to his apartment. I understood from him, that the Bogdoi-Chan had an intention to have admitted me that day to an audience, but other affairs had unexpectedly intervened ; he had ordered him to deliver to me a piece of the tapestry which they were at work upon for the Czar, in order that I might send it to Russia by an express, and acquaint the Czar, that what pieces remained to be made should be ready in three months *. I laid hold of this opportunity of the passports and convoy necessary for the piece of tapestry, to request of this gentleman, “ That he would be so good as “ to manage it so, as that, when his Ma-“ jesty should give order for the passport “ and convoy for the piece of tapestry, I “ should, at the same time, be furnished
“ with

* The tapestry of China is generally made of satin, embroidered with large figures of gold and silk, the colours very bright, but the designs not correct ; they are not adjusted to furnishing of rooms, unless bespoke on purpose, or composed of many different pieces.

"with passports for the baggage above-
"mentioned which I had to forward; and
"that he would please to be at the trouble
"of informing himself, when his Majesty
"would be pleased to receive my letters of
"credence from the Czar with which I
"was charged." Whereupon the Aloy
desired me to remain at his lodgings, whilst
he went to make the proposal to the Em-
peror; and, at his return, he acquainted
me, "That his Majesty would, out of
"hand, give orders to the council, that
"they should furnish me with the pass-
"ports and convoy necessary, as well for
"the tapestry as the baggage I wanted to
"send; but that it could not be till after
"the birth-day." That, as to the letters
of credence, he did not find it proper to
mention it to the Emperor, it appearing to
him that his Majesty frequently thought of
me, and would not forget my letters of
credence *, and gave me, in some measure,

an

* The late Emperor of China, notwithstanding his great age, had so extraordinary a memory, till a little time

an assurance that the Chan would not long defer the receiving it. And then he made his excuses that he could not longer wait on me, being obliged instantly to return to the court.

The 2d, according to custom, the birthday of his Majesty should have been celebrated, with the utmost magnificence, at Czchan-Zchumnienne ; but, inasmuch as

his

time before his death, that a Flemish Jesuit, who is yet at Pekin, recounted to one in the retinue of Mr de Ismayloff, that, above 20 years ago, this monarch having shown him a wood-pecker, asked him if there were such birds in their country ; and, having answered yes, he asked its name in Flemish. That, some time after the arrival of Mr de Ismayloff, the Emperor, having cast his eye on such a bird, asked him then also, if such birds were in their country ; and now answering, No, the Emperor asked him why he did not tell him the truth ; and if he did not remember, that, at such a time, he told him there were such birds in their country ; upon which the father Jesuit declared, that he had been so long out of his own country, that he really did not know whether there was or not. The Emperor was very merry upon the Jesuit's having forgot his mother-tongue ; and told him the bird's name in Flemish.

his Majesty was still displeased with his ministers, he only received the ordinary compliments on that occasion, without any other ceremony; after which every body retired to their own houses. I had, among others, the honour of paying my compliments to his Majesty on that occasion. That which appeared to me most worthy of observation at that time was 3000 old men, the youngest of which was above 60 years old, which, by express order of the Emperor, had been brought to Pekin from all the provinces of the empire. They were all dressed in yellow, which is the colour of the imperial liveries, and marched in parade to Czchan-Zchumnienne, where they ranged themselves in the court of the castle, and had the honour of making their compliments to the Emperor; after which his Majesty distributed to every one, without distinction, four laen of silver, and sent them home.

The

The same day, the parson of the church of St Nicolas, at Pekin *, presented me with a memorial of some debts which he had owing him, by diverse persons of that city, on account of the deceased Archimandrite, praying my assistance in the affair.

The 3d, having received from the council the necessary passport for the courier I was to despatch with the piece of tapestry,

I

* Those of the Greek religion have but one church at Pekin, but the Roman Catholics have three churches very magnificently built, where there resort, on Sundays and holidays, a number of people of all conditions, the Roman Catholic religion being tolerated there; but it is remarkable, that the men do not uncover their heads during divine service, because it is a mark of infamy among them to have the head uncovered; no women appear there, having a separate apartment in the churches. The late Emperor favoured the worship of the Romish church to such a degree, that he ordered that all the sons of Mandarins, who made their studies under the direction of the Jesuits, should be obliged to go, all Sundays and holidays, to their churches, which gave great uneasiness to the Chinese Bonzes.

I despatched him, the same day, under the escort of a Chinese courier.

The 8th, some unknown people having entered my house, told me, by my interpreter, "That they had bought for me a certain number of sheep ; but, if I would not receive them in kind, they were ready to pay me half a laen of silver for every sheep." I returned them in the same manner I did the former, letting them know, "That some person of the college, which had the direction of the Emperor's magazines of provisions, must come to me to show me those who were to bring me provisions." They attempted still, on several occasions, to bring in wood and other provisions in the same way to my house, without my being able to know who they were, or who sent them.

The 11th, I received the passport for the baggage of Mr Nicolai Christizy, which I despatched two days after from Pekin, under the escort of a Chinese courier. The president

president of the council letting me know, at the same time, " That I ought not to " send many of those expeditions, as long " as the new treaty of commerce between " the two empires was unratified in the " accustomed forms ; seeing it was not un- " derstood that they consented to a conti- " nual passage by small caravans, which I " myself sufficiently knew the reasons for, " having assisted at all the conferences held " on that subject."

The 13th, I learned that the Bogdoi-Chan was about to set out instantly for Leg-choll, which is a town newly built, with a magnificent castle, without the great wall 440 ly, or two days by post, eastward of Pekin, where he usually passes the fine season of the summer in hunting, and other country diversions.

The 14th, I mounted on horseback to go to the President of the council, being arrived at the gate, the guard made me wait till they had acquainted him of my being there ; immediately after which he sent

sent one of his servants to inform himself, "Whether I came purely on a visit, or had occasion to speak to him about business; and that, in case I came about business, that I should communicate the same to his servant, that he might inform his master of the subject of it." I made my compliments to the president by the messenger, and told him, "That I came to pay a visit to his master; but, as to the business I came about, that concerned the master, not the servant." After which, the same servant returning, told me, "That I would be welcome to his master *." Whereupon, entering into the court-yard, the president came out of his apartment to receive me, and having taken me by the hand, after some reciprocal compliments, he led me into an

VOL. II. L 1 open

* In China, when they go to see a mandarin, of what order soever, upon business regarding his office, the mandarin is obliged to put on the habit peculiar to his order; upon failure whereof he is amerced in large fines.

open saloon, where we sat down together, and were served with tea and milk, according to the Chinese manner. After some time, I desired that he would put the Bogdoi-Chan in remembrance that I had letters to present to him from the Czar, my master, and that I should be very glad to know if he would be pleased to receive them before his departure. He answered me thereupon as the master of ceremonies had done before, "That his Majesty was well informed of it, and would know himself when he would have time to receive them, without being put in mind of it; and that, if we should put his Majesty in remembrance of it, that would look as if he or I wanted to prescribe the time of doing it to his Majesty." I sought, by all ways possible, to engage him one way or other in this affair, but all in vain; and I was obliged to hold this for an answer; after which he added, "That, if his Majesty had resolved not to receive my letter of credence, he would not have

" con-

" consented to my residing at his court, in
" quality of agent; and that Mr De La-
" mayloff having sufficiently explained the
" reasons of my stay in Pekin, these letters
" could contain nothing very pressing."

Upon which I replied to him, " That, in
" Europe, the monarchs were not accus-
" tomed, when the Czar wrote letters to
" them, to let such a length of time pass
" without receiving them; nor take it a-
" miss, from their ministers, if they put
" them in mind of such important affairs;
" that I never expected such an answer in
" China; but yet, as it was what I could
" not remedy, I must bear it patiently, till
" such time as his Majesty was disposed
" to receive them."

The 16th, I mounted again on horse-
back to go to see the Alegada, or first mi-
nister, in hopes of getting a resolution more
favourable to my affair than I got from the
president of the council. Being arrived at
his house, I was indeed admitted to come
into his court-yard; but, as I had no desire
to

to go into the rooms of his servants, I was obliged to remain in the court till they notified to him my being there. He, like the other, sent a servant to me, to inform himself of the reason of my coming. To whom I signified, that I wanted the honour of seeing him, and of acquainting him with an affair which I did not think proper to explain to a servant. The same servant returned very soon to me, saying, "My master thanks you, Sir, for the trouble you have given yourself; he is very well, but it is not convenient for him to see you."

The 17th, I was again in his neighbourhood; and having sent my interpreter to him, to ask permission to see him for a moment, he sent me word, that it was impossible, because he was that instant going to his Majesty, and that he did not know when he should have time to speak with me. Whereupon, seeing this was an affair that could not be forced, I resolved to let it lie dormant for some time.

The

The 19th, I went to see a German Father Jesuit, who, being an old acquaintance, and a friend of mine from my first journey to China, made no scruple of telling me, that many of the principal mandarins of China much disapproved of the Chan's consenting to my remaining at Pekin *. But that, as there was no person in all the empire that was bold enough to dare contradict the will of the Emperor, unless they would expose themselves to very great danger, it was very probable they would, by degrees, accustom themselves to my being there †. He said to me also, that he had

* The Chinese regard their ancient laws and customs as sacred and inviolable; and it is not to be wondered at that they with great reluctance suffer the residence of a Russian agent at Pekin; as it is directly contrary to the fundamental constitutions of the empire, which absolutely forbid the Chinese to go out of the empire, and the admission of foreigners to an abode in it.

† The frequent executions which the late Emperor of China was obliged to cause to be made, in the early part

had frequently sent his servant to me with his compliments, but that the guard at my door had as often turned him back, as a person who had no business at my house. Nevertheless, he did not think they would have been so untractable, if he would have given them a piece of money. He most strongly enjoined to take no notice of what he told me; for he would by no means appear in this affair; it was sufficient that I was informed by him, in order to take my measures thereupon when occasion offered.

There are at Pekin a great number of small merchants, or rather pedlars, who, as soon

part of his reign, in order to keep the Chinese quiet, occasioned such a dread in all the Chinese, that the greatest Lords of the empire could not approach his person without fear and trembling. Nevertheless, this monarch was far from being a tyrant in reality, for he was a true lover of justice, and spared the blood of his subjects as much as possible. He had forbid, under the most severe penalties, the putting a criminal to death, for what crime soever, unless he should confirm and sign the sentence of death with his own hand.

soon as they hear of any foreigners being arrived from Russia, or other parts, bring to their quarters all sorts of merchandise, which they get partly from the brokers, and partly from other houses, of different sorts of people, who may have any goods which they would be willing to dispose of ; and it is often better to deal with these pedlars, for all sorts of curiosities, and for made silks, than with the shop-keepers ; for which reason, I bid some of these people bring to my house, from time to time, what they should light upon most curious in its kind, whether in rich silks, or jewels, or other goods of value, to the end that I might acquire a competent knowledge of all the sorts of merchandise to be got in this city. Upon which they represented to me, that I might well believe that they sought nothing more than to gain a little money, it being their trade ; and, of consequence, they would not fail of doing as I desired them, if my house was occupied by different persons ; because what goods were

were not liked by one; might find a buyer in another, and so they might probably always sell something; but, as I alone occupied the house, and had such a numerous guard at the gate, they did not know how to do it; because, before they were permitted to enter my house, they were obliged to agree with the soldiers of the guard, how much they were to pay them on their going out; and, whether they sold any thing or not, they were equally obliged to pay the money they agreed to for the permission of entry.

The 20th, I sent to demand of the mandarins who had the care of my affairs, " If it was with their knowledge that the soldiers of the guard that were at my gate did not permit any person to enter my house without their giving them money?" They, in answer, let me know, " That they knew nothing of the matter; but they would not fail to make inquiry; and, if they found that the soldiers, through ignorance, had done such a thing,

" thing, they would put things in better
" order for the future." And I found
that they had spoke to the officers of the
guard, who told them, " They had strict
" orders to guard this house, and take par-
" ticular care that the common people,
" who are generally very insolent, should
" not find means of coming into the court-
" yard to steal any thing ; and, as they
" were to be answerable, they were obli-
" ged to use the precautions necessary to
" to this effect." They came to report
this to me, as an unanswerable argument.
But I assured them, that, whenever the
guard admitted people to enter my house
during the day-time, I would not make
them answerable for any robbery that
might happen at my house, for that I had
a sufficient number of my own servants to
drive out of my court-yard any persons who
should dare to come there without having
business.

It must be observed, on this occasion,
that the Chinese have the custom of ex-

VOL. II. M m plaining

plaining themselves but once on one proposal ; and, having once given an answer upon a matter, whatsoever it be, they always hold themselves upon this answer, as an infallible argument ; so that, if you turn an affair into twenty different lights, to convince them, by one means or other, of their error, or to make them alter their sentiments, it is all lost trouble, they firmly holding by their first word. And it is a general rule with the Chinese, high and low, in all they have to do with foreigners ; in so much that, every time a proposal is made to them, which their interest or vanity may incline them not to approve, it may be certainly depended upon, that, after infinite disputes, you will be obliged to receive the first words, which they pronounced in the beginning, for an answer, be it agreeable or disagreeable.

The 21st, I spoke with the brigadier of my guard about this affair, who is a person generally esteemed by all the people of merit in the empire ; some years past, he had filled

filled the greatest posts of the state, but was disgraced, and made brigadier, on account of the bad conduct of his brother. I can truly say, this is the most worthy man I have known in China, full of honour, reason and probity ; and the Fathers Jesuits agreed with me, that there was not his equal in all this great empire. He disapproved very much the conduct of the officers and soldiers of my guard ; but he represented to me, at the same time, " That, having received orders from the Emperor, that all sorts of the lower people should be prevented from entering or leaving my house at their pleasure, to the end that no insult might be offered me, he could not avoid giving the same orders to the officers of my guard ; but, to prevent the abuse of his orders for time to come, he would come regularly twice a week to my quarters, to have an eye on their behaviour." Which gave me opportunities of making a particular friendship with him ; but neither mine, nor all the threats which
the

the brigadier gave to the officers and soldiers on this head, nor the rigorous treatment he made them feel on several occasions, could get the better of the insatiable avarice of these military people, who look upon it as their right to exact contributions of those who trade with foreigners. In short, it would have become insupportable to me, to be at the mercy of the chicanes that this pretended guard of honour studied to vex me with every day, if I had not had the hope that my credential letters would be very soon received ; and that I should then be able to do my affairs with more satisfaction.

The 23d, my interpreter having met one of our debtors, he put him in mind of the promises he had made to Mr De Ismay-loff, and assured him, that, if he deferred satisfying me, he should be arrested, seeing this affair would not allow of more prolongation. Upon which, he promised to come to me, in two or three days, with his

com-

comrades, and to endeavour, to the utmost of his power, not to come empty handed.

The 26th, two of these debtors came to my house with a Chinese merchant, who was their security ; they told me, that one of their partners, named Dzchundzchan, who was indebted to us in 1400 laen of fine silver, died the year before. But, as I was apprised that three of them were firmly bound in such case, one for the other, which they could not themselves gainsay, this sum must be brought to the account of the survivors. Of these two debtors which came to my house, the one named Dzchinborche was still in arrear 700 laen, according to what my interpreter said, but he acknowledged no more than 650 laen ; the other, called Dzchin-sanga, was to deliver 340 thun of kitaika * on the arrival of the next caravan at Pekin, and this by virtue of

* A sort of glazed cotton, calendered and smoothed, which they make in China, of all sorts of colours, whereof they sell great quantities through all the northern Asia.

of an obligation which he had given to the commissary Gusaitnikoff, payable to him, or order. I told them, " That, though I
 " had not in my hands the obligation he
 " had given to Mr Gusaitnikoff, that need
 " not hinder their paying the debt to me,
 " if not all at once, at least by little and
 " and little, according as their abilities
 " would enable them, seeing this money
 " was to come into the treasury of his Cza-
 " rish Majesty, and that, as soon as they
 " paid the whole, I would give them an
 " obligation of indemnity, which would
 " make their obligations to Gusaitnikoff of
 " no value *." Upon which they replied,

" That

* The commerce between Russia and China is at present a monopoly belonging to the treasury of Siberia, no other subjects of Russia being to concern themselves in it, on pain of death, unless employed on account of the crown, tho' it is often evaded, by connivance of the Weywodes on the frontier places. By virtue of the last treaty, they can send no more than one caravan a year from Siberia to Pekin, which doth not consist of more than 200 persons, instead of 1000 and more, which they amounted to heretofore, and which were subsisted

" That they could not object to this expedient, and that, conformable to their promises to the envoy extraordinary, to give me entire satisfaction thereupon, they would not fail to do it, so as I should receive part of their debts before the end of the month." These promises continued, from day to day, without any part of them being fulfilled ; and as I knew, by my own experience, that there are no where worse paymasters than in China, unless they can be compelled by force, I was obliged to fall on other methods.

May.

The 1st, I delivered to my mandarins two memorials on the subject of those debts, and the debts of the parson of St Nicholas, desiring they would present them to the council, and communicate to me the answer which they should receive on them. The same day my mandarins put into my hands

subsidies at the charge of the Chan of China, whilst they were on the territories of China ; but now they are to subsist upon their own charges.

hands 82 laen and 26 fun of fine silver ; saying, " That his Majesty had ordered this sum to be paid me for the value of the sheep, fish, fowls, and milk, for two months past ; and, for the time to come, every nine days, a clerk from the imperial treasury would bring me 12 laen, and 37 fun, in payment for the said provisions ; and that the other allowances, which I was to receive in kind, should be likewise sent me by a clerk of the magazines from whence they were taken." So that all I should receive for my monthly allowance, in money and provisions, would amount, according to the current prices, to 48 laen ; but they allowed no forage for my horses, which is a considerable article at Pekin, where forage is extremely dear. After which, during the rest of this day, the weather was very bad, a great deal of rain, with mighty gusts of wind ; the old house where I was lodged could no longer stand the bad weather ; all the wall of one side of my chamber fell, about midnight, into

the

the court-yard, which made me very apprehensive for what remained. I was obliged to retire into an adjoining chamber, to avoid, in some measure, the danger to which I found myself exposed. As this chamber, though a sorry place, was very low, I found myself in less danger ; besides, it was not quite so old and infirm as the other.

The next day, the 2d of this month, I advertised my mandarins of what had happened, praying them to cause immediate reparation to be made, if not of the whole house, of that apartment where I lodged at least. Whereupon they sent to assure me it should be done without loss of time.

But, on the 4th, they changed their note, and let me know that they could do nothing in it before the departure of the Emperor, seeing the college, which had the care of the buildings, were so much employed about the court, that they could give no attention to other affairs for the present. Whereupon I offered to repair it

VOL. II. N n by

by people I would hire on my own expences. But they wanted to impose upon me in the price. And the mandarins protested to me, that it was an affair that might be their utter ruin, if the Emperor should come to know that they had consented to my repairing with my money a house that belonged to him ; but they assured me they should set to work upon it very soon.

The 8th, the Bogdoi-Chan departed for Jegchol ; and, having the honour to attend him, on this occasion, to 15 ly from Pekin, his Majesty asked me, " If I expected the caravan soon ?" I answered thereupon, " That I had not received any advices from the commissary, but nevertheless I computed that the caravan might be at Pekin in two months from that time." Whereupon he asked me, " If I would not come and pass the time with the court at Jegcholl ?" I received such a gracious invitation with all due submission, promising to come to pay my devoirs to his Majesty at Jegcholl as soon

as possible *. But, on my returning to Pe-
kin, the governour of the city let me
know, " That I could not follow the Em-
peror before his Majesty had sent the ne-
cessary orders to him and the council to
give me post-horses, and the escort of man-
darins, which I should have occasion for in
this journey." In the mean time, I made
several agreements, with divers persons,
for different sorts of japanned ware, which
his Czarish Majesty wanted to have, which
I could not get at the usual price, because
those who supplied me with them were o-
bliged to give a great part of what they
gained on them every day to the soldiers
of my guard, for the liberty of entering
my house.

The

* The late Emperor of China was extremely affable and gracious towards Europeans, more especially to those who excelled in any science. He was taller than usual for people of his country, and not to be known, either by his complexion or feature, to be of Tartar extraction; it was only to be observed, that his cheek-bones, under his eyes, were a little rising and prominent, like the Mongalls.

The 10th, my mandarins being come to see me, one of them took leave of me; being, as he told me, named by the court to go, in quality of envoy, to the Delay-Lama *, and the other gave me positive assurances, that, early the next morning, the workmen should begin to repair my quarters, and that they had already provided the materials necessary for that purpose. In regard to my two memorials, concerning the debts above mentioned, he gave me for answer, " That the president would not receive them, not finding it proper to meddle with such trifling things, as he had before hand told Mr De Ismayloff himself, that the council would absolutely not embarrass

* The Delay-Lama is the sovereign pontiff of the Kalmucks, Mongals, and many other idolatrous nations north of the Indies. He is adored as a god by all these people, and by them believed to be immortal. He lives in a convent near the city of Potala, in the kingdom of Tangute, upon an high mountain, south of the deserts of Xame, towards the frontiers of China. Vide Hist. Genealog. des Tartares.

barrass themselves with any affair of debts; that nevertheless he had ordered his mandarin to press the debtors to discharge their debts, in case they were in a condition of paying such sums."

The 20th, my mandarin coming, stopped at my gate, and having learned that my apartment remained still in the same condition, he sent one of his servants to make his excuses to me, for not coming to see me; alledging, that the great heat approaching at noon would, he feared, incommodate him. But I caused him to be told, for my whole answer, "That I did not understand such a compliment; and that I wished, with all my heart, that, in time to come, he would dispense with coming to my house at all." Upon this answer, he thought fit to come himself to me; and to complain much of the negligence of the college, which had the care of the buildings, in not adverting to the repair of my house, notwithstanding he had wrote to them several times on the subject, in the most

most pressing terms. I demanded of him, "What he believed the Czar, my master, would think of such usage as he showed me; and, if he was not afraid, that in time he might be made responsible for such treatment." But he, laughing, told me, "That there passed many other things with them, and of more importance than this was, without daring to carry complaints to the Chan, and he did not doubt but that it was the same at our court." Nevertheless, the brigadier of my guard, on being informed of the affair, went to the Mandarins of that college, and threatened them with his going himself to acquaint the Emperor, that, by their negligence, they contributed to the diminution of his glory in foreign countries, if they did not, without further delay, cause my house to be repaired the very next day.

The 25th, at length there came workmen to put my apartment into an habitable state. The same day one of our debtors, named Dzchin-Sanga, brought me 50 thun

than of kitaika ; but I saw no appearance of getting any thing from the others, they being very poor and indigent ; and I perceived that the proceedings of our mandarin with them, tended more to get some little presents from them to himself, from time to time, than seriously to press them to the discharge of our debt.

In the months of June, July, and a part of August, there passed nothing material regarding me, either at the court, or with the ministry ; all those of any distinction being going to partake of country diversions. Wherefore, I shall fill this vacation by a faithful report of the observations which I could make, during my stay at this court, as well myself, as by some of my friends, of the present state of trade in the city of Pekin ; but I must, at the same time, acknowledge to the reader, that there is much wanting to make the observations such as they ought to be, and might have been, if I had not been so straightened, and
if

if they had let me enjoy the means of informing myself thoroughly of things.

The people of Korea, who are tributary to China, come twice a year to Pekin *, viz. in the months of March and August, to the number of 40 or 50 persons, as well to pay their tribute to the Emperor as to carry on their trade ; which consists principally of the following merchandises.

A sort of large paper made of raw silk, something like the large paper for wrapping up things in Europe. They make use of this paper in China for windows in place of glass.

Paper, with gold or silver figures, for hanging their chambers.

All

* Korea is a peninsula, eastward of the grand wall of China ; it is contiguous on the west to the province of Leotang of China, and on the north to the Eastern Mongalls. The Koreans are, from time immemorial, tributaries of China, who treat them very hardly, not permitting them any commerce with strangers. Nevertheless, they do not fail to come clandestinely with their goods, by the sea of Japan, to the river Amoor, and thence by the Naunda to the city Naun, to traffic with the Mongalls, and indirectly with the Russians.

All sorts of large fans, of different fashions.

Mats, very neat and fine, which they use in summer in place of matrasses.

Cut tobacco, very small, for smoking, much esteemed in China, and preferred to that of their own growth.

Stripped cotton stuffs.

A sort of furs, which the Russes call chorky, and which they call colouk in Siberia ; it is in great abundance in Korea ; they sell a great deal of it in Pekin.

A sort of dry-fish, which they get from a certain large shell-fish in the sea of Japan.

It is with these commodities that they trade ; and although they may, in a manner, be considered as the same nation with the Chinese, and in some degree their subjects, yet they do not enjoy the least liberty during their abode at Pekin ; all communication and conversation with foreigners being absolutely forbidden them, and much restricted with the Chinese them-

VOL. II. O o selves ;

selves; insomuch, that the Chinese are not less suspicious of them than of any other nation whatsoever. As they cannot make by their trade any thing to a considerable amount, they generally bring with them to Pekin large sums in silver, in Spanish pieces of eight, and in Dutch dollars, which are looked upon in China as inferior to the fine silver of China, which they call the Chan's silver, by 5, 6, or 7 per cent. which shows, that the inhabitants of Korea have some trade with the islands of Japan, or, at least, with the islands lying between Japan and Korea; although it is absolutely forbid the inhabitants of that country to have the least communication or commerce with other nations, or to admit foreign ships into their ports; having, for that end, a mandarin always residing in Korea, to have an eye on the proceedings of that nation. With this money they buy, at Pekin,

The finest raw-silk.

A

A sort of damask, called by the Russes goly, and by the Chinese couty-toanza, that is damask of Korea ; because, at first, the Koreans alone bought that sort of damask.

A sort of stuff mixed with silk, fit for linings, called by the Chinese fansa.

Tea and china-ware.

All sorts of dishes of white copper, for household use.

Cotton.

They likewise buy the tails of sables, to border their caps, and the collars of their robes.

It is likely that they trade into other parts with the silk and damask, which they carry from Pekin, seeing they take away much greater quantities than the consumption of their own country can require.

When there is no Russian caravan, nor any of that nation at Pekin, they quarter those of Korea in the habitation appointed for the Russes ; but when there are Russes in this city they give the Koreans other

quarters ;

quarters ; for this reason the Chinese call this house Couty Coanne, or magazine of the Koreans, when it is occupied by the Koreans ; and Urussa Coanne, or magazine of the Russes, when occupied by people of that nation.

When the Koreans, whether deputies from that country or merchants, arrive at Pekin, there are two mandarins forthwith named to go to their lodgings to observe who goes in to them, or comes out from them ; and to examine the cause of their coming, and how they became acquainted with the Koreans : They likewise place guards all around their quarters, to prevent any person from having private access to them. When any of this nation go abroad, upon any affair, the guard follows them every where, with large whips, to prevent any person from joining them in the street ; and they dare not go to see any person without permission of the guard. As the inhabitants of Korea are not used to ride on horseback, and are afraid to mount a horse,

horse, for fear of accidents, they give them a guard of infantry, who have no other arms, when they are in garrison, than their whips. Besides all these steps, full of suspicion, they fix, at their quarters, an edict of the court, signifying, that all persons whatsoever are forbid to enter their house without the knowledge of the mandarin, deputed for that purpose, who, after examining them as to what they have to do there, takes notice of their names, and sends a soldier into the house with them to observe what passes. It is a very profitable commission for those mandarins who are deputed to guard the Koreans; for they always farm the privilege of trading with them to that company of Chinese merchants who offer the most money for it, which sometimes amounts to a considerable sum; and it is by no means permitted to any other merchants, besides the members of this company, to trade, for that time, with the Koreans.

The

The Chinese have not, in a manner, any trade with the Indies *, excepting some small dealings they may have on the frontiers of the neighbouring states : But it was impossible for me to get to the knowledge of what those trades consisted in ; for, among a thousand people of the inhabitants of Pekin, it is rare to find one person who hath the least knowledge of any thing that passes without its gates. It is true that the Chinese do carry on trade, sometimes at Bengal, to the Philippine islands, to Batavia, and even to Goa ; but that is not brought about but by stealth, by the conivance of the mandarin governors of the sea-ports, obtained by means of a round sum of money, without the knowledge of the court ; besides, it is absolutely forbid, to every subject of the empire, to go into foreign

* China is separated from the country of the Great Mogul by sandy deserts, impassable for merchants ; and the other provinces of India by mountains, which are very difficult to pass, and in a manner hinders all commerce between these two empires.

foreign parts, upon what occasion soever, without a permission, or an order, from the Emperer or the government*.

The Bucharians come also to Pekin, but without observing any stated times†. They bring large round cornelians, of a very good

* The greatest part of the Chinese, who are dispersed in several places of the East Indies, for the sake of commerce, are the posterity of those who left China when the Mongall Tartars made themselves masters of that empire; and they have no other than clandestine communication with their Chinese countrymen. They are easily known by their long hair, which is natural to them; instead of which the Chinese, subjects to the Tartars, are obliged, under pain of death, to cut their hair short, like the Kalmucks and Mongalls, who have all their heads shaven, except a tuft of hair on the top of their head, which they preserve of the natural length of their hair.

† There are two Bucharias, the Great and the Little. The Great Bucharia is situated between Persia and the country of the Grand Mogul, about the 40th degree of latitude. This is the country of the Ussack Tartars, who are Mahometans. The Little Bucharia is situated to the east of the Great, and extends to the frontiers of China, on the side of the desert Xania, and kingdom of Tibet, which is their confined to the south;

this

good colour, which they barter with the Chinese against damasks, kitaika, tea, tobacco, China-ware, and silver. They string these on small silken lines, in the manner of beads; and they are worn by mandarins of the first orders, when they appear at court, or in the colleges, in their habits of ceremony, wearing one row of them about

this last is subject to the Kontaysha, Grand Chan of the Kalmucks. The Bucharians are a particular nation, which have no connection either with the Mahometan or Pagan Tartars, nor with any other people of those parts. They do not know themselves whence they draw their origin. Nevertheless, they make profession of the Mahometan religion. They occupy the towns of the Two Bucharias, and only employ themselves about their commerce. Those of the Great Bucharia carry on their trade in the dominions of the Great Mogul in Persia, and in Siberia, and are tributary to the Chan of the Usbecks. Those of the Little Bucharia trade into China, into the kingdoms of Tibet and Tangut, and with the Kalmucks and Mongalls their neighbours; these last pay tribute to the Kontaysha. The Bucharians have many customs and ceremonies, much like those of the Jews; nor is their dialect, physiognomy, and size much unlike them; which may give occasion to many reflections.

bout their necks, which hangs down on their bellies. They bring also musk, rough diamonds, and many other sorts of precious stones ; but, as I was informed, of no great value ; because it is rare to find, among the Chinese, any who will risk the laying out a considerable sum for a fine stone. The Chinese polish these stones, after their own fashion, in order to make them proper for ornamenting the heads of the fair sex.

I had no opportunity of being acquainted with any of this nation, not being allowed liberty sufficient for that end ; and, on their part, they dared not run the risk of coming to my house, for fear of the guard at my gate ; so that I cannot give an exact account concerning them.

They also bring to Pekin gold-dust *, which the Chinese buy commonly at the

VOL. II. P p price

* The gold which the Bucharians bring to China comes from the high mountains which separate the dominions of the Great Mogul from the Grand Tartary.

price of 5, 6, to 7 laen of silver per laen of gold-dust, because it is unrefined ; they assure me that it is very fine when purified, and is then equal to the gold of the Chan.

These Tartars dwell in the provinces of Chamill and Turfan *, under the protection of the Emperor of China, in consideration of a moderate tribute, which they pay him annually. In return they buy at Pekin,

Hides

All these mountains abound in rich mines of all sorts, but none of them are wrought ; nevertheless they make very considerable gains annually, by the great quantities of gold-dust which the mighty torrents, formed by the rains in the spring, along with the snows melting, bring down with them into the neighbouring valleys : For the inhabitants of these mountains, together with the Kalmucks, who encamp with their cattle in the adjacent plains, come afterwards to gather these grains of gold, in the pits which the torrents have made in their passage, and barter them, with the Bucharians, against all sorts of small things for which they may have occasion in their way of life.

* The provinces of Chamill and Turfan are situated to the west of the desert of Xame, towards the 40th degree of latitude. They make a part of the Little Bucharia,

Hides of Russia to make boots.

Fox-skins, red and brown.

Squirrel-skins, white and gray.

Beaver-skins.

Sables, and other furs.

Kitaika.

Cotton, like the woollens of Europe, of which they use part themselves, and sell part to the Kalmucks *, their neighbours.

They also take,

Tea.

Tobacco.

And of the smallest China-ware ; of all which in pretty large quantities.

Besides

nia, and have been subject hitherto to the Kontaysha, Grand Chan of the Kalmucks ; but a few years since the Chinese, joined by the Mongalls, have possessed themselves of it, after having driven out the Kalmucks.

* The Kalmucks occupy a great part of the Northern Asia ; they are divided into three principal branches, under one sovereign Chan, whom they call the Kontaysha ; they have no fixed habitation, but always live in tents. Though the Kalmucks are indisputably the bravest of the Tartars, they are, nevertheless, desirous

Besides the goods I have above specified, I know of no others which they bring to Pekin.

The most valuable furniture of lacquered ware, viz. cabinets, chairs, tables, baskets, and other things of that sort, as also the richest porcelain-ware, come from Japan *. For, when the Emperor sends any person to Japan, in a public character, most of the princes and great men of the court seldom fail to engage him to bring them some of those things at his return. Sometimes they find means to bring these things into China clandestinely ; but that is very seldom.

desirous of living peaceably, contenting themselves with the subsistence which their cattle can afford them, and do no harm to any, unless they are hurt by them ; but, when once irritated, they become irreconcilable enemies. Their religion is that of the Delay-Lama.

* All merchandise of Japan is contraband in China, which is the reason they cannot be brought into Russia, with the caravans from China, at least without very great risk. The small quantity of Japan goods, which are clandestinely brought into China, being kept very private, and paid for at very dear rates by the Chinese themselves.

dom. This is the reason that the commodities of Japan are not always to be had at Pekin, unless a man would pay an exorbitant price; nevertheless they are found there sometimes reasonably enough; because seldom a year passes that the Emperor doth not amerce some or other of the great lords in very considerable fines, which obliges them to raise all the money they can on their moveables and immoveables; and whoever hath money lying by him doth, on these occasions, lay it out to great advantage, and buy the most curious and valuable things for little money*.

After the lacquered ware of Japan, that of the province of Fokien is looked upon as the best; but none of it comes to Pekin, because the great lords of China oppress the merchants to a great degree, and take

their

* It seems to be a favourite maxim, adopted in all the eastern courts, to wink at all the vile practices, and rapacious impositions, of the ministers; and, when they have well plucked and drained the substance of the people, the prince then squeezes them dry for his own use.

their goods from them, upon many frivolous pretences, without leaving them the least hopes of ever obtaining any payment. For this reason, all merchants, and others of any lucrative trade, at Pekin, have fallen into the custom of putting themselves under the protection of some one or other of the princes of the blood, or other great lords, or ministers of the court ; and, by this means, with the assistance of a round sum of money, paid annually to their protectors, they are able to get clear of the extortions of the mandarins, and sometimes of those of the common soldiers : For, without such a powerful protection, a merchant must be an undone man at Pekin, where every one thinks they have an undoubted right to form pretensions upon a man that lives by trade. And, if any of them are so imprudent as to attempt obtaining satisfaction, by the way of justice, they fall from bad to worse ; for the mandarins of justice, after having drained from them all they can, seldom fail of ordering

dering the goods, taken from them unjustly, to be brought to the college ; but he must be a cunning fellow indeed, who shall be able ever to get them from thence.

They have at Pekin a people dexterous enough at lackering, but their works fall far short of those of Japan and Fokien, which may be attributed to the difference of climate ; and it is for this reason that the lacquered work made at Pekin is always much cheaper than the other. Nevertheless, the lacquered work made at Pekin infinitely exceeds any work of that kind made in Europe.

The ships which arrive every year at Canton, from England, France, Holland, Denmark, and other parts, generally bring the following sorts of merchandise,

Silver of different coins.

All sorts of fine cloth.

Camblets.

Woollen stuffs.

Fine Holland linen.

Standing clocks and watches.

Looking-

Looking-glasses of all sizes.

Mathematical instruments.

Etwys from England.

Pencils.

European paper of all sorts.

Different sorts of milliner wares.

Some sorts of European liquors, especially wine.

A good part of those merchandises are distributed in presents among the mandarins of the government of that city ; of the rest, the European merchants generally make a very considerable profit. They employ the silver these bring in purchasing diverse sorts of goods, by virtue of an agreement made before hand : They carry away with them from thence,

Raw silk.

Damasks wrought according to draughts furnished to them.

Wrought silks.

Lackered ware.

Tea, green and bohea.

Badians,

Badians, a seed having a taste much like aniseed.

Canes, and China-ware, made according to models given them.

They also sometimes bring away gold, but very seldom, because they generally get it cheaper in the Indies. They also find at Canton pretty valuable stones, except diamonds, but not in any great quantities.

They make the best silk brocades of China, that are brought to Europe, in the provinces of Quoantung and Fokien.

The silver which they bring from Europe to Canton is received at the same rate as that brought from Korea to Pekin; and they have the advantage of buying their goods at Canton from 30 to 40 per cent. cheaper than they could do at Pekin.

The last year there arrived at Canton a French commissary, belonging to the new India company established in Paris *, who obtained leave of the court to reside there

VOL. II.

Q q

for

* The Mississipi Company.

for time to come ; but, when he wanted to despatch the ship loaden with merchandise, he met with so many obstacles at the custom-house, and from the government, doubtless, to draw more money from him, notwithstanding he had already made sufficient presents, that at length, despairing to see an end of these impositions, he gave orders to the captain of the ship to weigh anchor, and depart, in spite of those people ; which was done as he desired. But he was obliged, to avoid being very ill treated on this occasion, to take the Chinese habit, and to retire to a convent of Dominicans, at the distance of two ly from Canton *, where he kept himself incognito, till such time as the French Jesuits at Pekin had found means, by the force of presents, to obtain liberty for him to appear openly, with two

or

* There are many Roman Catholic Convents in China, which, in the time of the late Emperor of China, had much the same immunities as the convents in Europe enjoyed. No person durst enter but with the consent of the religious of the convent, unless by express order of the Emperor of China.

or three domestics, and remain there till the court should otherwise direct ; on the condition that he and his servants should wear the Chinese habit. Nevertheless, I was afterwards informed, that the mandarins of the government of Canton let no opportunity escape them of chagreening him, insomuch, that he found himself obliged to re-imbark the first opportunity that offered itself. They also had the last year at Canton a frigate from Ostend, bearing the Emperor of Germany's colours.

For the rest, they carry to China from Europe, and bring back from China, a very great variety of toys, and different sorts of curiosities, upon which they make a very considerable profit ; but these are so numerous that it is not possible to furnish a complete specification of them.

In regard to our commerce with China, it is at present in a very languishing condition ; and nothing in the world would bring more prejudice to our caravans than
the

the commerce which is carried on at Urga * ; for from this place there is brought monthly, and even weekly, to Pekin, not only the same sorts of goods which our caravans bring, but of a better quality than those brought by our caravans, and in so great quantities, that the merchandises which the merchants of Pekin, who go continually between Pekin and Urga, to trade with our people, and the goods which the lamas of the Mongalls † bring

* The camp of the Chan of the western Mongalls, who are tributaries of China, is called Urga. This prince encamps on the right of the river Selinga, about 500 versts south of Selinginsky, towards the frontiers of China ; and though he doth not always encamp in the same place, yet he seldom quits this country without indispensable necessity. By virtue of the last convention of the frontiers, the Russians of Selinginsky might freely come to Urga to barter Russia hides, and the coarse woollen cloth of Siberia, against cattle; but as, under this pretext, they brought great quantities of valuable furs, which they sold against the merchandises of China, this clandestine commerce much injured the trade of the caravans of Siberia.

† The priests of the western Mongalls, and the Kal-mucks, are called lamas ; these are different orders.

bring from their parts, amount every year to four or five times as much value as the caravans that come to Pekin in the name of his Czarish Majesty. And I have been informed, by those who have been employed by the great men of Pekin to buy their provision of furs at Urga, that there they can buy finer, and more valuable black fox-skins, than they have ever seen in our caravan. I must add besides, that these great quantities of our merchandises brought from Urga to Pekin, do considerably lower the prices. The merchants of Pekin, and the lamas of the Mongalls, who bring them to Pekin, are always capable of affording them four or five per cent. lower than the commissary of the caravan can, of which the reader will be easily convinced, if he gives attention to what I am about to lay before him.

The Russ merchants, and all other people that come and go continually between Selinginsky and Urga, buy their goods where they find it most convenient ;
instead

instead of which, the commissary is obliged to receive those he brings with the caravan, out of his Majesty's treasury, from sworn appraisers of the treasury, who often set so high a price on them, that they find it difficult to sell them for half the price valued at to them. Another advantage which those who go to trade to Urga enjoy, is, that they make the journey thither in ten or twelve days ; and, beginning their traffic immediately on their arrival, they are ready to return in two or three days after ; in place of which, the commissary, after having been at considerable expence, can with difficulty enough get to Pekin in three months ; and, when he gets there, they keep him shut up six or seven weeks, according to the maxims practised by the Chinese hitherto ; in consequence whereof the abundance of merchandise of Russia arrived at Pekin obliges them still to spend several months in getting quit of theirs : And as, by the last treaty, they are obliged to maintain themselves, and all those

be-

belonging to the caravan, at their own proper expence, all these circumstances cannot fail of occasioning a very material difference in the balance of their trade. For, before they began to trade at Urga, a caravan, how large soever, was all sold off in three months, at the prices set by the commissary himself. Moreover, all the Chinese who traded at that time with us became rich ; instead of which, all those who have traded with us since that time have traded to their own loss, and may be deemed at present quite ruined. The expences of a journey to Urga are very trifling ; for they can buy at Selinginsky as much provision for ten roubles as will serve ten persons for a month ; in place of which, ten roubles will hardly serve them a week at Pekin. Besides, those who go into China to trade are obliged to buy forage for their horses, &c. in place of which, those who go to Urga to trade, put their horses to grass, without costing them a farthing. The Chinese merchants, on their side, who come to Urga to trade, are likewise at much less

less expence than the commissary ; because they buy at Pekin, and the towns through which they pass, tea, tobacco, rice, and other grains, ordinary damasks, kitaika, and other like merchandise, at a very low price ; which they barter, on the road with the Mongalls, against horses, sheep, and, in a word, all sorts of cattle ; insomuch that, as the private merchants make both their journey, out and home also, with infinite less expence than the commissary of a caravan, it cannot be otherwise, than that they can buy and sell their merchandise on much better terms than a commissary can, who is obliged to remain, with a number of attendants, in a city where living is so dear as at Pekin, a longer time than would serve a merchant at Selinginsky, for making four or five journies to Urga. In fine, when the caravan returns to Russia, they find, after such great expences, that the quantity of Chinese goods brought to Russia by private traders, is so very large, that they must sell theirs at a very moderate rate.

rate price. All these circumstances well considered, it is easy to comprehend that, upon closing the accounts of the caravan, the profits cannot, at this time, be much more than the disbursements. But, to return to our journal.

August.

The 14th, I received a letter from Commissary Istopnikoff, dated from the river Tola *, 29th of July ; by which he desired me to prevail on the council for the affairs of the Mongalls † to send him an af-

signment

* Tola is a river in the country of the Mongalls, which comes from the east, and enters the river Or-chon about 250 versts south-east of Selinginsky. By virtue of the new regulation, the caravans of Siberia who go to Pekin ought to enter on the territories belonging to China upon their passing this river.

† The council for the affairs of the Mongalls at Pekin is a college, who have the care of every thing regarding the nation of the Mongalls, as well those who are the hereditary subjects of the Emperor of China, as also those who are only under the protection of this empire. This college, at the same time, enters indirectly into the cognizance of all the affairs which regard the pow-

ers

signment for 2000 laen of silver upon the custom-house of Kalchanna * ; offering to return the same (for which he had pressing occasion, for the necessities of the caravan,) as soon as he should commence his trade at Pekin ; and he added, that the same favour had been formerly granted to Commissary Oskolkoff.

The 15th, I went to the council, and having spoken of this affair with the askin-namina, or vice-president, he promised to consult the registers of the council upon it, and to write directly about it to the president at Jegcholl, and that he would communicate his answer to me.

The 17th, having sent my interpreter to the council to know if they had come to a-

ny

ers who border on China, from the north-east to the west, whence it comes that they are the court who have most to do of any in China.

* Kalchanna is the first Chinese city, within the great wall, that you come to, in the road from Selingsky to Pekin. It is here that the duties, inwards and outwards, are paid by the Russians, and also for great part of the country of the Mongalls.

ny resolution on this affair, he brought back the following answer: "That they had indeed found in the registers, that the council had formerly advanced money to the commissary; but that the trade was an object of so little consequence with them, that they did not think it merited the council's being incommoded with proposals of that sort."

The 18th, a mandarin came to me from the council, and notified to me, that his Majesty, calling to remembrance my being at Pekin, had given orders to the council, that I should be escorted to Jegcholl by a mandarin, and some of the military. Whereupon I answered him, that I would be ready the next day, with my interpreter, and two domestics, if they would take care to provide the relays which I should want for the journey.

The 19th, all being ready for the journey, I left Pekin very early in the morning.

The 21st, I arrived at Jegcholl, and repaired forthwith to the court; and having found

found the chamberlain of the Chan, who is generally an eunuch *. I prayed him, according to the custom of the country, to inform himself, on my behalf, of the health of the Bodgdoi-Chan, and to inform his Majesty of my being there ; upon which his Majesty did me the favour of sending to me a salver covered with all sorts of new fruits, which were followed by another, charged with divers sorts of meat from his kitchen ; he ordered me to be told, at the same time, that he sent me those for my refreshment, and that I would do well to keep my chamber the rest of the day, to recover my fatigue from the journey. The same evening, some of the Father Jesuits being come to see me, told me, that the allegada had resolved to propose to the Emperor

* All those who serve in the chamber of the Emperor of China are eunuchs, and are either Chinese or Mongalls ; the Chinese nation being not less jealous of the sex than other eastern people ; but the Mongalls, and generally all the Tartars, are not very liable to this malady.

peror to make the caravan encamp in the desert, near Kalchanna, till the court should return to Pekin ; supposing that so many of the court, and the greatest part of the people of distinction, being in the country, there would be nothing to do for the caravan at Pekin ; and that they believed that he would not fail of requiring from me an order to the commissary for that purpose. It was easy to see, that what determined the minister to take this resolution, was nothing else but his apprehensions that the presents he expected to have from the commissary, if he should be at Pekin at the time of his arrival, might, if he was absent, fall into other hands. But, as this was a design that might be attended with very bad consequences, and might have been the cause of the loss of men, as well as the horses belonging to the caravan, by being exposed to the extremity of cold and famine in the deserts, I became obliged to use all my efforts to render this intention of the minister abortive.

The

The 22d being to go in the morning to court, the Emperor sent the master of ceremonies to require of me passports for some mandarins which were to pass the frontiers of Russia ; but, as I could well penetrate the grounds of their errand, I thought it my duty to refuse the passports demanded. Nevertheless, notwithstanding all my excuses which I could muster up, to exempt me from giving them, the master of the ceremonies came to declare to me, in the clearest terms, the next day, which was

The 23d, "That the Emperor was, at one time, resolved to send those people away, whether I would give them passports or not ; but that I ought to consider, that, in such case, I might expect an absolute denial to every thing which I might have to propose." Which convinced me, that it was absolutely necessary for me, on this occasion, to conform to his Majesty's pleasure, if I would retain the least hopes of succeeding

ing in my desire of opposing the designs of the minister. For this reason,

On the 24th, when the master of the ceremonies came again to speak with me on this affair, I put into his hands a letter, addressed to the officers commandants on our frontiers, in the form he desired to have it; to which I joined the condition, that our caravan should not be hindered from coming to Pekin directly; and that our commissary should, on his arrival at Pekin, immediately be at liberty to begin his commerce, without being shut up for a certain time, as had at some times been practised. The master of the ceremonies promised to speak to his Majesty about it; who had not only the goodness to give his consent immediately, but he, at the same time, gave strict orders to the president of the council, that he should take special care that no person whatsoever should go about in any manner to interrupt the commissary in his business.

The

The 25th, a Portuguese Father Jesuit, called Father Maurano, came to me, and told me, "That there was a person of quality, who, by him, made me an offer of 10,000 laen of silver, till the arrival of the caravan, which I might employ in what manner I thought proper ; and that this Lord was very much scandalized at the disobliging answer I had received from the council of the direction of the affairs of the Mongalls, in regard to the 2000 laen of silver which I had required of them for the necessities of the caravan." Upon which, pressing him to let me know who this Lord might be, he told me, " That he was indeed forbid to let me know who this person was ; but that he would nevertheless, in confidence, own to me that it was the 9th prince, son of the Chan, who made me this offer *." Thereupon I did not omit testifying

* The late Emperor of China had seventeen princes born of his several wives and concubines. There were three present at the first audience of Mr de Ismayloff, who

testifying to him how much I was touched with the generosity of a Prince to whom I had never the honour of paying my devoirs ; adding, " I should never forget the good will which his Highness was pleased to show me on this occasion ; and that I should all the days of my life retain the same sentiments as if I had received his generous offers." But the Father Jesuit having remonstrated, " That the Prince might possibly think himself offended if I should refuse his offer altogether," I was obliged to accept of 1000 laen of silver *.

The

who were all very well proportioned, having fine complexions, and black eyes, well formed, without the least appearance of the deformities of the Mongall nation.

* There is an appearance as if this was a snare laid for Mr De Lange, to render him suspected by the Emperor of China, who, in the design which he had then formed of leaving the succession to his third son, could not fail of taking umbrage at the least false step which the agent of Russia might happen to take on this occasion, which might induce this monarch to consent to his being sent away, which was probably the whole aim of this intrigue.

The 26th, I paid a visit to the Father Jesuits of the French nation *, where I found the president of the council, who let me know, by the mouth of these Fathers, " That he was come from receiving the Emperor's orders, which were so favourable to our commerce, that there is no instance of the like liberty having ever been granted

* The Jesuits had great ascendancy on the late Emperor of China ; and, as the present Emperor hath been under their hands, it ought not to be doubted but he is likewise well affected to them, whatever may be reported to the contrary. At the first audience of Mr De Ismayloff, the Emperor being seated on the throne, had on his left, as the place of honour, at three paces distance, a little advanced into the hall, three of the princes his sons ; and, on his right, a little more advanced, the Jesuits belonging to the court ; at five paces behind them, a little more advanced, were placed seven Mongall princes of the Imperial house ; and then, on the two sides of the hall, the ministers and grand mandarins of the court ; all sitting cross-legged, according to the manner of the Tartars. By so remarkable a distinction it may, in some degree, be comprehended how much these good fathers were in favour with the Emperor.

granted before in China." I answered him, through the help of these Fathers, "That I had no reason to doubt of the punctual execution of his Majesty's orders, since he had the goodness to charge the governour-general of Pekin with them ; of whose indefatigable zeal for maintaining a good understanding between the Bogdoi-Chan and the Czar my master, was sufficiently known to me." Whereupon he caused me to be told, "That he was not a man capable of receiving presents from foreigners, for doing them a service, as many others did in such cases ; and that a step of that kind would entirely prevent him from ever having the liberty of speaking to his Majesty again in favour of any person whatsoever, should it come to his Majesty's ear ; but that, nevertheless, he believed he might reserve to himself the privilege, when he should come to our house to buy any thing, of being treated more favourably than others in the price." Upon which I assured him, "That we should always

ways know to treat him with proper distinction in such a case."

The same day, I desired the master of the ceremonies to make my most humble acknowledgments to his Majesty, for the gracious reception which he had been pleased to honour me with, during my stay at Jegcholl, and to pray his permission for my returning to Pekin; because I apprehended the caravan would soon arrive there. He came, some hours after, and informed me that his Majesty intended, the last day of this month, to go upon a party of hunting in the desert, some leagues from Jegcholl, and that I might lay hold of that opportunity of taking leave of his Majesty, and of returning to Pekin. He added, that his Majesty had likewise ordered the governour of Pekin to go thither, and deliver to me the tapestries he had caused to be made to the Czar.

During the rest of my stay at Jegcholl, my table was furnished daily, the same as the first day of my arrival, from his Majesty's

jefty's kitchen. And they showed me all the buildings and gardens of this charming place, which is certainly worthy to be the delight of so grand a monarch, and is infinitely superior, in beauty and magnificence, to the palace at Pekin or Czchanchumnienne.

The 31st, I had the honour of attending his Majesty when he parted from Jegcholl; and, on this occasion, he had the goodness to ask me, "If I enjoyed my health?" After having answered with all the respect due to so gracious an inquiry, he said to me further, "That he thought he observed some alteration in my countenance, and that I ought to take care of my health." After which he gave me permission to return to Pekin, after having, by the master of the ceremonies, let me know, that, if the caravan had not been so nigh, I should have had the honour of accompanying him to the party of hunting *.

Sep-

* Hunting is the favourite employment of the Tartar pagans. And one may gather the inclination of the

September.

The 3d, I was returned from my Jeg-choll journey, being three days on the road.

The 7th, I sent my interpreter to Kal-channa, to the commissary, with 1500 laen of silver.

The 10th, I acquainted my mandarin, that, as the caravan was at hand, it was most necessary that the house should be repaired, that I might not continue under apprehensions of the merchandise being damaged, for want of sufficient cover, during the rainy autumnal season. But he continually refused me the liberty of getting

the Tartars from the pleasure and assiduity with which the late Emperor of China followed the chace ; nevertheless he mixed much of the politician with his favourite passion ; for going every year a-hunting, escorted by a body of the army, consisting of fifty or sixty thousand men, completely armed, and generally travelling 100 leagues in this manner, this monarch thereby inured his courtiers and his troops to the use of arms, and to fatigues, and prevented their falling into the soft and indolent manner of living peculiar to the Chinese.

wing it repaired of myself, under the promise that he would take care to get it repaired before the arrival of the caravan. But, seeing one day pass after another, and nothing done, I went, on the 15th, to the president, to pray him to give orders for repairing the house, at the least, not to oppose my doing it at my own expence. But his answer was, he would instantly hire the workmen, and it should be repaired in one day. And these promises were daily repeated, as well by my mandarin as by the president, till, at length, the commissary arrived with the caravan at Pekin on the 29th. As it rained very hard during that whole day, the commissary found, at his arrival, that there was no place where he, or any of his people, could be covered from the rain ; and he was obliged to let all the baggage of the caravan remain in the court-yard, without being able to secure one single parcel. As soon as the caravan was entered into my court-yard, they reinforced the guard at the gate, and posted

posted centinels all around the house, to secure us, as they said, against thieves; but, in reality, to prevent our commissary's having any opportunities of trading with any person whatsoever, till such time as they should receive the merchandises, which they might pretend to have occasion for, for his Majesty and the court. Besides which, they ordered two mandarins, with a clerk, to remain in our house, to take good care that no merchandise was sold on credit, and to note down exactly the names of all that should come into, or go out of our house; what goods, and how much, they bought, and at what price.

October.

In the beginning of this month I sent again to the council, on the subject of the repair of our house. Upon which they let me know, the 6th, by a clerk, that the president had sent a courier to his Majesty, to be informed if his Majesty would be pleased to have our house repaired by the treasury,

treasury, or if it was our busines to repair it ; the Emperor, by virtue of the last convention between the two empires, not being obliged to furnish any thing to our people. Whereupon I patiently waited till the

12th. The workmen came at length to make the reparation so often promised ; but it was done so negligently, that, when they made an end, there was little alteration for the better. The commissary employed the rest of this month to unpack the goods, that he might put every thing in order against the time he should be permitted to begin to trade. In the mean while, we were visited very assiduously by four mandarins, who pretended to be deputed from the court to receive the merchandises appropriated for his Majesty, demanding, from the commissary, an exact specification of all the goods brought by the caravan, that they might chuse what was necessary for the service of the court. They were answered, " That they need

VOL. II. T t not

not expect that the commissary would give them a specification of all he had in the caravan ; but that, if they had any orders of the court for us, they ought to produce letters of credit, addressed to me or the commissary ; or, at least, to let us see a specification of the goods wanted, signed by the master of the wardrobe of the Emperor, whereupon they should know if such goods were in the caravan or not." But these gentlemen would not quit their demand so, alledging, "That they must go according to the customs observed in times past, when the commissary of every caravan had been obliged to give such a specification to those deputed by the court to receive the goods from him ; that they did not intend to be served at this time as they had been with former commissaries, when the court got goods of but indifferent quality, after the best goods had been disposed to private persons ; that, to this end, they should be careful to examine all that the commissary had brought, and that they would take what

what they wanted, for the court, out of the best they could find, particularly sables, at three laen per pair, as usual." The commissary, seeing these people pretend to insist on his giving them goods at such an under price, craved from me the protection of the Czar, our common master, alledging, that he had sables which cost him 20 or 30 roubles the pair ; and that it was easy to comprehend what market he should make with the rest of his goods, if he should be obliged to sell the sables at such a losing price. Upon which I made the deputies understand, " That the merchandises of the caravan did not belong to the commissary nor to me, and, in case they did, it was not to be supposed that we should credit them at all, at least without their bringing a specification in form, signed by the person who hath the superintendance of these affairs at court. But that did not signify, they had only to bring their money, and, when the commissary had shown them the goods, he would see if he could agree with them."

them." These gentlemen seemed to take offence at this answer. Nevertheless, they engaged at last to bring such a specification; but they deferred it from one day to another. In the mean time, they made use of all their cunning to prevail on us to deliver them, at an under price, all the goods they thought fit to take.

November.

The 1st of this month, having sent my interpreter to the council, to desire them to admit the commissary to the liberty of trading, they let me know, in answer,

"That it was impossible to do it before the deputies of the court had received the goods they had to receive for his Majesty."

The 4th, I spoke of this affair, not only with my mandarin, but also with the Kientu, or mandarins appointed to our house, to the end that they should dispose those people to give us their specification, in order to end this affair. The same day I went to meet his Majesty, who was returning from

from the hunting, and met him on the 5th, at 80 ly from Pekin, at the hot-baths of Tangzhang. His Majesty told me, "That he had received news from Europe, that his Czarish Majesty had made peace with Sweden, by the mediation of the Roman Emperor." After which he asked me, "How long the caravan had been arrived?" Upon which I answered, "That they were, indeed, since the 29th of September, at Pekin ; but the commissary had not yet got permission to trade." Upon which his Majesty, dismissing me, went to the bath.

I must, on this occasion, acquaint the reader with the custom of this empire, in such circumstances as this of the deputies above mentioned. All the mandarins that are charged with any commission of the court, be it to subjects or foreigners, are named and despatched by the ministry. When such commission is finished, these people are obliged to make presents, not only to the ministers, but also to the princes
of

of the blood, to the end that they may not give them too much trouble, and that they may keep something to themselves. They have no cause to fear that the people, with whom they have to do on these missions, will find access to the ministers, or that ever a serious inquiry will be made into their conduct ; which is so true, that no person will readily undertake to make complaints of their tricks, because there is no reparation to be expected. No person can carry his complaints directly to the Emperor, but they must absolutely be made by the ministers, or those who hold the first office of the palace, or the chamber of his Majesty ; and these gentlemen are so closely linked to the interests of the other great lords of the empire, that, whatever party the sufferer may address himself to, he will certainly remain the dupe of the affair.

The same day, the deputies endeavoured again to get some goods from us, while the specification

specification might be made out ; but their design did not take effect.

The 9th, I spoke again to the mandarins of the council concerning our caravan ; but I could get no other answer, but that this affair regarded the deputies of the court only.

The 14th, when I would have gone out myself to the council, the guard, at our gate, stopped me, under pretext that the four mandarins, deputies from the court, had ordered, that no person should be suffered to go out till the goods, which they ought to have for the court, were first delivered. Though I passed in spite of the guard, I was nevertheless obliged to return without doing any thing, as the president was not in the city.

The 15th, I sent my interpreter to the council to receive the resolution of the president, upon what I had represented the day before ; and as he found him not there, but was told he was at home, he went thither to speak with him, and brought me

me the answer following, "That the president would take care that this affair should be ended out of hand; that, to this end, it was nevertheless necessary, that the commissary should put a reasonable price upon his goods." He desired further my interpreter to tell me, that, at this season, he was rarely at home, because he was obliged to be all day long at Czchan-Zchumnieue attending his Majesty; that, when I should have any affair to propose to him, I should communicate the same, by my interpreter, to the mandarins of the council, who would not fail making him the necessary report immediately.

The 16th, the deputy mandarins having made up, according to their own fancy, a specification of merchandises to be received by them for the provision of his Majesty and the court, they came to present it to us, in order, by means of this imposition, to get a large parcel of goods from us.

But the 17th, this specification being translated into the Russ language, we found that

that the quantity of merchandise which they demanded was much too large to be agreed to. For which reason, it was asked of them, "From whom this specification was sent to us? and who made it out?" Upon which, after many turns and tergiversations, employed to no purpose, they were at length forced to acknowledge that it was of their own forming; it being their opinion, that such a quantity would be wanting for the use of the court. But, in making this avowal, they did not fail to make the commissary apprehend, "That he need not flatter himself with a liberty of trading with any person, before they should receive all that was contained in the specification."

The 18th, the alegada being come to our house to buy some goods, I besought him to remember the promises which his Majesty had been so good to make to Mr de Ismayloff on the subject of freedom of commerce, seeing, that by the course which affairs took at present, it looked as if they

were entirely forgot. But he gave me for an answer to all, "That it was an affair that did not in the least regard him, and that I had none but the council to address myself to *."

The 22d, I sent my interpreter to the council with a memorial on the subject of this affair ; but the mandarins he found there refused to receive it, under the pretext, that they must have before-hand the orders of the president thereupon, and know from him whether they should receive it or not.

The

* In China all is done by the disposition of different colleges, to whose cognizance the affairs may belong ; it not being permitted to address the court directly, upon any affair whatever. In the time of the last Chinese Emperor, these colleges were so absolute, that, on many occasions, the Emperor himself dared not interfere with their decrees ; but, since the Tartar princes have been in possession of the throne of China, they are not much regarded ; witness the exercise of all sorts of foreign religions publicly authorised, and the allowance of a Russian agent at Pekin, agreed to by the sole good pleasure of the Emperor, in opposition to the remonstrances of his ministers, and to the constitution of the government of China.

The same day the four deputies, being come to see us, gave us to understand, "That the usual time of keeping the commissary at home being nigh finished, they were come to commence a trade with him, and to know how much he demanded for each sort of merchandise, to the end that, after they had finished their bargain with him, they might then declare our house free for every body to enter." Whereupon I demanded of them, "Who could have authorised them to shut up, in the manner usual with slaves, for any time, the subjects of so potent a monarch as was the Czar my master?" But these gentlemen, not finding it proper to answer so ticklish a question, contented themselves with saying, "That it would be well for the commissary to resolve to give them the merchandise they required, and that at a reasonable price, unless he would, out of wantonness, involve himself in expences which would much exceed the profit he thought to make by his obstinacy; and that, in the situation

he

he was, being obliged to feed his people at his own expence, he acted directly contrary to his own interests, not to close affairs with them." Thereupon I desired to know, " If they had orders to press us, in so violent a manner, to deliver them the merchandises." Upon which they answered, " No ; and that they were come to deal with the commissary, but that he must let them have the best goods at such prices as the court always paid." The commissary, to make his last effort, offered them merchandises, of the same quality as those which the court had received at other times, without advancing the price ; but that did not close the affair. They went away, saying they would consult together, to see if it was feasible for them to augment the price of the goods above that which the court had always given.

Soon after they came from the council to inquire for my interpreter, to communicate to him the answer of the president concerning my memorial. Upon which I sent

sent him directly with the said memorial, no way doubting, but, after what the president had himself told him, it would be received at once : But, on his return, he acquainted me, that the president had ordered a mandarin to let me know the answer, which I wrote, word for word, from the mouth of my interpreter. " I applied to the allegamba on the subject of the memorial of the agent, and he not only forbid us to receive the said memorial, but also charged me to tell the agent that which he had formerly told Mr de Ismayloff, viz. That commerce is looked upon by us with contempt, and as a very trifling object ; that the agent himself was not ignorant that we had long refused to admit the present caravan, and most certainly should never have consented to its admittance into China, if his Majesty had not suffered himself to be persuaded to it, at the reiterated instances of Mr de Ismayloff." That the allegamba had, at the same time, added these words : " These merchants come here
to

to enrich themselves, not our people, which is easy to be seen, because they pretend themselves to fix the price of their own goods, that they may sell them the dearer. For these reasons, go tell the agent, that we shall not only refuse to receive the said memorial, but that, in future, he need not give himself the trouble of proposing any thing to us that may be relative to commerce, because we will not embarrass ourselves hereafter with the merchants of Russia." Whereupon our confinement continued much the same as before; insomuch, that it was only permitted to the domestics of the first minister, of the president, and a clerk of the wardrobe, to enter our house, which they did very frequently, and, in all appearance, to spy what passed in our quarters, in hopes that we should be obliged, at length, to submit our trade to their discretion.

The 25th, I understood that the brigadier, who, till that time, had the charge of the guard at our house, was restored to the good graces of the Emperor; and that his Majesty

Majesty had made him grand marshall of the court, with the command in chief of the army which this monarch keeps in the country of the Mongalls *. Whereupon I repaired immediately to his house, to pay my compliments ; and having found an opportunity, at the same time, of acquainting him with what had passed regarding the

* The Mongalls are Tartar Pagans, who dwell to the north of China. They are divided into two branches, of which the first is that of the Eastern, or of the Northern Mongalls, or the Nieuchu, who inhabit towards the coasts of the sea of Japan, between the river Amoor and the Grand Wall ; these are the natural subjects of the Tartar house which at present fills the throne of China ; and are the very people, who, in the last century, made themselves masters of the empire of China. They are brought up in extreme gross idolatry, and have in a manner no religion. They, for the greatest part, dwell in towns and villages, and apply themselves to agriculture. The second branch is that of the Western Mongalls, otherwise called Calches. These last are only under the protection of China, without being entirely subjects, having their own proper Chan. They live in tents, and subsist by their cattle, without cultivating their lands. Their religion is the worship of the Delay-Lama.

the four mandarins deputed from the court; he gave me his word that he would go to court that day, to inform himself circumstantially of that affair ; and that, afterwards, he would order them to receive what might be absolutely necessary for his Majesty and the court without further delay. He, at the same time, seemed to be extremely surprised at the conduct of his brother the allegamba on this occasion.

The 27th, the first minister being come to our house, told me, " That he understood the interdict on our house was not taken off, and desired me to acquaint him with the cause of it." Upon which I made answer, " That I had, for a long time, endeavoured to find it out, but I could find no person who would seem to know it. Nevertheless it must, in time, be cleared up, seeing it was a notorious injustice to keep a caravan shut up so long, that came upon the faith of treaties solemnly ratified." He replied thereupon, " That the court, for a long time, resolved to admit no caravans,

vans, because all the merchants, who had traded with the Russes, were reduced to the lowest ebb, by the very great quantity of Russ goods which were at present in China; that it was on the very strong instances which Mr de Ismayloff had made, as well to the court as to the council; offering, for this purpose, that the commissary and his people should subsist, for the future, at their own expence; that, in the end, they had admitted the present caravan; that the commissary, so far from having any regard to these circumstances, refused now to take the usual prices, that had been offered him for the merchandise which the court had occasion for, and insisted on a very high price for them; that he wished I would bring the commissary to reason in this affair, and let him know the result." Upon which I told him, " That I had nothing to do with putting a new price on goods which the commissary had in commission; that it did not depend on me, as it was the commissary who was to account for the goods with which he was entrusted, who would not permit

any other besides himself, who sold them, to set a price ; that, as to what regarded the admission of the caravan, it was stipulated long before Mr de Ismayloff's arrival at Pekin, and there could not the least alteration be made in it, without shaking the foundations of the treaties concluded between the two empires ; and supposing any alteration was to be made, it could not be done but by mutual consent, and after deputies, appointed for this purpose by the two empires, should have examined this affair to the bottom, and made a new plan of convention." This answer seemed to nettle the minister, who broke up the conversation, and ordered the commissary to show him some goods.

December.

The four mandarins, deputed from the court, finding, at length, that we rather chose to have our confinement continue, than to submit to their unreasonable pretensions ; and that, on the other hand,

the

the grand marshall of the court interested himself strongly in our favour, and would absolutely have an end of this affair, the interdict on our house was at last taken off.
And,

The 2d of this month, the council made publication, that it was permitted to all persons to come and trade with us; but they used one piece of chicanery, which hurt us much, and really kept off all the merchants; for, when they perceived the merchants began to resort to our house, they made known to them, "That no person should carry out the least thing, of what they bought at our house, without showing it first to the four mandarins-deputies, to the end that they might take what they found proper for the use of the court." This notification took away from the merchants all desire of trading with us, seeing they were assured of being great sufferers if they were obliged to pass through the hands of these greedy mandarins; which made me acquainted, more than any

ny thing else, with the misery of the pro-
fession of a merchant in China, who are
obliged to depend on the discretion of man-
darins and soldiers, who have none. But
the poyamba or grand marshall of the court,
having been informed of it, had the good-
ness to remedy this new grievance, order-
ing the mandarins not to take any thing
for the use of the court, from any other
person than from the commissary. For this
purpose he sent, at the same time, his stew-
ard with them, to the commissary, to tell
him, " That he came with them, by or-
der of his master, to see how much, and
what sorts of merchandises these gentlemen
would take, to the end that they might
make him an exact report." Whereupon
they were shown the goods ; but they acted
so much upon the reserve, in presence of
this man, that they took in all but a very
middling parcel of goods. Nevertheless,
this did not prevent their repairing every
day to our house, to take from the Chinese
merchants what goods they thought pro-
per,

per. And the more to counteract our trade, the ministry had represented to the Emperor, that there had been brought, during many years, from year to year, into his Majesty's magazines of fur, a much greater quantity of sables than were necessary for the consumption of the court ; and that, as this quantity augmented annually, it was better that his Majesty should order some of them to be sold, than to let them lie and spoil.

The 12th, 13th, and 14th, many Chinese merchants, and other persons from the great houses, and ordinary people of Pekin, having come to our house, ventured to buy some squirrel skins, and other goods of small value, in order to discover the true designs of the mandarins who kept themselves at our house ; they did not oppose them until they had fixed their bargains ; but, when the bargains were concluded, they signified to them that they were not to carry out any of the things they had bought,

bought, till they should choose the best of what they had for the court.

The 15th, as they were apprised at the court and council that we had begun to trade, they published that they would sell, at reasonable prices, 20,000 fables out of the fur-magazines of the Emperor ; whereupon all those who had begun to trade with us went to supply themselves there ; some for fear of the chicanery of the mandarins, others in hopes of buying cheaper there than with us. In short, they sold, by what I could afterwards learn, the best fables at two one-half laen, middling at one one-half laen to one, and the least at 90 fun ; but these were not Siberia fables, but those of the Tonguses *, under the dominions

* The Tonguses are a Pagan people of the north of Asia, who are very probably the descendants of the Tartars. They occupy a great proportion of the eastern parts of Siberia ; and some branches of this people extend themselves even to the southern banks of the river Amoor. The last party of the Tonguses is subject to China ; all the other Tonguses are subjects of Russia. Vide Histoire Genealog. des Tartares.

minions of China, taken about the border of the river Amoor *, of which they furnish annually a quantity to the magazines of his Majesty. The country whence these fables are brought is called Solloni.

The 16th, I was informed, that, notwithstanding the court had consented to a free commerce between the two nations, free of all duties, the mandarins belonging to our house had given the strictest orders to our guard, not to let any the least thing of any kind be brought into our house, without producing a billet from them ; and such a billet cost them 30 zschoffes, which make about four fun. But those who would have free ingress and egress to our house to trade, were obliged, once for all,

* The river Amoor is one of the largest rivers in Asia. It takes its rise in the country of the Mongalls, near the river Selinga, and running from thence eastward, it makes the frontier of these parts, between Eastern Siberia and the Oriental Mongalls ; and, after a course of more than 300 German leagues, it discharges itself into the sea of Japan, in lat. 44 degrees north.

all, to make a fixed agreement with them, either for a certain limited time, or for the whole time we might stay at Pekin ; upon which they received a billet, which entitled them to come into, and go out of our house, as often as they pleased. All those who refused to pay in this manner for the freedom of entry into our house, were sent back, as people who came to our house to borrow, or perhaps steal on occasion.

The 17th, my mandarin being come to see me, I told him, " That I was very glad to learn that the court had also begun to enter into trade, which they had before looked upon as so contemptible a thing with them, that they always reproached us with the little importance of it ; that, since his Majesty had given such authentic marks of the esteem he had for commerce, I hoped that, in time to come, they would speak of it with more circumspection." Whereupon he replied, " That it was not with a view of interest that the Emperor had ordered the sables to be sold that I spoke

spoke of, but that the sale was made purely because, having so great a quantity of them in his magazines, he thought it better to order them to be sold, than that they should lie there till rotten." I thereupon told him, "That if, at the court of his Czarish Majesty, and in his empire, they could make use of all the furs which the country furnished, they would probably see very few of them in China." After which, I demanded of him, "If it was with the knowledge of the Emperor that the mandarins placed at our gate sold, to the people who had business with us, permits of passage in and out, and absolutely denied entrance to our house to those who would not pay for those permits?" I would likewise be informed by him, "What was the meaning that the four mandarins, deputies of the court, were continually in our house?" His answer to which was, "That the Emperor knew nothing of it, nor did any person dare to tell him of it; the alegada having given them leave to sell such

permits, as a small casual profit ; that, as to the mandarin deputies, they were ignorant of the consequence of what they did." Whereupon I told him, at the conclusion, " That I did not comprehend why the ministers were so averse to us in every thing, even to the refusing to see us, or receive our memorials ; that I wished, with all my heart, that they should not carry it so far, as to oblige me to carry my complaints to the person of the Bogdoi-Chan direct ; and further, that I asked nothing but what was conform to treaties, and that, if the treaties were to subsist in their full force between the two empires, there was an absolute necessity to hear what I had to say, and to give such resolutions as they should think proper, upon the memorials which I should, from time to time, present them on the occasion."

The latter end of this month, his Majesty made a tour to Caisa, which is a palace, with a fine park, some lys to the south of Pekin, where he passed some weeks ;

weeks ; which was the occasion that nothing remarkable passed, during this time, between the ministers and me.

January 1722.

The 15th of this month, the guard at our gate refused entrance to some carts of hay which my people had bought, because the peasants had not billets of passage, and they would not give any thing to the soldiers ; and, notwithstanding I sent to advertise the mandarins, and officers who commanded the guard at our gate, of this insolence of the guard, they, notwithstanding, drove away the peasants with their hay. I complained of it to my mandarin, but to little purpose.

The 16th, after having received the news of the perpetual peace, concluded between his Czarish Majesty and the Ottoman Porte, I caused Te Deum to be sung in the church of St Nicolas, and celebrated the rest of the day in festivity.

Februa-

February.

The 2d of this month, and according to custom, I offered some presents to his Majesty on the new year, which is a ceremony that must be observed by every person vested with any public character, unless he would expose himself to a general censure. His Majesty received my little presents very graciously, and presented me, in return, with some of all the sorts of game he had taken at the hunting the last autumn *, and of a good number of sheep ; and it is in this manner that his Majesty is accustomed to regale annually, at the close of the year, those people of his court that he would distinguish.

The 4th, which is the last day of the Chinese year, the court ended the year with a feast, which was very short, because his Majesty was but just recovered from a fit

* The Mongalls, and other Pagan Tartars, have a particular method for drying all sorts of flesh, by the air and the sun, which entirely prevents their perishing; by which means they keep wild-fowl from one year to another.

fit of illness which he had laboured under. On this occasion, I had the honour of sitting over against his Majesty, at some distance from the throne ; and this place is a little below the seat of the Princes of the blood, but above that of the mandarins of the first class. The feast being finished, and his Majesty retired, the master of ceremonies came to tell me, that I might be dispensed with coming the next day, being new year's day, to court, to pay my compliments to his Majesty, seeing it was the custom of the Princes of the blood, and mandarins of the empire, to be all ranged in the court of the castle that day, every one according to his rank, where, as I was a foreigner, I could have no rank.

The 14th, the first minister gave me and the commissary a dinner. On which occasion there passed nothing remarkable, unless that he asked me, " If I was not to return with the caravan ?" Which made me think they had already settled this affair at court, I answered him thereupon,

" That

" That it did not depend on my pleasure to leave the court, where the Czar, my master had sent me to reside, till he should recall me."

The 18th and 19th, his Majesty caused the celebration of the feast of Lanthorns, which had been annually celebrated, at the court of China, for above 2000 years. This feast was solemnized at Czchan-zchumnienne with great magnificence. During the grand entertainment, which was that day at court, they represented all sorts of plays, and other diverting shows ; and, at night, they exhibited grand fire-works ; which, joined to so many illuminations, and to the prodigious quantity of lanthorns, adorned with figures, and diversified with all sorts of colours, caused a surprising agreeable view, during the darkness of the night *. They placed me, on this

occa-

* The Chinese are accustomed to be at very great expence at this festival, in fire-works and in lanthorns, having lanthorns that will cost them 10,000 laen, and upwards. The fire of their rockets are also remarkably beau-

occasion, the same as they did the last time at Pekin, at the distance of some paces from the Emperor's throne.

The 20th, being returned to Pekin, some of the principal of the Korea merchants came to see me; but, when they would have entered my apartment, some of the soldiers who accompanied them opposed it; and they narrowly escaped the lash of the soldiers whips, who had lifted them against those merchants. Upon which I presently ordered them to be kept, by our people, in the court before my house, to wait there till the merchants should go out of my house. And I, at the same time, gave them to understand, that they, for the future, would do wisely not to make use of their whips at my house. After which the merchants indeed entered into my apartment, but dared not make any stay there, for being insulted by the soldiers that escorted

beautiful. The variety and liveliness of their colours surpass the European performances so much, that we are obliged to own they excel us in these performances.

scorted them *. The civility with which I received them, and to which they had not been used with the Chinese, made them have a desire of being more acquainted with me. For they came again on the 22d, before my house, but the guard at the gate refused them entrance.

March.

During this month, we continued our trade, as much as the mandarins and soldiers of our guard would permit. There passed

* The Chinese being accustomed to treat the inhabitants of Korea with great roughness, and having prohibited them all correspondence with foreign nations, it is not to be expected that they should relax their hard treatment of them for the sake of a minister of the court of Russia; which is, as it were, the only power who could support the inhabitants of Korea, if they should ever be desirous of throwing off the Chinese Yoke; seeing that, by the river Amoor, the Russes could fall down into the ports of Korea, without a possibility of the Chinese hindering them. And it is not impossible but this conduct of Mr De Lange might have been one cause of the court of China's sudden resolution of ordering him to leave the country.

passed nothing else remarkable, unless that the commissary having sent a clerk of the caravan towards the deserts to see in what condition the horses were, which were left there in their way to Pekin ; he reported to us, that they were all in very bad plight ; and that, if we did not out of hand send money, that they might be put into stables, there was danger of the greatest part of them dying.

April.

The 6th of this month, I sent my interpreter, at the desire of the commissary, to the mandarins which were placed at our house on account of the caravan, and let them know, that the commissary being obliged to send one of his people with money towards the desert, in order that the people who had the charge of the horses of the caravan should be enabled to put them into stables, he would, for the greater security, have occasion for some soldiers, or some others, to escort this man ; and I pray-

VOL. II.

Z z

ed

ed their care of this affair. Whereupon they returned me answer, that they would make their report to the council ; for, without their orders, they could do nothing in it.

The 7th, two mandarins, accompanied by a clerk, came to bring me an answer from the president on this affair ; and, it being wrote on a sheet of paper, they read the same to me in the following terms :

" The allegamba having been informed yesterday that you wanted to send a message again towards the deserts, could not but imagine that it was for some other business than that of horses, that your people made such frequent journeys between the deserts and Pekin ; this gives him reason to think that, by the help of the Mongalls, you carry on a secret intelligence between this city and Selinginsky, which may give birth to complaints and threats between the two empires ; for he is not ignorant that the Mongalls are a people capable of engaging in such affairs, and
that

that the Russes do not grudge money on such occasions." I asked them thereupon, "Whether this answer was from the allegamba, or whether it was their own composition." Upon which they assured me, that they wrote it, word for word, the same that the allegamba gave them ; and that it was for the same reason he would not consent to the sending the person, as desired.

After this explanation, I thought necessary, for my greater security, to desire them to acquaint the allegamba on my behalf, "That the precaution he took was not right to take, unless with prisoners, or unless he had any intercepted letter to produce, by which he would convict me of having sought to embroil the two empires ; that bearing, as I did, a public character, I might write as often as I pleased, without having any occasion either of the escort or the consent of the president ; and the same, if I had a courier to despatch for my private affairs, as he could not prevent it without

without an open violence." I sent forthwith my interpreter to the council, with the mandarins, to know the determination of this minister. But he sent me word, that he had no desire to employ the horses and the people of the army of the Emperor his master in our service, on journeys which must cause them to be at expences for which they were not furnished by their ordinary pay. Upon which I made him the proposal of being ourselves at the expence of the people for the escort which he should grant us, and that we would also mount them on our own horses, that they might have no occasion for the Emperor's; or, if that was still not satisfactory, I would only demand a passport, and would run the risk of sending one of our own people without an escort. But he continued firm in his denial, and would not allow of one or other of the expedients, contenting himself with letting me know, once for all, "That he would do nothing in it." I learnt, at the same time, from my interpreter,

preter, that they had reasoned among themselves, on this occasion, in much the following manner : “ These foreigners come here with their commerce, to encumber us every moment with a thousand petty affairs, pretending that they ought to be favoured, on all occasions, no more nor less than if they laid an obligation on us ; and yet we are still to receive the first answer from them on the subject of our affairs.”

The 16th, I understood that, some weeks ago, the Tush-du-Chan of the Mongalls *, who

* This is the name of the present Chan of the western Mongalls. This Chan was heretofore sovereign ; but, since the eastern Mongalls have possessed themselves of China, he put himself under the protection of that empire, in order to be the better able to make head against the Kalmucks, with whom they are in a manner at continual war. He is a very powerful prince. His dominions, on the western side, reach to the banks of the great river Yenisey, and even from thence, on the other side of this river, towards the sources of the Oby ; and, on the other side, towards the east, they reach to the great wall. The Chan of the western

who encamped at Urga had brought complaints to the court of the ill conduct of the Russ merchants who came to Urga; and that he had, at the same time, advertised the ministry, that there never had been so great a concourse of Russ and Chinese merchants at his residence, as in this year; that, thereupon his Majesty had taken a resolution to send a mandarin, with orders to the Chan to chase out all the merchants, as well Russes as Chinese, from Urga, without letting it appear that it was done by order of his Majesty, but that it should appear as the proper act of the Tush-du-Chan, as master of his own country.

The same day, a courier, who was lately arrived from Selinginsky, with despatches from the mandarin who resided there, told my interpreter, that the intendant of Selinginsky had tendered several packets of letters

western Mongalls hath a great many petty Chans of this nation for his vassals, and can bring 100,000 men, or more, into the field, all cavalry; but his soldiers fall far short of the Kalmacks soldiery.

ters that came from Russia to this mandarin, in order to be forwarded to the council of the affairs of the Mongals at Pekin ; but he refused to receive them, because the intendant could not acquaint him with their contents.

May.

The 4th of this month, two mandarins of the council, accompanied with three clerks and two officers out of our guard, being come to my apartment at eleven o'clock at night, informed me, that the allegamba, being returned from court, wanted to speak with me on an affair of consequence ; and, because he was employed during the day-time, from morning till night, he prayed me to give myself the trouble of coming to him, though it was late at night. I was a-bed when the message came to me ; however, I made no difficulty of rising, to comply with this minister's desire ; the more, as the mandarins assured me that the business he wanted to speak with me about
was

was a very pressing affair. When I came to his house, I was received with remarkable civility; and the allegainba being come in person to meet me, even to the court, he led me to his apartment, and desired me to sit down by him. He then began to make excuses, that, in so long a time, he had not been able to see me at his own house, or in other places; but that he supposed I was not ignorant that he was obliged to be every day, from morning till night, with his Majesty at Czhan-zchum-nienne. Upon which I replied, that his excuse was unanswerable, and that I commiserated his being obliged to pass his time in so fatiguing a manner. After many other reciprocal compliments of this nature, he demanded of me, "If it was long since I had any news from Selinginsky?" I answered, "That it was some time since I had any." In the end, the affair which he was about discovered itself, by little and little, when he asked me, "If I remembered that when I would lately despatch a messenger

messenger, by Kalchanna, towards the desert, he told me that he could not consent to it, because he apprehended that, by such means, secret correspondence might be carried on, which might bring on some misunderstanding between the two empires." I told him thereupon, " That I did remember that, and the rest of the unexpected answer he then gave me ; but, not having ever been able to guess whence such suspicion could arise, he would infinitely oblige me, if he would please to speak a little more intelligibly on this affair." Whereupon he replied, " We apprehend you have intelligence of our deserters, which you do not think fit to communicate to us *." Thereupon I remonstrated,

" That

* The Tonguses, as well as the Mongalls, and other people of Tartar extraction, who inhabit on the confines of Russia and China, are accustomed to desert very often, by hundreds of families from the lands of one empire to those of the other, according as their caprice or interest prompts them, which is often the subject of altercations between the two empires. In order to remedy these inconveniencies, it was agreed in

" That, if he would please to consider the vast distance between St Petersburgh and Pekin, he would himself judge whether it was possible for the courier despatched on this affair to be returned already, unless he could fly ; that, as to the rest, he himself knew that affairs of such consequence were not the business of a day, and required other things to adjust them than secret correspondence." He shook his head at this answer, because there was then a report current at Pekin, that orders were arrived at Selinginsky, from the Czar, not to restore the deserters before spoken of. Some moments afterwards he asked me, " If I would

com-

in the last treaty, that, for the future, such deserters should not be received by either power, but should honestly be returned to the place from whence they came. From this article the Chinese pretend a right to reproach the Russes with not acting candidly in deferring so long the restitution of 700 families of their subjects, which went over to the Russian territories since the conclusion of this treaty ; and the Russes, on their side, also reclaim a good number of families, and insist on its being equitable to come to a liquidation of their reciprocal pretensions.

communicate to him the news when I should receive my letters?" Upon which I assured him, "That I should conceal nothing from him, whether it regarded him in particular, or regarded the court; seeing such affairs could not be communicated to me but by express orders of the Czar my master; which, whatever desire I might have, I dared not keep secret." This minister, not thinking he had yet sufficient reason to be satisfied, demanded anew of me, "If, when I should receive private letters, I would let him have a copy?" I answered thereupon, "That it was certainly the first time, since the world began, such a proposal was made; but that I could not believe that he spoke in earnest on this occasion, although it was a little too late for raillery." This answer being not altogether such as he hoped for, he changed, for some time, the discourse, by saying, "That he had an intention of telling his Majesty, that the caravan was almost ready to depart, and of receiving, at the same time, his orders with regard

regard to my person." Whereupon I desired him, " To put his Majesty in mind of the affair, on the subject of which I had so often made instances to him." At length he began to talk to me of my stay at Pekin, saying, " That the term which was agreed with Mr De Ismayloff, for my stay at this court, wanted little of being expired." And he made me fully to comprehend that I ought to prepare to return with the caravan. Upon which we disputed together long enough ; and I told him on this occasion, " That, if he would please to remember that I assisted on all the conferences that were held on this subject ; that I had read, and had in my custody, all the correspondence of Mr De Ismayloff, with the council, about his negotiations ; and that I was at all the audiences which his Majesty had granted to that minister, he could not doubt but that what was transacted by Mr De Ismayloff, from his arrival till his departure, was as well known to me as to himself." I further alledged

alleged to him, on this subject, the resolution of the month of February 1721, which he himself sent to Mr De Ismayloff; wherein it was said, "That his Majesty had given his consent to the residence of an agent at his court, without any mention regarding the time, directly or indirectly." But this Lord, notwithstanding he had nothing to answer to what I advanced, held himself strictly to his first decision, that my stay had been agreed to only till the return of the present caravan. And this altercation did not cease till I gave him, for a final answer, "That the Czar, my master, not having ordered me to enter this empire in spite of the court, or to continue to reside in it contrary to the good pleasure of the Bogdoi-Chan, I was obliged to conform myself, on this occasion, to all that his Majesty should think fit to determine in regard to me." After which he showed me a small letter, with an address in the Russ language, saying it came from Naniti Tursoff, interpreter at Selinginsky,
and

and that the Kutuchtu * had sent it to Pekin, that it might be delivered to me. He added, " That he knew very well, that, since the departure of Mr De Ismayloff, I had received a good number of letters, the contents of which I had communicated to nobody ; but, as to this letter, I must determine to open it in his presence, and let him take a copy of it, if I wished to have it ; for, if he could not prevail so far upon me, I should not read it neither, as he would take care to return it whence it came." He gave orders for this purpose to two translators, who were then present, to set themselves by me, and to read the letter at the same time I did. As I had not yet opened the letter, I asked him, " What occasioned a curiosity so unallowable ? and if

he

* The Kutuchtu is an high-priest belonging to the Mongalls and the northern Kalmucks. He was formerly no more than a sub-delegate of the Delay-Lama, in these parts ; but he hath, by degrees, found means to withdraw from the obedience of his master, and to deify himself at the expence of the Delay-Lama.

he did not know that this procedure was directly contrary to the rights of nations?" His answer was, " That he was well enough apprised, that what he did on this occasion was a little irregular; but this letter happening to fall into his hands, he expected that I would not make much difficulty of communicating the contents to him; and that I might determine on the alternative he had proposed." Thereupon I delivered him the letter, sealed as it was, and desired him to reflect seriously on the consequence such an unwarrantable curiosity might produce; and, in the mean time, I should see to what lengths he would carry his authority over my letters. After which, I left him, and retired to my quarters.

The 5th, two mandarins came to me, on his part, to see " If I would not resolve to comply with his will in regard to the said letter?" I charged them to tell him, on my part, " That I always found myself ready to do him all imaginable service which

which he could in honour expect ; but what he desired on this occasion was so unreasonable, that I could not but consider it as an affront which he had an intention wantonly to give me, and that he might depend on being obliged, at a proper time, to give me satisfaction."

The 6th, the two translators above mentioned were commanded to Czchan-zchum-nienne, by order of this minister, which made me think they had proceeded as far as to open my letter ; but I was soon convinced of the contrary ; for

The 7th, a mandarin, accompanied by a clerk, came to bring me the said letter, which had not the least mark of having been opened. He, at the same time, made me a compliment from the allegamba, saying, " That he desired I would conceive no ill opinion of him, upon what had passed between us on the subject of this letter ; in as much as he assured me there was nothing serious on his side in this adventure ; and that he only took the liberty of having a little

little pleasantry with me; not altogether without flattering himself, that I might not be averse to comply with his desire on this occasion. But now, being convinced that I was firmly resolved against this sort of complaisance, to any person whatsoever, he would no longer delay sending me the letter in question; and, at the same time, to assure me of his friendship." After having received the letter, I let him know, in answer, "That I had myself, in the beginning, looked on this affair as a jest; but, finding he pushed it too far, I had been obliged to regard it in another light; seeing I had never looked on the talking in such a manner to be jesting. Nevertheless, that, after the positive assurances that the allegamba gave me, that there was nothing serious on his part of this affair, I ought to consider it in the same light; desiring him, in time to come, to make use of other persons, not of me, for his diversion."

After which, having opened the letter, I found indeed that it was from the said

Tursoff, dated Urga, 20th of April 1732. And, as the mandarin and clerk, who brought the letter, were still in my chamber, when I began to read it, I made my interpreter translate it to them by word of mouth, in the Mongall language, to the end that they might communicate the contents to the allegamba, and know of him if he would grant me a conference on the subject of this affair, or would rather receive from me a memorial thereupon.

The 8th, the same mandarin came to my house, and upon my desiring to know if he had acquitted himself of the commission I gave him the day before, to the allegamba, he answered in the affirmative, and that he was ordered to bring me his answer, which was, "That the Bogdoi-Chap would hear nothing for the future talked of any commerce of the Russes, in his empire, until all the disturbances on the frontiers were entirely adjusted; and as, for this reason, there might continue a long space of time before any caravan might come again to

to Pekin, the Bogdoi-Chan found it proper that the agent should return with the present caravan ; and when the commerce between the two empires should come to be renewed, he should likewise be permitted to return to Pekin." Whereupon I made answer to the allegamba, " That the orders I received from the Czar, were, as he himself well knew, to remain at Pekin till he should recal me ; but, as I was in no condition to oppose the orders of the Bogdoi-Chan, I was obliged to have patience, and to resolve to do what I had no power to avoid doing ; nevertheless, that this was no answer to what I desired to know from him, and that I waited for it with impatience, as I did for a clear explanation upon this precipitate manner of breaking off all commerce and correspondence between the two empires, with waiting for a resolution upon the affairs of the frontiers, and without any declaration of war, or other previous mark of hostility on either side." But the mandarin declined to charge himself

self with such a message, he not thinking it proper for him to repeat such terms as it was couched in to the allegamba, saying, I must either seek an opportunity to tell him myself, or demand a conference, for that purpose, by my interpreter.

The same day, in the afternoon, I sent my interpreter to the council, to acquaint the allegamba, by means of the mandarins he might find there, that I had, the same day, received the orders of the Bogdoi-Chan for my return to Russia; but I had received no answer on his part, upon the affair which was the subject I wanted to confer with him upon; for which reason, if he could not spare time to speak with me himself, he would at least let me know whether he would receive a memorial, on that subject, from me or not.

The 9th, another mandarin came to me, and acquainted me, that the allegamba had been informed of the subject, concerning which I had sent my interpreter to the council the day before; and, as he had not

a moment to spare to confer personally with me; he had sent this same mandarin to me, to whom I might explain myself on what I had to say to him, as the allegamba had given him orders to make him a faithful report of every thing which I should charge him with. Upon which I told him, that I wished he would inform the allegamba that I prayed him to give me, under his hand, a precise answer to the points following, viz.

I. " If the Bogdoi-Chan was disposed, before my departure, to receive and to answer the credentials which I was charged with from his Czarish Majesty ?

II. If any suitable satisfaction was to be expected for the injuries done to his Czarish Majesty's subjects by the Tush-du-Chan, or at least by his orders ?

III. What was the reason that they would not grant a free passage to the letters, addressed to the council and to me, which remained on the frontiers ?

IV. In case the Bogdoi-Chan should persist in the resolution of sending me home, what

what I should say to the Czar, my master, regarding the perpetual peace between the two empires ?

V. Supposing that, contrary to expectation, my departure might be deferred, I desired to know, if, in conformity to the treaties of peace, the Bogdoi-Chan would grant me post-horses for my journey, or whether I must find them myself ?"

The 10th, there came to me a mandarin, from the allegamba, to inform me, " That there was no likelihood that the Bogdoi-Chan would alter his resolution with regard to my departure ; that no person had the boldness to speak again to his Majesty, after he had once explained himself so positively on this affair. But that the allegamba, in his turn, wished to be informed why I demanded so precisely to know the motives of my being sent away ; and why I insisted so strenuously to have a clear explanation of the intentions of the Bogdoi-Chan towards the Czar ; that he did not know whether I durst make such demands, in

in case the Bogdoi-Chan should be pleased to speak personally to me, without my being afraid that he would make complaints of it to the Czar my master." Upon which I returned him as follows, viz. "That it was absolutely necessary for me to be fully informed of what I desired to know ; that, without this being cleared up, I could not well resolve to depart, seeing it appeared evidently, that, since the departure of Mr De Ismayloff, the court had entirely changed its disposition regarding the preservation of the good understanding between the two empires ; that the allegamba himself could not be ignorant how many of his Czarish Majesty's subjects had, immediately after the conclusion of the last treaty of peace, deserted, and come to settle on the lands in the dominions of the Bogdoi-Chan, without the Czar's having shown any resentment to this time, notwithstanding the same was directly contrary to the sense of the treaty ; that the Czar, on this occasion, far from forbidding the subjects of China entrance

entrance into his dominions, had always permitted them, without interruption, to enjoy, in his dominions, an entire liberty; as well in regard to trade as all other affairs which could concern them, not even excepting some of those very defectors, who, having affairs to transact at some places in the Czar's dominions, had been no less welcome than the others, subjects of the Bogdoi-Chan; but now, that 700 of the subjects of China had passed the frontiers, and would establish themselves on the lands belonging to Russia, that would forthwith forbid all commerce, not receive any more letters, and in fine, at one stroke, break off all communication between the two empires; and that without even waiting the answer of the governor-general of Siberia to the letter wrote to him on the subject; which was the only certain means of knowing whether his Czarish Majesty intended to retain these people, or to make them return. That, to conclude, I prayed the allegamba to consider, if it was not much more easy to accommodate

commodate this affair by treating of it with more mildness, than to push it with an haughtiness not to be born with*."

Whereupon the mandarin told me, he could not positively undertake for his daring to say all this to the allegamba ; but that, if a proper occasion offered, he would not fail of doing it faithfully. He told me further, on the part of that minister, that the mandarins, who had been sent last

year

* It is certain, that the judgment of the late Emperor, either from jealousy, or the artifices of some secret enemies, was so altered, with regard to the Russia trade, a little before his death, that there was no other way of adjusting it but the having recourse to arms ; which was fully resolved on, on the part of Russia, when the news of the death of this monarch arrived there, which suspended the execution of this design, till they should see clearly into the designs of his successor. But the death of Peter the Great entirely broke these measures ; so that the affairs between Russia and China are still, at this time, on the same terms they were on the departure of Mr De Lange from Pekin ; and, since the last caravan that left Pekin with him, no caravan hath been sent from Siberia to Pekin.

year by command of the Bogdoi-Chan, to pass the frontiers of Russia, were returned, they not being permitted to proceed on their journey, before the governour-general of Siberia was made acquainted with it; that the allegamba might expect to wait long enough for an answer, as well upon this affair as upon all other affairs which regarded the interest of the two empires, so long as they did not allow of a free passage to the letters written concerning them to the court. I received no more in answer then.

In the mean time, I had made a demand some time ago of the council for a free passage for the caravan by the old road of Kerlinde, (which the former caravans had been used to take), to save them the inconveniencies attending the route by the deserts, where the people and the cattle had much to endure for want of water; and, for this purpose, I sent my interpreter, with a clerk of the caravan, on the 14th, to the council, to know if the Bogdoi-

doi-Chan had given his consent or not. But they told him for answer, " That they expected to have been freed from their importuning the council about their beggarly commerce, after they had been told so often, that the council would not embarrass themselves any more about affairs that were only beneficial to the Russes, and that of course they had only to return by the way they came."

The same day, I sent to the house of the first minister, to know if I could have the honour of seeing him. But he excused himself, saying, that, being far advanced in years, he wanted to be at ease.

Nevertheless I did not refrain going myself the next day, which was the 15th, to his house ; and the guard at the gate suffering me to pass without interruption, I entered directly into the court-yard, and acquainted him with my being there, by one of his servants, desiring he would afford me a quarter of an hour's audience : But he sent me word, " That he was not

at

at leisure to see me, and that, as the affairs about which I would speak to him very probably only regarded the council of foreign affairs, he desired I would address myself to them." I thereupon let him know, by the same domestic, " That I was come to speak with him, as the first minister of the Bogdoi-Chan ; and if I had not had a very pressing occasion of applying to him, he might be sure I would have been very averse to have come to give him trouble ; but that as it concerned us equally, both him and myself, that I should have the honour of seeing him, therefore I was determined not to leave his house without speaking with him." Upon this so precise a declaration, the same domestic returned, a few moments after, and showed me into a grand saloon, well enough furnished after the Chinese manner, where the master of the household of this minister came to present me tea and milk, till his master should come. After I had waited about a quarter of an hour in this apartment, the
allegada

allegada at length came, and desired my excuse, with a number of compliments, after the Chinese manner, that he was not always able to see me when I might require it, because his great age, and multiplicity of affairs with which he was charged, did not permit him. Whereupon, we being both seated, I told him, "That if the affairs which I had to represent to him, regarded only my own person, I should not have ventured to incommod him ; but as they regarded our common masters, and the preservation of a good understanding between the two empires ; or, to say all in two words, peace or war between the two nations, I thought it my duty to seek, before my departure, by every way possible, an opportunity of explaining myself thereupon with him ; that he knew that the free passage of the caravans of Siberia was made, in some degree, an essential point in all the treaties between the two empires ; that he knew, moreover, that Mr De Ismayloff had declared, more than once, that
his

his Czarish Majesty could never allow that they should any more cavil on that article ; that he further knew, that the free trade of the subjects of Russia, at Urga, was positively stipulated by the late treaty, in which they could not make the least alteration, without a manifest violation of the said treaty ; that he knew in fine that it was with the agreement of the Bogdói-Chan, and by virtue of a resolution of the council, in writing, that I remained at Pe-kin, after the departure of Mr De Ismay-loff, in quality of agent, impowered by the Court of Russia, till such time as his Cza-rish Majesty should be pleased to recal me. Notwithstanding which, not regarding such solemn engagements, they had, in regard to this last caravan, treated us so ill, that, if they had been at open war with Russia, they could not have done worse ; that they had kept shut up, during many months, the commissary of the caravan, with all his people, just as if they had been slaves ; that there was no kind of insult to which they

they did not expose those who had a desire to come and trade with our people. And yet more, they had caused the Russ subjects to be shamefully driven out of Urga, who had come to trade there on the faith of public treaties. And, as to what regards myself, they had made me suffer more affronts, on all occasions that offered, than can be imagined ; in the end, not yet satisfied with all those steps, the president of the council had made it be declared to me positively, that there should not absolutely, for the future, any caravan be admitted before the affair of the frontiers should be regulated to the satisfaction of the Bogdoi-Chan ; and, at the same time, caused it to be signified to me, that I must prepare to depart with the caravan, because his Majesty would not suffer me to remain any longer at his court, in the uncertainty that affairs stood in between the two empires. That, if this order regarded me only as a private person, there would be nothing in it which did not depend entirely

on

on the pleasure of the Bogdei-Chan ; but having been once admitted by him to reside at his court, in quality of agent of his Czarish Majesty, it was a maxim, practised by all the civilized nations in the world, not to send away, in a manner so indecent, a person vested with a public character, unless entirely to break off all good understanding with his master. That, if they desired very ardently, as they asserted on all occasions, the restitution of the deserters in question, and an amicable convention in regard to the frontiers, he would permit me to tell him, that it appeared to me they took quite the wrong way to obtain them ; and that the sending me away, so far from facilitating those affairs, was most certainly the greatest obstacle they could think of. That I thought it my duty to remonstrate the foregoing matters at this time that they might still be remedied ; because, after my departure, I did not well see how it would be possible to get out of this embarrassment by amicable means." The minister thereupon

upon answered me, " That it being already so long atime since the Russes had given them the expectation of regulating the affairs of the frontiers, conform to the treaties concluded between the two empires, without their taking the least thought of bringing things to a close, his Majesty had come to a resolution not to admit any caravan before he should be fully satisfied, on the part of Russia, of their adherence to treaties ; and as thereby my residence at his court became quite unnecessary, his Majesty saw nothing that should oblige him to keep me longer in his empire. That, in regard to what passed at Urga, the Tush-du-Chan had good reasons for removing our people from his residence, who had committed great insolencies, noways conform to treaties. That, as to what regarded the ill usage which I pretended the caravan had suffered, he did not well know of what I spoke ; but, as to their being kept shut up a longer time than ordinary, it was our own fault, who would have

made innovations in the trade of the caravans. In fine, in one word, that his Majesty was tired of receiving the law, in his own country, from foreigners, of whom his subjects reaped no profit ; and that, if the court of Russia delayed longer doing him justice, he should be obliged to do it himself, by such ways as he should find most convenient." Upon which I replied, " That I was much surprised to find the Bogdoi-Chan in a disposition so little favourable towards his Czarish Majesty, after he had the goodness to testify himself, on more than one occasion, to Mr De Ismayloff, that he desired nothing more than always to live in a good understanding with the Czar, my master ; and that I could not conceive what caused his change of sentiments so suddenly, with regard to his Czarish Majesty. That if the court of China had restitutions to demand from us, we had the like to expect from them ; and that, in any shape, there was no reason that could in justice oblige us to restore their

their deserters, so long as they retained ours. That if the indulgence of the Czar, my master, in the affair of Albazin *, had raised rash hopes in any persons, who are ill informed of the forces of Russia, and of the monarch who reigns over them, I was persuaded, that, a monarch so enlightened, as was the Bogdoi-Chan, would not suffer himself to be blinded by such delusive appearances ; and that he knew full well how to distinguish an indulgence, arising from magnanimity and esteem, for a prince, his friend and ally, from a forced compliance, grounded on weakness and indolence. That as I had, in my instructions, orders to apply my utmost endeavours for the preservation of the good understanding between the two empires, I thought I might tell

* Albazin was a little town of about 500 or 600 houses, which the Russes had built in a very fertile country, upon the south side of the river Amcor, near the mouth of the river Albazin. But at the end of the year 1715, the Eastern Mongalls, supported by the Chinese, besieged it, and having carried it after a siege of two years, rased it to the ground.

tell him, that I was exceedingly surprised at the proceedings of the Chinese ministry on this occasion ; that he could not be ignorant that it depended only on his Czarish Majesty to finish the war with Sweden, in the most honourable manner ; and that perhaps this peace was actually made at the time I was speaking to him ; after which, I saw nothing that could prevent the Czar, my master, from turning his arms to this side, in case they exercised his patience too much. That I gave him my word, that all the great difficulties which perhaps might be imagined in China to attend such an enterprise, would vanish immediately, if ever his Czarish Majesty should resolve on transporting himself to the frontiers ; for he was a prince that did not suffer himself to be hindered by difficulties, and that they might then have sufficient cause to repent their having despised the friendship of a monarch who was not accustomed to receive offences with impunity, and who was inferior to no monarch in

in the world, neither in grandeur nor power." This discourse was not at all to the allegada's taste ; therefore, after some silence, he demanded of me, " If I was authorised to talk to him in the manner I did ? and if I was not apprehensive of being disavowed by the court of Russia, in case they should make complaint upon the menaces I used to them ?" I thereupon replied to him, " That, in the state to which I saw affairs were brought, I thought it necessary not to disguise any thing to him, to the end that the Bogdoi-Chan, faithfully informed by him, of all he had to consider for and against this affair, might thereby be the better enabled to determine with himself thereupon, in a manner suitable to his great wisdom and justice. That nevertheless it was wrong to take what I had said on this occasion for menaces, seeing they were only mere reflections, which I was desirous he should make on the unhappy consequences which the disdainful conduct they showed, in regard

gard to us, might in time produce; and that I was so little apprehensive of being disavowed by the court of Russia, that I was ready to give him in writing every word I had said to him, and that it would be the greatest service he could render me to speak out of hand concerning it to the Bogdoi-Chan, the more as I was well assured, that if they would give the least attention to the irregular manner in which they had acted in this affair, with a friendly and allied power, they would not fail of comprehending that my intentions were sincere, and only had for its aim the preservation of the harmony between the two empires." The answer of the minister to this was, "That it being his Majesty's custom never to make any resolution, without first well weighing all circumstances, he never changed his measures for any reason whatsoever; and, after what he had declared positively, in regard to the caravan and my person, he had no inclination to propose to him a change of sentiment in

in this regard. That we had nothing to do but to make a beginning in complying with our engagements ; after which they would see what they had to do as to the rest." Upon which I concluded, by telling him, " That the case being so, I saw plainly, that it was in vain, on our side, to use more endeavours for preserving the good understanding between the two empires, as long as they would contribute nothing towards it on their side ; that, therefore, the game must go on, seeing the dice was thrown already. That, however, I had at least the satisfaction of having done my duty in advertising him, as first minister of the Bogdoi-Chan, of the unhappy consequences which would ensue from all this ; and that was the sole reason which made me think it absolutely necessary for me to give him the trouble of this visit." After which, I rose up, and took leave of him. On parting, he re-conducted me to the entrance of the saloon, where he staid till I was mounted on horseback.

The

The same day I was likewise to take leave of the poyamba, or great marshal of the court ; and, after having returned him thanks, which were truly due to him, for all the goodness which he had showed to me ever since I had the honour of being known to him. I profited myself of the present opportunity to represent succinctly to him the same things which I had represented to the alegada. He thereupon assured me, " That he was sorry to see that the success of my negotiations did not answer my wishes. That it was true that the Bogdoi-Chan was very much piqued that he saw there was no end made to the affair of the deserters ; and that he had certain advice that our court had no desire to satisfy him on this article, and that we only sought to protract time : That it was on these considerations that he had been prevailed on by the ministry to order my return. That, for his part, he was astonished to see that our court could hesitate a moment to sacrifice some hundreds of families,

milies, who were in the utmost poverty, to the solid advantages which we might promise ourselves from the friendship which the Bogdoi-Chan had conceived for the person of the Czar my master ; and he made no manner of doubt, but that, if the Czar had been well informed of the justice of the pretensions of the court of China, and the little importance of that affair, he would instantly have given orders for restoring the families reclaimed." I would have had him consider the distance of the places, and that it was in a manner impossible that an answer could have arrived from St Petersburgh on this affair, since the departure of Mr De Ismayloff. But he stopped my mouth by telling me, " That he could not say precisely what the distance was, but he knew very well that, on other occasions, our couriers had made the journey in much less time. That he advised me to do my best in this affair when I should arrive on the frontiers , and that he could assure me, that, when the Bogdoi-

Chan was made easy on this point, he would explain himself very reasonably on all the rest of what we should wish to have done; that, however, as to myself, I had cause to be well satisfied with the sentiments the court entertained of me, and that his Majesty had himself declared, that, in case affairs should come to be accommodated, he would not be sorry to see me return to Pekin."

The 16th, I went to pay my court to the Bogdoi-Chan, upon his departure from Pekin to pass the summer at Jegcholl, but had not the honour of speaking to him at this time; his Majesty letting me know, by the master of the ceremonies, "That he recommended the same thing to me which he had charged Mr De Ismayloff with, to tell his Czarish Majesty*. That, for the rest,

* When Mr De Ismayloff had his audience of leave of the late Emperor of China, this monarch declared expressly that he would permit Mr De Lange to remain at Pekin in quality of agent of the court of Russia, expediting

rest, he wished me a good journey ; and expected that I would not fail to write from the frontiers, in case I should there be informed of any news from Europe."

A little before I received the message from his Majesty, I had an interview with the allegamba, who, after an infinite deal of caressing and flattery, begged of me to labour, as much as possible, to forward the returning their deserters ; at the same time adding, " That the Bogdoi-Chan had great reliance on me in regard to this affair ; in expectation that, according to all appearances, I would not be backward to return soon to China, either on the subject in question,

OR

pecting that Mr De Ismayloff would, on his return, prevail with his Czarish Majesty to send back the deserted families in question ; but, in case that should not be effected instantly, he would not only send away the said agent, but would receive no more caravans, till he should be entirely satisfied on this article. But Mr De Ismayloff, on his arrival at Mosco, found the court so busily employed about the expedition to Persia, that he found no opportunity of getting a final resolution on this affair.

or on the subject of commerce." I assured him thereupon, "That his Czarish Majesty, having subjects in abundance, had at no time the least temptation to keep the vassals of neighbouring powers unjustly." And I promised, at the same time, to write to him, if, at my arrival on the frontiers, I should learn that any resolution was taken on this affair. Afterwards I demanded of him, "For what reason they refused conveyance of the letters which were on the frontiers?" At the same time, I led him to imagine some appearance that those letters bore something relating to their affair. Whereupon he answered me, "That, if it was possible to believe it to be so, he would not make the least difficulty of instantly ordering the letters to be brought hither; but that, if they contained orders for the rendering back their deserters, they would not have failed to communicate the same to the mandarin, who kept himself at Selinginsky purely on that affair."

At length, not seeing any appearance of being able to prolong my stay at Pekin till the

the recall of his Czarish Majesty, I pressed the commissary to neglect nothing that might facilitate his departure as soon as possible ; and thereupon he despatched beforehand,

On the 25th, a part of his baggage for Krasnagora, which is a place, a day's journey without the great wall, appointed for the rendezvous of all the caravan. On this occasion, they did not give a guard of Chinese soldiers to the caravan, as had been formerly practised ; but they had ordered all the towns where they should stop to give them guards ; besides which, there was a bonska or courier of the council of the affairs of the Mongals ordered to attend the baggage, who was not to leave them without a new order.

Jane.

The 6th, a mandarin, named Tulishin, let me know that, having received orders from the Bogdoi-Chan to accompany me to Selinginsky, and to furnish provisions and

and post-horses on the road, he would be glad to be informed when I thought I should be ready to depart, that he might take his measures accordingly, and despatch, in good time, the couriers necessary for the deserts, to make the requisite dispositions for my passage.

The 8th, the commissary went to the council, to demand a guard for the caravan ; but they granted none ; acquainting him, at the same time, that the Mandarin Tulishin was also charged with the care of the caravan ; and that, as he would be obliged frequently to leave the route of the caravan, for providing victuals and horses which I should have occasion for on my journey, he was to have with him a clerk and two couriers under his command, who were not to leave the caravan before they should safely arrive at Selinginsky.

The same day, 36 carriages were despatched, laden with merchandise, for the place of rendezvous, without any other escort

escort than some of our own people, and a courier of the council.

The 16th, the allegamba invited me to come to him at the palace of the Bogdoi-Chan ; and, when I arrived, he presented me with two pieces of damask on the part of the Chan ; telling me, " That his Majesty having received presents from me on the entrance of the new year, he was pleased, in his turn, to make me a present of these two pieces of damask." I received this present with all due respect ; assuring this minister that I should eternally cherish the remembrance of all the gracious favours which the Bogdoi-Chan had deigned to honour me with during my residence in his empire ; and that, in whatever place I should be in time to come, I would never fail of making it a subject of particular glory to me.

July.

The 4th, the allegathba sent a mandarin to me, to show me a letter, which he had very

very lately received from the mandarin who resided at Selinginsky, in which he made heavy complaints of the chicaneries that he was forced to bear with, during his residence in that place, as well from the officers of his Czarish Majesty, as the other inhabitants of that city ; adding, " That every body demanded of him perpetually the reason why he tarried there so long, and if he did not intend soon to return home ? That thereupon, having demanded of them, if they had come to any resolution on the affair which was the cause of his being there, they had answered him, that they had no other orders but to conduct him back, with all civility, when he should think proper to return." He related, besides, in this letter, " That the allowance they gave him, for the subsistence of himself and retinue was so very scanty, that, if he had not had of his own money wherewithal to supply himself, he should have been reduced to great extremities. They had, besides, pressed him very hard

on

on the subject of the letters, for the council and for me, that were arrived on the frontiers ; and they would, by force, know of him the reason why he refused to receive the letters, and to forward them to Pekin ; but that he had always answered them, that, his sole errand to Selinginsky being on the affair of the deserters, he could not charge himself, either with letters, or any other affair whatsoever." After the mandarin had explained to me the contents of this letter, he told me, that the allegamba demanded to know of me, " Whether it was possible that all this could be done by order of his Czarish Majesty ?" I let him know, in answer, " That, if he had formed ideas of the person of the Czar my master, by those passages, he would do well entirely to efface them ; for that, as his Czarish Majesty was more magnanimous than to treat, in the manner there laid down, even prisoners of war in his dominions, he would certainly not begin so bad a practice with the subjects of an empire

in amity with him, who came into his country." I added, that, notwithstanding I had reason to complain of things of more consequence than this mandarin, I was nevertheless so far from approving the want of complaisance used towards him, that, if the allegamba thought fit to give me a copy of that letter, I was ready to take charge of it, and to make it my business that the Czar my master should be acquainted with it. But, with regard to the orders which this mandarin hinted he was charged with, not to receive any letters, though even for the council itself, before he should receive the deserters in question, I could not help observing that such a procedure bespoke much coolness on their side.

The 8th, the allegamba sent to me, in the evening, a mandarin, who told me, after making me a compliment from him, that he would be the next day at the council; and that, if I had time to come there likewise, he would explain the reasons which determined the court to resolve on my

my return ; and that he would give me the same in writing. Upon which I told him, I should come there with great pleasure, that I might be informed of them.

The 9th, having notice that the alle-gamba was already arrived at the council, I forthwith mounted on horseback to go there also. He came in person to receive me at the door, and desired me to place myself at a little table with him. After which he gave me to understand, “ That it were to be wished that my residence at that court might continue longer, as the Bogdoi-Chan himself, and all the ministry in general, were so well satisfied with the conduct I had observed during my residence, that they had nothing to say against my person ; that they had remarked, with much satisfaction, that, by the good order I had kept, the present caravan had begun and finished its commerce, without producing the least dispute between the merchants of the two nations *. It had also formerly been

* The Chinese usually bought, from the caravan, goods

been too usual to see the servants and people of the caravan do numberless insolencies in the streets, and commit all sorts of excesses; but that, for this time, they could not without surprise observe that nothing of this sort had appeared; but that every thing passed with all desirable decency*."

After

goods on credit, for which, at the time when due, they could not pay; which occasioned very frequent disputes between the two nations. To remedy this, the court of Pekin had been accustomed to put into the hands of the commissary, at his departure, all those who could not pay what they were indebted to the caravan, in order that he might compel them to pay as they best could. In which cases, the commissaries had frequently committed great abuses, and treated the poor Chinese, whom they had in their custody, in the most barbarous manner; which very much disgusted the people of Pekin, and rendered them very averse to trading with the Russian caravans.

* The excesses committed by those of the caravan, had been but too frequent till this time; and the commissaries, in place of redressing those disorders, had been very often themselves the authors of them, without giving themselves the trouble of making the least satisfaction for them to the Chinese, notwithstanding the

After I had paid this compliment by another, I told him, "That it was with intention of maintaining the like good order that his Czarish Majesty sent me to China; and that it would be owing to themselves, if things, for the future, should not be carried on in the same order, and if any other petty incidents did not come to an accommodation with the like ease." After which, I prayed him to let me know the true source of the disorders which happened at Urga, between the subjects of the Czar, my master, and the Mongalls; and "wherefore they obliged the Russia-merchants to leave that place before they had finished their trade." He answered me thereupon, "That it was done by orders of the Tush-du-Chan and his council, as supreme

the great complaints to the Russian ministers thereupon on many occasions. In all appearance, what contributed principally to the good order observed by the Russ-servants of this caravan, was their not getting brandy at free cost, as they did when the Chinese furnished the subsistence for the caravan.

supreme judges in their country." Upon which I demanded of him, " Whether the Tush-du-Chan was a sovereign prince of the Mongalls, or a subject of the Emperor of China?" He replied, " That, in truth, the Chan was a vassal of the Bogdoi-Chan's; but that did not hinder his being master in his own country *." I then prayed him to tell me, " Whether the Tush-du-Chan was obliged to conform himself to the engagement stipulated by treaty between the two empires, to the end, that I might know if we ought to address

the

* Though the Chan of the Western Mongalls is tributary to the Chinese, they have nevertheless a great regard for him at the court of China; the more as he is a very powerful Prince; and that, in case of a revolt in China, it is from him that the present Imperial House is to expect the greatest assistance; his subjects being beyond comparison much better soldiers than the Mongall Chinese; insomuch, that if they should be disengaged, and should join themselves to the Kalmucks, or to the Russes, nothing could prevent his entrance into China when he pleased, and probably bring about another revolution.

the court at Pekin, on the subject of satisfaction we had to demand on that affair ? or were to take it of the Tush-du-Chan? as it was not to be expected that affair would be let pass without an exact inquiry. That, for my part, I thought the best means of terminating that affair amicably, was, that they should order the mandarin, who was to accompany me on the journey, to go with me to Urga, in our way to Selenginsky ; to the end, that, after having full information of this affair, I might be able to send a circumstantial account of it to our ministry." But he answered me thereupon in these terms ; " With us no judge, who hath given a just sentence, can be made responsible for his judgment, was he no more than a mere clerk. Your people who were at Urga have affronted the lamas, as well by words as deeds ; and they have, moreover, attempted to carry off some Mongal^t families from those quarters. It is for this reason that the Tush-du-Chan was in the right to remove them from his territories."

I answered him thereupon, " That this judge ought most certainly to render account of his judgment, because he had judged people who were no manner of way under his jurisdiction. But he would have acted with justice if, after having sent the culpable to Selinginsky, he had prosecuted for satisfaction at that place. Whereas, now that he hath punished the innocent equally with the guilty, and hath infringed the treaty of peace in so essential an article, his judgment cannot be regarded but as a manifest act of violence." The allegamba, finding me insist so strenuously for an inquiry into this affair, smiling, told me, " Mr agent, you do well to make so much work about this affair ; but I do not know how to explain myself more precisely upon it at present ; all that I can say to you is, that all of it will be easily accommodated when we shall receive a satisfactory answer upon the affair of our deserters." After which he presented me with a writing, which he said had been drawn up by order
of

of the Bogdoi-Chan, to serve for my information regarding the reasons of my being sent away. Upon which we again entered into dispute together; but as these gentlemen, on these occasions, hold themselves strictly tied down to a single word, whether essential to the affair they are upon or not, it was impossible for me to draw from him any other answer, than that they had not designed to grant my remaining at Pekin longer than the time of the present caravan; and that, when the affair of the frontiers should be accommodated, they would not be wanting to give a definitive resolution, as well upon this article, as upon the other propositions which Mr De Ismayloff had made to the court. He afterwards presented to me a letter, saying it was written by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, to Prince Cherkasky, governour-general of Siberia *;

VOL. II. 3 G but,

* The Prince Cherkasky, governour-general of Siberia, was recalled by the court of Russia, in the year 1722, upon his own solicitations; and they afterwards sent thither a person in quality of vice-governour, who remains there still.

but, I having refused to receive the said letter, it displeased him a little, and made him say, " That it was hardly civil in me to refuse a letter, which the Emperor, his master, had ordered to be written, and to be put into my hands." I answered thereupon, " That I would not chuse to do what I did on this occasion, if the letters which the said Prince Cherkasky, in quality of governour-general of Siberia, had written to the council, were not likewise written by the order of the Czar, my master. That he could give this letter to the mandarin, who was to accompany me to Selinginsky, with orders to receive the letters for the court which were lying there; and that being done, I should not then make the least difficulty to receive the said letter." He declared to me afterwards, that it was the pleasure of the Bogdoi-Chan that I should take Jegcholl in my way, to have my audience of leave of his Majesty. And again resuming the article of the letter from the court for the Prince Cherkasky, he told me,

" That

" That what I had done on this occasion was not altogether so right ; seeing it was not allowed to any person, when in China, to oppose themselves to the will of the Emperor." Upon which I answered him, " That I was persuaded his Majesty would put a different construction on this affair, from what he did." But that I wished, in my turn, to know from him, " Upon what he grounded his suspicions, when he refused us, the last spring, the passage to the deserts for some of our people, whom we would have sent with money to provide subsistence for our horses ; and that, under the pretext, that by such expeditions secret correspondence might be carried on, which might produce misunderstandings between the two empires." Thereupon he said, " That in reality he had no such suspicions ; but that he would willingly prevent the disorders which might have happened on the journey of these people ; seeing, that if they had been robbed, or assassinated on the road, we would not have failed to demand

mand satisfaction from the court." Thereupon I put him in mind, " That he was now brought to explain himself ; that it was not to hinder secret correspondence that he refused us passage, and that he might very well have spared himself that useless precaution, as to what regarded us, which had caused an expence of some thousands of laen, for not being able to put our horses into stables, to which purpose the money we wanted to send to the deserts was appropriated ; and had occasioned the death of a great many horses ; and even those that survived were in such a miserable condition, that they were by no means capable of serving in the waggons ; which obliged our commissary to transport the greatest part of his baggage to Selingsky by carriages hired at Pekin, which could not be done but at a very considerable charge." This answer made him a little thoughtful ; but at length he replied to me, " That he did not say so ; but, be it so or not, we must now part good friends ;

to

to which end he prayed me to have no ill-will towards him upon account of the liberty he had taken to trifle and to jest with me on the subject of the letter from Tursoff ; that he could assure me he had no ill intention on that occasion ; and hoped that I would be satisfied with this explanation, and not think otherwise of that affair, in time to come, than as a piece of innocent raillery." To which I answered him, " That, as to what regarded myself in particular, he might depend that I should absolutely think no more of it ; but, for the rest, I could not do in it according to my own pleasure." Whereupon he asked me, if, at my return to Russia, I should be obliged to give a relation in writing to our ministry, of every thing that passed during my residence in China, in regard to my negociations ; and having answered him yes, he said to me, that, in this case, I would do well not to insert a number of trifling things, which could answer no good end, but might embroil matters more ; for that

that it was much better that a good understanding between the two empires should continue, than that differences between them should be widened. I replied thereupon, that, not having been sent to the court of Pekin as an instrument for creating misunderstandings, I would make it my business, in my relation, not to touch upon any things but such as was necessary for our court to be informed of. After which we both rose up, and having mutually embraced, we took leave of each other, reciprocally wishing to meet soon again.

The 12th, the commissary having left Pekin, with all the rest of the caravan, I likewise departed for Jegcholl, where I arrived on the 15th; and having forthwith made known my arrival to the chamberlain of the Chan, he let me know he would instantly inform his Majesty; and, till he should receive his orders for appointing the day of my audience, the intendant of his Majesty's kitchen would take care that my table

table should be furnished with every thing I might have occasion for.

The 17th, I had my audience of leave of the Bogdoi-Chan, with the ceremonies usual at this court.

The 18th, I left Jegcholl, and met the caravan the 24th; which being still within the Great Wall, I passed it, the 26th, with the caravan, which I left, on the 28th, near Krasna-gora in the deserts. And, on the 26th of August 1722, I arrived at Selingsky, after having resided near seventeen months at the court of China.

A SUC-

A

S U C C I N C T R E L A T I O N
O P M Y
J O U R N E Y
T O
D E R B E N T
I N
P E R S I A,
W I T H
T H E A R M Y O F R U S S I A
C O M M A N D E D B Y
H I S I M P E R I A L M A J E S T Y
P E T E R T H E F I R S T,
I N T H E Y E A R D . D C C . X X I I .

VOL. II.

3 H

A

A

S U C C I N C T R E L A T I O N

O F M Y

J O U R N E Y

T O

D E R B E N T.

U PON my return with the embassy from Pekin, as hath been formerly mentioned, I found his Imperial Majesty, all the court, the general officers, and the nobility and gentry, from all the empire, assembled at Mosco ; and great preparations making, at that city, for the celebration of the festivals, appointed to be solemnized there, on account of the peace, concluded at Aland in 1721, between Russia and Sweden,

den, after a war which had lasted more than twenty years.

These festivals were accompanied with masquerades, grand fire-works, balls, assemblies, &c. the detail of which, though it would swell this work to too large a bulk, yet I think it will not be unacceptable to the reader, briefly to relate one part of it, I mean the magnificent shows exhibited on this occasion ; which I am induced to by the consideration, which at that time struck me, of Peter the Great his having always in view, even in his amusements, and times of diversion, all possible means of influencing his people to a liking of whatever tended to promote the good of his empire.

The Russians, in general, had a strong aversion to shipping and maritime affairs. In order to apprise them of the great advantages arising from a marine force, in his triumphant entry into Mosco, he represented to his people that the peace, the rejoicings for which were now celebrating, was

was obtained by means of his naval strength.

The triumphant entry was made from a village, about seven miles from Mosco, called Seswedsky.

The first of the cavalcade was a galley, finely carved and gilt, in which the rowers plied their oars as on the water. The galley was commanded by the high admiral of Russia. Then came a frigate, of 16 small brass guns, with three masts, completely rigged, manned with twelve or fourteen youths, habited like Dutch skippers, in black velvet, who trimmed the sails, and performed all the manœuvres as of a ship at sea. Then came most richly decorated barges, wherein sat the Empress and the ladies of the court. There were also pilot-boats, heaving the lead, and above thirty other vessels, pinnaces, wherries, &c. each filled with masqueraders in the dresses of different nations. It was in the month of February, at which time all the ground was covered with snow, and all the

the rivers frozen. All these machines were placed on sledges, and were drawn by horses through all the principal streets of Mosco. The ship required above forty horses to draw it. In order to its passing under the gates, the top-masts were struck, and, when passed, set up again; besides which, the gate-way was dug as low as was necessary for admitting it to pass.

These festivals being ended, his Imperial Majesty prepared to undertake an expedition into Persia, at the earnest request of Shach Houssein, the Sophy of Persia, in order to assist that prince against the Affghans, his rebellious subjects, who, under the conduct, first, of Myrvais, afterwards, of Myr Mahmut, had not only seized upon the city and strong fortress Chandahar, but also had possessed themselves of several provinces on the frontiers towards India, making frequent incursions towards the capital of Ispahan. As I had formerly been at the court of Persia, I was engaged by

by my friend Doctor Blumentrost, his Majesty's chief physician, to accompany him in that expedition.

Accordingly, about the beginning of May 1722, all things necessary being in readiness, the troops embarked at Mosco, on board of half gallies, built for that purpose, and fell down the river to Kolumna; near which town the Mosco river falls into the Oka, about ninety versts from the city of Mosco. Kolumna was the place of rendezvous, and where the troops waited till the arrival of his Imperial Majesty and the Empress, his consort, who accompanied him in this expedition.

May 13th, their Majesties, and all those of the court who were appointed to attend them in this expedition, set out from Mosco by land, and arrived the next day at Kolumna.

The 15th, his Majesty employed himself in reviewing the troops, in inspecting the condition of the fleet, and in giving the necessary orders. The fleet consisted of

of about three hundred sail of vessels, of all sorts, on board of which were about fifteen thousand regular troops, including half the guards.

The 16th, in the evening, his Majesty and the Empress, attended by a few ladies, went on board a magnificent galley, of forty oars, with all proper accommodations, built on purpose for the voyage.

The 17th, at break of day, the signal was given, by firing three great guns from his Majesty's galley, for the fleet to get under sail. The galley led the way, and all the rest of the fleet followed in a line. His Majesty's galley carried the standard of Russia, the other vessels their ensigns displayed, with drums beating, and music playing, which altogether made an appearance, perhaps not to be equalled in any other country. In about an hour's time we came into the river Oka, where the vessels had more room to spread.

Having, in my former journey to Persia,

fia, mentioned the several places from hence to Astrachan, I need not repeat them here.

I have formerly noted, that, at this season of the year, the rivers of these parts may, in some measure, be compared to the Nile; for, from the melting of the snow, they overflow all the flat grounds adjacent to a very great distance.

The 21st, some of our people going ashore, to take leave of their friends, did not return on board till late in the evening, which caused our being at some distance behind the fleet; upon which we used our best efforts to regain our station: But, in the night, our pilot falling asleep, the bark drove out of the channel of the river into a wood. I, being in the cabin, heard a great noise upon deck, not unusual on such occasions: At last I perceived the vessel to strike against something; when, coming upon deck, I was not a little surprised to see the people climbing up trees; for the bark was jambed in between two birch-trees of very large size. All our en-

deavours could neither move her backwards nor forwards, until we got people from a neighbouring village, by whose assistance we got her warped off with little damage; which being repaired, we proceeded again on our voyage.

The 25th, we came up with the fleet at the town Nishna-Novogorod, where their Majesties and all the court were most sumptuously entertained at the house of Baron Strogonoff. We staid here some days to take in provisions and other necessaries.

The 30th, being his Majesty's birth-day, the same was solemnized, in the usual manner, by firing guns, &c.

The 31st, his Majesty sailed in his galley for Cazan, escorted by some of the small gallies, leaving the rest of the fleet under the command of the Lord High Admiral Apraxin.

June 5th, we left Nishna-Novogorod, and, in fine calm weather, proceeded down the Volga.

The

The 8th, we arrived at the city of Ca-zan ; the Emperor had left that place the preceding day.

The 9th, we again proceeded on our voyage.

The 20th, we arrived at the town of Saratoff. Nothing very material occurred by the way, in which we were sometimes detained by strong gales of southerly winds, and by calms, during which we were incommoded by infinite numbers of musquitoes.

At this place we came up with the Emperor, who had appointed an interview with the Ayuka-Chan, King of the Kal-mucks. The Chan, for that purpose, had his tents pitched on the east banks of the Volga, not far from the river.

Next day, his Majesty invited the Ayu-ka-Chan and his Queen to dinner on board the galley ; which, for the accommodation of the royal guests in getting on board, was brought as near the shore as possible,
and

and a gallery made from the shore to the galley, for them to walk on.

The Ayuka-Chan came on horseback, attended by two of the princes his sons, and escorted by a troop of about fifty of his officers and great men, all exceedingly well mounted. About twenty yards from the shore, the King alighted from his horse, and was received by a privy-counsellor and an officer of the guards. When the Emperor saw him advancing, he went on shore, saluted him, and taking him by the hand, conducted him on board the galley, where he introduced him to the Empress, who was seated on the quarter-deck, under a very rich awning.

Soon after the Ayuka-Chan was got on board the galley, the Queen arrived on the shore, in a covered wheel-machine, attended by one of the princesses, her daughter, and two ladies, who were also escorted by a troop of horsemen. When she was alighted, the Emperor went on shore to receive

ceive her, and, conducting her on board, introduced her to the Empress.

The Ayuka-Chan is an old man, about seventy years of age, yet is hearty and cheerful. He is a prince of great wisdom, and prudent conduct ; is much respected by all his neighbours for his sincerity and plain dealing. And I recollect that, when I was at Pekin, the Emperor of China made very honourable mention of him. By his long experience, he is very well acquainted with the state of affairs in the east.

The Queen was about fifty years old, of a decent and cheerful deportment. The ladies, her attendants, were young. The princess, in particular, hath a fine complexion ; her hair a jet black, which was disposed in tresses round her shoulders ; and she was, in the eyes of the Kalmucks, a complete beauty. They were all richly dressed in long robes of Persian brocade, with little round caps, on the upper part of their heads, bordered with sable-fur, according to the fashion of the country.

The

The Emperor intimated to the Ayuka-Chan, that he would be desirous of ten thousand of his troops to accompany him into Persia. The King of the Kalmucks replied, that ten thousand were at the Emperor's service, but that he thought one half of that number would be more than sufficient to answer all his purposes ; and immediately gave orders for five thousand to march directly, and join the Emperor at Terky.

Both the Emperor and Empress were highly pleased with their guests, and, in the evening, dismissed them, with suitable presents. The Empress gave the Queen a gold repeating-watch, set with diamonds, which seemed very much to take her fancy, besides some pieces of brocade, and other silks of value.

It is well worth remarking, that this treaty between two mighty monarchs was begun, carried on, and concluded, in less space of time than is usually employed, by the

the plenipotentiaries of our western European monarchs, in taking a dinner.

The 22d, we left Saratoff, and sailed down the river Volga, with a fair wind.

The 23d, in the evening, we came to the town of Kamoshinka, where we remained till the next morning.

The 28th, we came to the town of Zaritzina ; and the 30th, to another town called Tzorno-yarr.

July 4th, we arrived at the city of Astrachan. Little remarkable occurred during the voyage. We were sometimes detained by contrary winds ; and, for the most part of the way, were much incommoded by muskitoes, which plagued us much in the day-time, and interrupted our rest during the night.

The 5th, the weather being excessive hot, the Emperor quitted his house in the city, and went to lodge in one of the adjacent vineyards.

The 6th, the dragoons, whom we found encamped on the west bank of the Volga,
to

to the number of five thousand, were ordered to march directly to Terky, there to wait the Emperor's arrival.

The 8th, the Lord High Admiral Aptassin arrived with the fleet and troops on board. The next day the troops encamped on one of the islands in the neighbourhood.

During our stay at Astrachan, nothing of moment occurred.

The 16th, all the necessary preparations being completed, the troops re-imbarked, and lay on board that night.

The 17th, the Emperor, Empress, and all the court, went on board; and, the wind being fair, sailed down the river; drums beating, and music playing. The fleet was in several divisions, under their respective chiefs; and, being joined by a number of large transports, and other vessels, made a very grand appearance, such as had never been seen before in this part of the world, nor frequently in any other.

The

The 18th, the wind being contrary, we made but slow progress. In the evening it fell calm ; all the shoals being covered with high reeds, contributed to increase the innumerable quantity of muskitoes with which we were intollerably pestered.

The 19th, we got out of the river Volga into the Caspian Sea. The wind being contrary, the heavy transports were warped out as far as possible, to get out of the reach of those troublesome insects. At night we came to an anchor, in eight feet water, near a flat island called Tuleny-Lapata.

The 20th, we continued warping out the whole day. At night, we came to an anchor, near the four sandy hillocks called Tzateerey-Buggory.

The 21st, at break of day, the Admiral made signal for sailing ; the fleet got under sail, and put out to sea, with a fair wind.

The Emperor, accompanied with the half-gallies, on board which were the troops, steered to the west, close under the shore. But I being on board one of the

VOL. II. 3 K large

large ships, we kept the sea, and steered a direct course for Terky. It is to be observed that the Emperor and the gallies took their course to avoid being liable to be surprised with a gale of wind at sea, which might have been attended with bad consequences.

The 22d, we came into salt-water, four fathoms deep, out of sight of land, and also of the gallies.

The 23d, we had calms, and easy breezes at north-west.

The 24th, in the evening, we came to an anchor in the road of Terky.

The 25th, the Emperor, and all the gallies arrived safe.

The 26th, the Emperor went ashore; and, having visited the town and fortifications, returned on board in the evening.

The town of Terky is a frontier strongly situated by nature, being encompassed by a deep marshy ground, having only one entrance to it, on the land-side, which is well defended by batteries. It takes its name from

from a small rivulet running by it, called Terk. It is governed by a commandant, and hath a garrison of about one thousand men, of regular troops and cossacks, and is at all times well stored with ammunition and provisions. This place is of singular use for keeping the Tzercaffian mountaineers in order, who are well known to be an unruly and restless people. I shall hereafter have occasion to speak more of this nation.

The same day, the Emperor sent an officer to the Aldiggerey, commonly called Shaffkal, to notify his arrival in these parts. The Shaffkal is a prince of considerable authority among the mountaineers, and a friend to the Russians.

The 27th, the fleet weighed anchor, and sailed, south by east, to the bay of Agrachan, so called from a river of that name. In the evening, we anchored in the bay, as near the shore as we judged convenient.

The 28th, the Imperial standard was set up on the shore; all the troops landed and encamped.

encamped. The same day, a ~~coffack~~ arrived in the camp with despatches from General Veteranie, who commanded a body of dragoons, giving an account that, in his march, he was attacked by a strong party of mountaineers, near the town called Andrea ; that, after a smart dispute, in which several of each side had been killed, and some wounded, he at last dispersed them, and took possession of the town. These people having previously sent all their families and effects to some distance in the mountains, it seems this rash attempt of these mountaineers was premeditated ; for the General demanded nothing but a free passage through the country, and engaged to leave them unmolested. The place itself is of no defence, though they had barricadoed the streets and avenues leading to it. The poor people felt to their cost the effects of attacking regular troops, of which they had never seen any before. However, this was a certain proof of the boldness of these people. Several of them

were

were brought prisoners to the camp ; they were strong able-bodied men, fit for any service.

The Emperor, before he left Astrachan, had sent manifestos to all the petty princes and chiefs of Daghestan, declaring, that he did not come to invade or make war against them ; that he only desired a free passage through their territories, and would pay ready money for what provisions, or other necessaries, they might furnish, and that to the full value ; to which some of them agreed, others of them did not. Such is often the case with free independent states, as are those of the Daghestan.

The 29th and 30th were spent in landing the provisions, artillery, &c. after which the whole army and baggage were transported, on boats and rafts, to the east bank of the river Agrachan. This proved a work of labour, there being no woods at hand to make a bridge, nor water enough, at the mouth of the river, to admit our

half-

half-gallies, which were designed for the bridge.

The army being transported over, and encamped on the other side of the river, the Emperor made a plan, and ordered a small fortress to be raised ; he named it Agachan, from the river on which it was built. This place was intended to keep such stores as we could not conveniently carry along with us, and as a place of retreat, in case of unforeseen accidents.

August 2d, the chief named Aldiggery came to pay his respects to the Emperor, who gave him a gracious reception, as he did to several other chiefs, of less note, who came in a friendly manner. The Aldigge-rey was accompanied by a small troop of his principal officers ; most of them were handsome young fellows, very well mounted. After this chief had staid some hours, and settled matters relating to the march, he took his leave.

In the mean time, the soldiers were employed in raising the works of the fortres ; and

and ten thousand Cossacks arrived from the river Don, all horsemen, under command of Krasnotzokin and other chiefs; and also the five thousand Kalmucks, sent by the Ayuka-Chan, according to agreement, as formerly mentioned. They were all well mounted, and had many spare horses, which were of great use. They all encamped in the plain towards the mountains.

The troops being now all assembled, we only waited for the carriages which the Aldiggerey had engaged to furnish for the artillery and baggage.

During this interval, our great leader, the Emperor, was not idle, but daily on horseback, reviewing the army, which was now increased to more than thirty thousand combatants, including the Cossacks and Kalmucks; a number sufficient to have conquered all Persia, had it been intended. Besides the army which were then assembled, the Aldiggerey made a tender to the Emperor of a considerable body of his troops,

troops, which the Emperor declined the acceptance of.

At length, about three hundred waggons arrived at the camp, drawn by two oxen each ; but their harnessing not being such as we were used to, we were not a little embarrassed in setting them a-going.

About the middle of August, the army was put in motion, and marched, in several columns, from Agrachan ; leaving there a force sufficient to complete the works, and garrison the place. In the evening, we encamped at a brook of brackish and muddy water. This day our road lay about equal distance between the sea and the Tzercaßian mountains, commonly called Daggestan.

Next morning we decamped, marched along the valley towards the mountains, and, at night, came to another brook of bad water, where was a little wood of oaks, and plenty of grass, among which I observed great quantities of a certain herb, called Roman-woormwood, which the hungry

hungry horses devoured very greedily. Next day, we found above five hundred of our horses dead in the wood and adjacent fields. In our present circumstances, this was no small disaster. The cause was ascribed to their eating the wormwood, which, perhaps, might be the case. We avoided, for the future, as much as possible, the encamping where large quantities of this plant grew.

Yet the dead horses, having been in good case, were not entirely lost, as our Kalmucks feasted on them for several days. It is to be observed, that these people prefer horse-flesh to beef; and, in all their expeditions, their baggage is very compendious, carrying no other provisions than such a number of spare horses as they think they may want. I was often diverted in seeing these hardy people, round a fire, broiling and eating their horse-stakes, without either bread or salt.

The loss of so many horses detained us some hours later than usual; but, as both

VOL. II. 3 L the

the water and grafs were bad, we decamped, and, at night, came to a spacious plain opposite to the town of Tarku, where the Aldiggerey resides. Here we found fresh water, and good pasturage.

This place is pleasantly situated in a hollow between two high hills, rising, like an amphitheatre, to within a small distance of the top ; having a full view of the Caspian Sea. The Prince's house is the uppermost, and overlooks the whole town. It consists of several apartments, with a spacious hall, after the Persian manner, having a terrace and small garden adjoining.

Next morning, the Aldiggerey came and waited on their Majesties, and invited them to dinner, which was accepted of.

Towards noon, the Princess, spouse to the Aldiggerey, came and paid her respects to the Empress, and gave her Majesty a formal invitation. This lady came in the equipage of the country, that is, in a covered waggon, drawn by a yoke of oxen, with a few footmen to attend her, and escorted

escorted by a small party of horse. The lady, though something advanced in years, had still the remains of an handsome person. She had along with her, in the waggon, a young lady, her daughter, who was so pretty that she would have been deemed a beauty in any part of Europe. When they entered the Empress's tent, her Majesty stood up to receive them ; they then took off their veils, and behaved with great decency. They were richly dressed after the Persian fashion. After they had drank a dish of coffee, they took leave, and returned to the town.

Soon after their departure, the Emperor and Empress went to the town to dine. The Emperor went on horseback, the Empress in her coach; attended by some of the court ladies, and escorted by a battalion of the guards. The street was so narrow, and near the palace so steep, that the coach and six horses could not proceed quite to the palace, which, when her Majesty perceived, she alighted from the coach, and walked

the

the rest of the way on foot. The Emperor was much pleased with the romantic situation of the place. In the evening they returned to the camp.

August 22d, the army marched from Shaffkal. The day being exceeding hot, no water to be found on the road, together with a continued cloud of dust, to that degree that we could scarcely know one another, made this day's march very disagreeable and fatiguing to all, more especially to the heavy armed troops and the cattle. Notwithstanding these inconveniences, the Emperor kept on horseback the whole day, and took his share of whatever happened. At night, we came to some wells of fresh water, where the army encamped; but there was hardly water enough for the people to drink, which obliged us to send the horses and cattle to a brook at some distance, and a strong party of Cossacks to guard them, lest the enemy should attempt to carry them off.

The

The next day, we halted at the wells. The Emperor having received intelligence, that a certain chieftain of the mountaineers, named Ussmey, was assembling some troops in order to harass us in our march, which lay through some hollow grounds ; accordingly, towards noon, we perceived a number of horse and foot, on the tops of the neighbouring hills, about three English miles distance from the camp ; after they had reconnoitred our disposition for some time, about one half of them, composed of horse and foot, came down into the plain, with intent to drive off some of our cattle, which brought on a skirmish between our irregular troops and the mountaineers, wherein several were wounded, and some were killed, on each side. Our people took many of their foot, and of such as had been dismounted, prisoners. During the action, our infantry kept close in the camp. The Emperor rode out to the field ; he ordered the dragoons to march, and support the irregulars : On their advancing, the enemy soon

soon dispersed themselves, and fled to the hills, where a considerable number had remained firm on the heights. The carrying off some cattle is supposed to have been their principal aim, as it would not have been less than downright madness in them to have expected to gain any advantage by attacking such an army of veteran troops, well provided and well conducted.

In the mean time, our dragoons and irregulars were in pursuit of the enemy, on the other side of the first ridge of hills, and quite out of sight. The Emperor, being apprehensive of an ambush, and of a large body of mountaineers being lodged on the other side of the hills, about three o'clock afternoon, ordered the army to decamp, and march towards the mountains, which was performed in six columns. The Emperor had hourly intelligence of the proceedings of the dragoons and irregulars, who at length entirely dispersed the enemy, and had taken possession of the town where the Prince Uffney resided. However, it being

being then too late to return to our former camp, the army encamped that night on a plain between the hills, on the banks of a small rivulet, where we had but indifferent quarters, as there was no more time than to set up the Emperor's tent, and a few others.

The next day, the army decamped, and marched back to our former camp at the wells, leaving the dragoons and irregulars to manage the rest of the business, who made the Daghestans, particularly the Uss-mey and his people, pay dear for their rash attempt of endeavouring to interrupt the march of an army so far superior to any force they could muster. We staid here two days, waiting for the return of our dragoons and irregulars.

The 27th, the troops being all re-assembled, the Emperor decamped, and marched again to the south-eastward, towards Derbent, through a dry parched plain. At night, we came to a brook, near the foot of the hills, where we encamped, not having seen any enemy that day.

The

The 28th, we marched again, and, passing a defile, or hollow way, with some difficulty and delay to the carriages, at night we came to wells of brackish water, where we set up our tents, at no great distance from the hills, the sea being about a mile from us to the left hand.

The 29th, being within a short march of the city of Derbent, the Emperor halted to give the troops time to put themselves in order for an entry into the town, as it is the frontier belonging to the Shach of Persia.

Near our camp there are several pits flowing with that bituminous liquid called naphtha. The naphtha here is of a blackish colour, very inflammable ; it is used by the Persians to burn in their lamps, and not easily extinguished by rain : But, as I have formerly spoken of this kind of petroleum, I do not enlarge on that subject here.

The 30th, the army set forwards, the Emperor being on horseback at the head of his troops, which made a fine appearance.

ance. At the distance of about three English miles from Derbent, the governour of that place, attended by his officers of distinction, and the magistrates of the town, came in a body to wait on the Emperor, and to present him with the golden keys of the town and of the citadel, which they did on a cushion covered with very rich Persian brocade ; the governour and all his attendants kneeling during this short ceremony. The Emperor received these gentlemen very graciously, and gave them signal marks of his favour. They accompanied him to the city, where, being arrived, the army halted some time ; during which guards were placed at the gates, and a garrison in the citadel, under the command of Colonel Yunger, with a supply of cannon and ammunition, both which were wanting in the place.

The foregoing being completed, the Emperor, at the head of his army, marched through the city, and encamped among the vineyards, about an English mile to the

south-eastward of the town, and about half a mile from the sea-shore.

Soon after, which the Emperor, accompanied by all the general officers, returned again to the city, and examined the condition of the fortifications. On this occasion the Persian governour made his Majesty an offer of his house, and quarters for as many of the troops as the place could accommodate ; but, to avoid putting the inhabitants to any inconveniency, or perhaps for other reasons, the Emperor declined accepting the offer of lodging in the city, and, at night, returned to his camp.

In this situation we continued some days, and were making the needful preparations for advancing farther into the country, as soon as the transports with provisions, stores, &c. from Astrachan, which were daily expected, should arrive.

They did arrive in safety ; but a most unfortunate accident happened ; the night following, after their arrival, a violent storm of wind, from the north-east, drove

the

the greatest part of them ashore, where they were wrecked and dashed to pieces ; but, by good providence, not many lives were lost.

This misfortune disconcerted his Majesty's measures, and put a stop to the further progress of his arms for the present, having nothing before him but a country exhausted of all necessaries ; and the season of the year being too far spent to wait a fresh supply from Astrachan, the Emperor determined to leave things in the same state they then were in, and to return again to Astrachan, by the same way we came, leaving a garrison at Derbent sufficient to secure the advantages he had gained.

Before I leave Derbent, I shall endeavour to give a short description of the place. It is said to have been first built and fortified, according to the style of the fortifications of that age, by Alexander the Great ; tho' it is not easy to ascertain that tradition, or the aera of its first construction ; yet, by variety

variety of circumstances, it appears to be very ancient.

The present citadel, walls, and gates, seem to be of European architecture, and no mean performance.

The citadel stands on the highest ground of the city towards the land-side. The walls of the city are built of large blocks of square stone ; they reach into the sea, beyond which many huge rocks are tumbled into the sea, to prevent any approach, or passage, on that side. The haven is now so choaked up with sand, that there is hardly entry for a small boat.

Derbent may be called the key to the Persian empire on this side, and serves to keep the mountaineers, and other neighbours on that side in awe. The situation is very pleasant, rising gradually from the sea to the top of the hill, commanding a very extensive prospect, especially towards the south-east. About thirty miles due south stands one of the highest mountains in Persia, called Shach-Dagh, which is always

ways covered with snow. To the eastward of the town are many large vineyards, producing plenty of grapes, of which they make a considerable quantity of both white and red wine, of strength sufficient to preserve it round the year, and longer if required. The people of substance there keep their wine in jars, buried under ground, by which method it will keep good for years.

They have also fruitful plains in the neighbourhood, and, at some distance, is a large forest of walnut-trees, oaks, &c. As this place is a frontier of great importance, the Sophy of Persia always appoints a person of distinction for its governour.

His Majesty having placed a sufficient garrison in Derbent, which he left there under the command of Colonel Yunger, upon September the 18th the whole army marched back through the town, keeping the same route by which we came. Little of moment occurred on our march, though we were almost daily alarmed by small parties

parties of the Daghestans, who frequently made their appearance on the tops of the hills, but fled always at the approach of our cosacks. As we had seen no rain since our landing on this coast, our people suffered not a little from the great heats, continual clouds of dust, and want of water.

On the 29th of September, after a most fatiguing march, their Majesties and all the army arrived in safety at the fort of Agrachan, and found the fleet in the bay where we left them.

October the 1st, we began to ship off the baggage, and what artillery, &c. was not wanted at the fort of Agrachan ; in which place the Emperor left a sufficient garrison.

I shall now endeavour to give the reader a short view of the country commonly called Tzercaffa, or Daghestan, by the inhabitants of the country, from *dagb*, which signifies a mountain in their language. The country so called is situated between the Euxine, or Black Sea, and the Caspian Sea : These two seas confine it from N. W. to S.

S. E: Southward it reaches to the province of Gurgistan, commonly called Georgia. It stretches northward into a part of the Stepp, or desert, which lies between Asoph and Afrachan.

The country is divided into several free independent principalities, as Kaberda, Shaffkal, Ussmey, and many others, under their respective chieftains, who are at first elected by the people; and though that office is sometimes known to continue in the family of the person elected for several generations, yet it hath frequently happened, that, either through mal-administration, or in consequence of wars among those different states, a chieftain with his family have been deposed or banished, and another appointed in his place. It hath also been known, that the Sophy of Persia hath placed and displaced some of those princes among the Daggestans who lie the most contiguous to Persia. Both the Sophy and the Ottoman Porte lay claim to the sovereignty of Daghestan; but of late years,
these

these people, trusting to their own valour and the natural strength of the country, pay little regard to either of these mighty monarchs, who sometimes threaten them, at other times court their friendship.

The whole extent of the country is hilly, with some mountains of great height; yet, I am informed, they have fruitful valleys, producing corn, vines, and fruits, natural to the climate. Besides a breed of excellent saddle-horses, they have great store of cattle, particularly of sheep, which produce the finest wool I have seen in any part. Whether the famous golden fleece was the produce of these parts or not, I shall leave others to determine.

The men are, for the most part, well made and stout; many of them are employed in the service of the Sophy, and frequently raised to high stations. The Etmadowlett, or prime minister, Aly-Begg, was a native of this country. As to their women, they are esteemed to be the most beautiful of any in Asia, as well for features

tures and complexion, as also for fine shape ; on which account many of these poor girls are purchased at high rates, or stolen away, for the use of the seraglios at Ispahan, Constantinople, and other eastern courts.

The religion of the Daghestans is generally Mahometan ; some following the sect of Osman, others that of Haly. Some of those people are Christians of the Eastern or Greek church. Their language, for the most part, is Turkish, or rather a dialect of the Arabic, though many of them speak also the Persian language.

One article I cannot omit concerning their laws of hospitality, which is, if their greatest enemy comes under their roof for protection, the landlord, of what condition soever, is obliged to keep him safe from all manner of harm or violence, during his abode with him, and even to conduct him safely through his territories to a place of security. With which I conclude what I have to say of the Daghestans.

On the 5th of October, his Majesty and the Empress went on board their galley, the fleet being ready, and all the troops embarked.

Before I quit Agrachan, I am desirous of bringing the reader, in some measure, acquainted with the character of the magnanimous commander of this expedition, during which I had daily frequent opportunities of seeing that great man Peter the First ; and, during the whole time, was in company, and conversed with those people who had attended his person for very many years ; several of whom possessed, in some degree, his favour, and were well regarded by him. Therefore, I hope, what I am about to offer, concerning this great monarch, will not be unacceptable to the candid reader, whose taking in good part what I shall say, I have some right to expect ; for I shall say nothing of fact, but what is true, nor any thing of opinion, but what is sincere.

Several

Several foreign writers have misrepresented and traduced the real character of Peter the Great, by relating mean stories, picked up at ale-houses, and circulated among the lowest class of people, most of them without the least ground of truth, whereby many people of good understanding have been misled, and, even to this present time, look on him to have been a vicious man, and a cruel tyrant, than which nothing can be more the reverse of his true character.

Though he might have had some failings, yet it is well known, to many living at the time of my writing this, which is above thirty-seven years after his demise, that his prudence, justice, and humanity, very much over-balanced his failings ; which principally, if not solely, arose from his inclination to the fair sex.

I shall here take the liberty to insert a passage or two, which, though trifling, yet as so great a personage is the subject, will not, I trust, be altogether unacceptable or unenter-

unentertaining to the reader, as they are instances of his assiduity.

About the middle of October 1714, I arrived at Cronstadt in an English ship. The Czar having notice of the ship's arrival, came on board the next morning, from St Petersburgh ; being attended only by Dr Areskine, who was his chief physician at that time, and on that occasion served him as interpreter. After his Majesty had inquired news about the Swedish fleet, &c. he eat a piece of bread and cheese, and drank a glass of ale ; then went on shore to visit the works carrying on at Cronstadt ; and returned, the same evening, in his boat, to St Petersburgh, distance about twenty English miles.

The first winter after my arrival at St Petersburgh, I lodged at Mr Noy's, an English ship-builder in the Czar's service. One morning, before day-light, my servant came and told me that the Czar was at the door. I got up, and saw him walking up and down the yard, the weather being severely

verely cold and frosty, without any one to attend him. Mr Noy soon came, and took him into the parlour, where his Majesty gave him some particular directions about a ship then on the stocks ; which having done, he left him.

His Majesty's person was graceful, tall, and well made ; clean, and very plain in his apparel. He generally wore an English drab-colour cloth-frock, never appearing in a dress-suit of cloaths, unless on great festivals, and remarkable holidays ; on which occasions he was sometimes dressed in laced cloaths, of which sort he was not owner of above three or four suits. When he was dressed, he wore the order of St Andrew ; at other times, he had no badge or mark of any order on his person. His equipage was simple, without attendants. In summer, a four-oared wherry was always attending, to carry him over the river, if he should want to cross it, which he frequently did. When he went about the town by land, he always made use

use of an open two-wheeled chaise, attended by two soldiers, or grooms, who rode before, and a page, who sometimes stood behind the chaise, and often sat in it with his Majesty, and drove him. In winter, he made use of a sledge, drawn by one horse, with the same attendants. He found these to be the most expeditious ways of conveyance, and used no other. He was abroad every day in the year, unless confined at home by illness, which rarely happened ; so that seldom a day passed but he was seen in almost every part of the city.

I have more than once seen him stop in the streets, to receive petitions from persons who thought themselves wronged by sentences passed in courts of judicature. On taking the petition, the person was told to come next day to the senate ; where the affair was immediately examined and determined, if the nature of it would admit its being done in so short a time. It will naturally follow, that such free access to his person was not only productive of great relief

relief to many poor widows and orphans, but also a strong check upon judges ; and tended very much to prevent any sort of influence prevailing on them to pronounce unjust sentences, for which they were so likely to be called to account.

His Majesty might truly be called a man of business, for he could despatch more affairs in a morning, then a houseful of senators could do in a month. He rose almost every morning, in the winter-time, before four o'clock ; was often in his cabinet by three o'clock, where two private secretaries, and certain clerks, paid constant attendance. He often went so early to the senate, as to occasion the senators being raised out of their beds to attend him there. When assembled, after hearing causes between subject and subject, or public affairs, regarding the interior of the empire, read by the secretary, and the opinion of the senate recited thereupon, he would write upon the process, or upon the affair, under deliberation, with his own hand, in

a

a very laconic style, “ Let it be according to the decree of the senate;” and sometimes would add some particular alterations, such as he thought fit to mention, and underwrote PETER.

His Majesty knew so little of relaxation of mind when awake, that he never allowed his time of rest to be broken in upon, unless in case of fire. When any accident of that kind happened, in any part of the town, there was a standing order to awake him on its first appearance; and his Majesty was frequently the first at the fire, where he always remained, giving the necessary orders, till all further danger was over. This example of paternal regard of the Czar for his subjects, was of course followed by all the great officers, and those of the first quality; which was frequently the means of saving many thousands of his subjects from utter ruin, whose houses and goods, without such singular assistance, must have shared the fate of their ruined neighbours.

In

In acts of religion he appeared devout, but not superstitious. I have seen him at his public devotions in church many times. I have been present, when his Majesty, not liking the clerk's manner of reading the psalms, hath taken the book from the clerk, and hath read them himself; which he did very distinctly, and with proper emphasis. His Majesty was allowed, by the best judges of the Sclavonian and Russian languages, to be as great a master of them as any the most learned of his subjects, whether churchmen or laics. He wrote a very good hand, very expeditiously, yet the characters distinct enough. Of this I myself am some judge, having seen many of his letters, all written with his own hand, to Mr Henry Stiles, and others. As to his style, some of his secretaries, and other competent judges of the language, affirmed, that they had never known any man who wrote more correctly, or could comprise the sense and meaning of what he wrote in so few words as his Majesty.

The following I had from a certain Russian gentleman, of very good family, and who was a general officer of unexceptionable character in the army, who had attended his Majesty, from his very youth, in all his expeditions. This officer being an old friend of mine, I went to pay him a visit one evening, long after the death of Peter the Great, when he told me, that such and such old officers, naming them, had dined with him that day, and that the principal subject of their conversation turned on the actions of their old father, (as he termed him, by way of eminence), Peter the Great. He told me further, that, tho' his Majesty seemed to be severe, on certain occasions, yet no one of them all could produce or recollect one single instance of his having punished an honest man, or that he had caused any person to suffer any punishment who had not well deserved it.

He hath been represented as making too frequent use of spiritous liquors to excess, which is an unmerited aspersion ; for he had

had an aversion to all sorts, and to those too much given to drink. It is true, he had his times of diversion, when he would be merry himself, and liked to see others so ; this may have been necessary, and proper, for the unbending his mind from affairs of great weight ; but such amusements occurred generally during holidays, and festival times, and was, with him, at no time, of long continuance. It hath been imputed to him, and not without some appearance of reason, that he had political views in encouraging drinking at these times of merriment ; for, on these occasions, he mixed with the company, and conversing with them on the footing of a companion, had better opportunities, at such times, of discovering the real sentiments of those about him, than when they were quite cool.

Those who, by their offices about the person of Peter the Great, might be supposed to be the best acquainted with his disposition, always disavowed his drinking to excess, and insisted on his being a sober Prince.

Prince. I can aver that, during the campaign of the expedition to Derbent in Persia, he was not once guilty of the least excess, but rather lived abstemiously. In this point I could not be mistaken, as the tent of Dr Blumentrost, his Majesty's chief physician, with whom I lodged, was always the nearest tent to that of his Majesty.

I shall give one instance, in proof of what I have advanced concerning the temperance of this great man, viz. In our third day's march, on our return from Derbent, we were kept in continual alarm by considerable bodies of mountaineers, both of horse and foot, whom we saw hovering on the tops of the adjacent hills, though they dared not to come down to the plain, to attack any part of our army, yet it was necessary to be watchful of them ; which, in some measure, impeded our march. The evening of that day, we had a hollow way to pass, which took up much time, and obliged the greatest part of the army to remain there all night ; so that none reached the

the camp, except the guards, and some light horse who attended their Majesties. On my arrival there, about midnight, I found only his Majesty's tent set up, and another small one for Mr Felton, the Czar's principal cook, and master of his kitchen. I went into Felton's tent, and found him all alone, with a large sauce-pan of warm grout before him, made of buck wheat with butter, which he told me was the remains of their Majesties supper, who eat of nothing else that evening, and who were just gone to bed.

During the whole march, his Majesty, for the most part, rode an English pad, about fourteen hands high, for which he had a particular liking, as it was very tractable, and easy to mount. His picture is drawn by Caravac on this horse. He did not wear boots, as he very often walked on foot. In the heat of the day, when the army halted, he used to go into the Empress's coach, and sleep for half an hour. His dress, during the march, was a white night-

night-cap, with a plain flapped hat over it, and a short dimity waistcoat. When at any time he received messengers from the chieftains of the mountaineers, he put on his regimentals, as an officer of the guards, being Lieutenant-Colonel of the Preobrazhensky regiment.

During the whole course of his life, his Majesty avoided all sorts of ceremony, except on public occasions. His manner of living in his house was more like that of a private gentleman than of so great a monarch. I was once at court on a holiday, when the Emperor came home from church to dinner, with a large attendance of his ministers, general officers, and other great men. His table was laid with about fifteen covers. As soon as dinner was served up, he and the Empress took their places, and his Majesty, addressing himself to the company, said, Gentlemen, please to take your places as far as the table will hold, the rest will go home and dine with their wives.

On

On such occasions, the princesses, his children, dined in another room, to whom he sent such dishes, from his own table, as he thought proper, for their dinner.

This great monarch took all the pains, and used all the means possible, in order to be intimately acquainted with every thing proper for a man who ruled a mighty empire, to know. He entered into the detail of every branch of the arts useful to mankind ; into that of all the manufactures which regarded the construction of ships, and fitting them for the sea ; into that of the making of arms, artillery, &c. If he had a ruling passion for any one part of these acquirements, it must have been for ship-building ; into which he entered himself very early, in the quality of a common workman, with his hatchet, and proceeded regularly through all the degrees, to the rank of master-builder, which he attained but a few years before his death. After he got that length in the art, he made the draughts, formed the mouldings, and directed

rected the building, of several men of war, of the second and third rates, himself ; and he duly demanded, and received his salary as a master-builder. The day of launching the ships, which he himself built, he celebrated as a holiday, and put on laced clothes ; but, before he went to work, to strike away the stanchions, blocks, &c. he always put off his fine coat.

He was very frugal in what regarded his personal expences, and those of his household. Notwithstanding his frugality in what related to himself, he spared no cost in whatever concerned the public, in the structure of his men of war, in the artillery, fortifications, arsenals, canals, &c. all which bore marks of very great magnificence. Nor was he sparing in his buildings, and the decorations of his gardens with statues, grottos, fountains, &c. of which the buildings of the summer-palace, and the gardens at St Petersburgh, at Peterhoff, Strelna, Czarsky Sealo, and many others, are sufficient proofs. I shall not detain

tain the reader longer on the subject of this very great man's character, or way of living, than to acquaint him, that, as his Majesty was very early up in the morning, he went abroad generally without breakfast ; came home to dinner about eleven of the clock ; after dinner, went to sleep for about an hour ; after which, if business did not intervene, he sometimes diverted himself at his turning loom ; then went to visit those he had a regard for, as well foreigners as Russians, with whom he would be very sociable, and easy in conversation. He sometimes supped with them ; which, generally in his latter days, was on hare or wild-fowl, roasted very dry, drank small beer, and sometimes a few glasses of wine ; and generally was in bed before ten of the clock at night. He neither played at cards, dice, or any game of chance.

The reader will please to take along with him the following observation, viz. That this monarch was, at no time, even during masquerades, feastings, assemblies, and all

VOL. II. 3 P other

other diversions or amusements, by day or night, without the attendance of some or other of his ministers, and of those who possessed his confidence ; by which means business, and such affairs as were of the greatest consequence, went on regularly ; and some of them even concerted during those times of relaxation.

I now return to the 5th of October 1722 ; at which time, the Emperor and Empress being embarked on board their galley, and the whole fleet being ready, and the wind fair, we weighed anchor, and got under sail, from the bay of Agrachan, for Astrachan, at which place we arrived on the 14th of the same month, little material happening in the passage, only some rough gales of contrary wind.

Having finished what I had to do at Astrachan, I joined company with Simon Gregoritz Narishkin, one of his Majesty's General-adjutants, and Commodore Collar, who always commanded the ship in which his Majesty hoisted his flag, when he

he went to sea ; and with those two gentlemen returned to Mosco.

Accordingly, we set out from Astrachan in a small shallop, and came by water to the town of Zaritzina. The winter approaching, we got such carriages as the place afforded, and continued our journey, along the lines, to the river Don ; these lines are drawn from the Volga to the Don, being a deep ditch, about thirty feet broad, pallisadoed on the top, with high wooden towers at certain distances, in sight of each other, well guarded. They effectually answer the end proposed by his Majesty, in erecting them, and making the ditch, which was for the preventing of incursions from the Cuban Tartars.

The 25th of November we arrived in Mosco ; at which place his Majesty and the Empress arrived about the middle of December 1722.

The

The following are the post-stages and distances between Mosco and Astrachan.

	Versts.
From	Mosco
To the village of Ostroffsach	25
Ulianinin Sealo	38
Town of Kolumna	32
of Zarayfsky	39
Prudach Sealo	37
Pod Offinka	35
Bogoyavlencko	35
Gorlovy	25
Town of Skopina	30
Town of Reasky	40
Village of Blagoy	37
Oloviach	35
Town of Kozloff	32
Retzky Yaroslafsky	25
Lyffiach-Gorach Sealo	22
Town of Tamboff	22
<hr/>	
Carried over	509

Verfts.

	Brought over	509
From	Kusminoy Gatty Sealo	21
To	Retzky-Tziny	27
	Panoffskich Kustack	24
	Retzky-Savally	20
	Retzky-Shinkoffy	20
	Rétzky-Tagaiky	26
	Retzky-Tavolshanky	20
	Chaperskoy Krepoft	22
	Michailofsky Gorodky	27
	Yuripinsky Stanu	17
	Tepinsky-Yurtu	20
	Pravotorfkoy-Yurtu	20
	Kalinoffsky Kustiky	24
	Zatoffsky-Yurtu	21
	Kulmishkom-Yurtu	24
	Ust-Chaperskoy Koluditz	21
	Ros sleeve	12
	Ust-Medvedefsky	13
	Kletzkoy-Tzaganock	18
	Klementsky Stantzy	23
	Novo Gregorioffsky	20
	Siropensky Stantzy	23
	Carried over	972

		Versts.
	Brought over	972
From	Retzky-Sokary	30
To	Gratsefsky Stantzy	12
	Town of Zaritina	28
	Reka-Actuba	26
	Tzareofa-Puda	31
	Urotzisha-Tzareva	30
	Tayunley	26
	Kulava	30
	Ashlagatay	30
	Sakuley	30
	Okoreba	25
	Besitzara	26
	Kravala	30
	Achfarava	27
	Reka-Bolshoy Bereketa	20
	Astrachan	39
<hr/>		
The distance from Mosco to Astrachan, the post-road, by land		1412

A N

A N
A C C O U N T
O F M Y
J O U R N E Y
F R O M
S T . P E T E R S B U R G H
T O
C O N S T A N T I N O P L E ,
A N D T H E N C E
B A C K T O S T . P E T E R S B U R G H ,
I N P A R T O F T H E Y E A R S 1 7 3 7 A N D 1 7 3 8 ,
U N D E R T A K E N A T T H E I N S T A N C E S O F
C O U N T O S T E R M A N ,
C H A N C E L L O R O F R U S S I A ,
A N D O F
M R R O N D E A U ,
M I N I S T E R F R O M G R E A T B R I T A I N A T
T H E C O U R T O F S T . P E T E R S B U R G H .

A N
A C C O U N T
O F M Y
J O U R N E Y
T O
C O N S T A N T I N O P L E.

A WAR having broken out in 1734 between Russia and Turkey, which had been carried on with great success on the part of Russia, by their taking from the Turks the strongly fortified cities of Asoph, Ozakoff, together with the Perecop, and other places of the frontiers of great importance, the Emperor of Germany, through various connections, came, some time after its commencement, to be engaged in it.

VOL. II.

3 Q

In

In the autumn of 1737, a congress was appointed to be held at Nemiroff, a town on the frontiers of Poland, in order to accommodate and determine all differences between the belligerent powers, by the mediation of the ministers of Great Britain, France, and the States of Holland, then residing at the Ottoman Porte, who were Sir Everard Fawkner, the Marquis de Ville-Neuve, and Mr Kalkune. But, before these ministers could reach Nemiroff, the plenipotentiaries of the powers at war differed so widely in their respective demands, that the congress broke up without effect.

The court of Russia determining to send a person to Constantinople, with new proposals of accommodation ; and, as no subjects of Russia or Germany are admitted into the dominions of the Grand Seignor, while he is at war with those powers, I was prevailed upon to undertake the journey, at the earnest desires of Count Osterman, the chancellor of Russia, and of Mr Rondeau,

deau, at that time his Britannic Majesty's minister at the court of St Petersburgh.

On the 6th of December 1737, I set out from St Petersburgh, with only one servant, who understood the Turkish language. Having, in a former journey, taken notice of the places on the road between St Petersburgh and Mosco, I waive the repeating them.

The 9th, I arrived at the city of Mosco, which had greatly suffered the preceding summer by a dreadful conflagration. As I purpose, at the end of my journey, to give an account of the stages and distances, I shall here only mention the time, and chief places through which I pass.

The 11th, I left Mosco, early in the morning, and proceeded to the south-west towards Kioff.

The 12th, in the night, I came to Kaluga, a large and populous town, situated on the banks of the river Ocka, inhabited by several substantial merchants, very considerable.

fiderable dealers in hemp, pot-ash, wax, &c.

The 15th, I got to Siesky, another town, which is reckoned to be at about equal distance from Mosco, and from Kioff, and is the last town in Great Russia, bordering on the Russian Ukrain. At night I reached Glukova, the first town in the Ukrain, a large and populous place, where, having changed horses, I proceeded thence the same night to another town called Korolcvitz.

The 16th, I passed through Batturin, a large rambling town, formerly the residence of the Hetman Mazeppa ; it stands on rising hills upon the river Semm. The country adjacent is very pleasant, and exceeding fruitful, being mostly plain, interspersed with woods of oak and other timber. The place is almost encompassed with cherry and other fruit trees. What is remarkable, and demonstrative of the great fertility of the soil, is, that they have about sixty water-mills for grinding corn, all built

built within the distance of two English miles.

At night, I got to Neshin, another considerable town. At this place, for want of snow on the ground, I was obliged to leave my convenient sledge, and ride all the rest of the way on horseback. This detained me much longer on the road than I should have been, if I could have proceeded in my sledge.

The 18th, I passed the Borysthenes, in a boat, and, in the evening, arrived at Kioff, situated on the west bank of the Borysthenes, now called Dnieper. This famous river takes its rise on the borders of Poland, near the city of Smolensko, and, after a long course pointing to the south, discharges itself into the Black Sea, near Otzakoff.

The city of Kioff stands on a high hill, and overlooks the river, and a spacious plain to the eastward, as far as your eye can reach. To the westward, the country is hilly; and many of the hills are covered with woods. There are several vineyards about

about the town, which produce good grapes for the table.

This place is adorned with many magnificent churches, and is famous for being the repository of saints, and holy men of the Greek church, whose shrines are visited by devout persons from distant places. Besides, they have an university at Kioff, of considerable repute in these parts.

I cannot but observe here, that this part of the country, commonly called the Ukraine, (though it is sometimes called Little Russia,) doth, for fertility of soil and rich pasture, exceed most parts of Europe, producing vast quantities of various sorts of grain, the crops of which are always very great, as well as of hemp and flax, of the most excellent quality, and that with little labour; for they plow the ground with one horse only, and with but one man, who holds the plow, and drives the horse at the same time.

The Ukraine produces good horses for the saddle, and large sized black cattle, in very great numbers, more than sufficient for

for their own use, and for supplying their neighbours, with as good beef as the world affords. The woods are well stored with game of divers sorts, as are the rivers and ponds with fish. Asparagus, which in other parts requires cultivation, grows naturally in such plenty in the Ukraine, as to be termed a weed. The people are very civil and hospitable among themselves, and also to all strangers, living very clean and neat in their houses. I now resume my journey.

At Kioff I met with my worthy friends General Romanzoff, and the privy counsellor Mr Neptuof, who gave me all the assistance and despatch I could desire. They ordered a lieutenant and a troop of cosacks to escort me through Poland, to the confines of Moldavia.

On the 20th, I set out from Kioff, and at night came to the frontier town, called Vassilkoff, which stands on the declivity of a hill, and is the last town belonging to Russia in that part. The place is but small,

small, though well fortified, and provided with a strong garrison, &c.

The 21st, early in the morning, I left Vassilkoff, accompanied by my trusty cosacks; and, after riding about an hour, I came to the borders of Poland, where is an out-post, and a strong guard of Russian soldiers. This place is called the Zaftave, very necessary in time of war. The territory of Poland is divided here from that of Russia by a deep ditch drawn across the middle of a spacious plain.

From the Zaftave I continued my journey, in a strong frost, which made the road very rough, and, keeping to the southward along the same plain, I saw neither house nor tree till I came to Belozerkoff, the first town appertaining to Poland in this part. The gates being shut before my arrival, it was some time before I could be admitted. However, at length the gates were opened; I took up my quarters at a public-house belonging to a Jew. The same evening I waited on Mr Bechersky, the governor, and desired he would give me a passport.

He

He treated me with great civility, and ordered the passport to be ready against the next morning.

The 22d, by the excess of the governour's hospitality, I was detained till the evening, waiting for his Excellency's passport, which was absolutely necessary, and proved of great use to me on the road.

The town of Belozerkoff, so called from a white church there, is a pretty large place, and is fortified. It stands in a pleasant plain. The inhabitants are, for the most part, Poles, mixed with not a few Jews, who keep public-houses, and are generally farmers of the revenues all over Poland. There is scarce a village without some Jews, who keep inns for lodging and entertaining passengers.

In the evening, I took my leave of the kind governour, who, after treating me with great politeness, gave me a guide to the next village, called Shamaryafka, about two Polish miles distant from Belozerkoff, where I lodged that night.

The 23d, early in the morning, I left

VOL. II.

3 R

this

this village, in a strong frost, without any snow, and, after passing a few straggling villages at night, I came to Goloquaft, where I took up my lodgings at a Jew's house. It is to be observed, that the country is mostly plain, with some rising grounds, interspersed with woods of oak, ash, and elm, and other sorts of timber, but chiefly of oak ; is very pleasant and fruitful, but thinly inhabited ; which must proceed from their being exposed to the incursions of the Tartars and Haydamacks, who at times make cruel inroads into these parts.

The Haydamacks were, the foregoing winter, at this place, with a body of five or six hundred horse, where they committed many disorders ; after which, and after having tortured all the Jews they could light upon, to oblige them to discover their money, they marched off with their booty, before the Polish troops could be assembled to oppose them.

I was well informed, by people who knew something of these lawless banditti,
who

who are called Haydamacks by the Poles, and Zapourosky cossacks by the Russians, that they are a parcel of vagabonds, composed of idle fellows of different nations, who, having fled from justice, find a safe retreat among this crew. They are, for several reasons, protected by the Turks, who lay claim to the islands, and places adjacent, on the river Dnieper, where they inhabit, and have fortified themselves so strongly as not easily to be attacked ; nor can they be attacked without danger of breaking peace with the Turk.

They profess the Christian religion ; but have no wives nor any women among them, having erected themselves into a wild kind of military order, if it may be so called. Every person, who is desirous of entering into this community, is obliged to serve a certain number of years, before he is admitted into the brotherhood. The grand master is called Casha-var, which signifies chief cook, who is chosen from among the fraternity for his conduct and courage.

courage. I think I need not enlarge on the subject of such a worthless society.

The 24th, I left Goloquast, and came towards noon to a small town called Pogrebishia, where I halted. The people, at first sight, taking my cosacks for Hayd-macks, shut the gates, and alarmed the place. My passport soon convinced them of their error. After a short stay, I proceeded again on my journey. At night I reached a small village, named Otzeredno, where I lodged.

The 25th, leaving Otzeredno, I got to Vitofftzy, another village, where I lay that night.

The 26th, I arrived at Nemiroff, where the late congress was held, as I have mentioned above. This town is pretty large and populous, well fortified and garrisoned. The governour is General Russotsky, who hath Colonel Wangenheim, and several other German officers under him.

The country about Nemiroff is very pleasant and fruitful, having many orchards

ards in the neighbourhood, which produce the largest apples and pears that I have seen any where. They have also plenty of grapes, very good for the table.

The 27th, about noon, I set out again on my journey. I got that night to the village Petzory, where I remained that night.

The 28th, I halted at Spikoff, travelled thence to Lefkovitz, a large village, where I passed the night.

The 29th, I halted at Tamaz-poly, and lodged at Kleimbofka.

The 30th, I arrived at Tzikanofka, the last place belonging to Poland on that frontier. It is a large straggling village, situate on the east bank of the river Ister, now called Dniester, and is the boundary between Poland and Moldavia. On the opposite shore stands the town of Soroka, the first in the principality of Moldavia, now annexed to the Turkish dominions. The same evening, I sent my man to Soroka, to acquaint the commandant or Perkulab, as they are called, of my arrival.

Next

Next morning, the 1st of January 1738, the commandant of Soroka, whose name is Petroky, a Greek, came over upon the ice to visit me, and told me that he was very sorry he could not let me pass without a special order from the Prince of Moldavia, who resides at Yassy, to whom he would immediately despatch an express for that purpose ; and hoped I would wait patiently for an answer. In the evening Mr Petroky paid me another visit ; he showed me much civility, and brought me a present of wine, fruits, &c. which was very acceptable in a place where little was to be got for money.

January 2d, Mr Petroky acquainted me, that his express was returned, with orders from the prince to furnish me with horses, and a proper convoy, to Yassy.

Having no more occasion for the cossacks, I sent them back again to Kioff ; but Mr Noroff, the lieutenant, was permitted to accompany me to Yassy. This gentleman is an officer of a marching regiment.
The

The cosacks had their own officer besides.

Soroka is but a small town, pleasantly situated on the west bank of the river, about thirty leagues south-east from Chotyn, and the same distance north-west from Bender. The place is inhabited chiefly by Moldavians, mixed with a few Greeks, Jews, and Turks. It is defended by an old tower, in which are some cannon of little use. The channel of the Dniester runs deep there, between two high green banks. The country adjacent is fruitful in grain, and abounds in very rich pasturage.

The 2d, early in the morning, I left Tzikahofka, and passed the river on the ice to Soroka, where, the horses being ready, I took leave of the commandant, Mr Petroky, and proceeded on my journey. Towards noon I halted at a large village called Kaynar. The preceding summer many of the inhabitants of this place were carried off by the plague; but it was now, by the rigour of the season, much abated.

As

As soon as the horses were changed we left Kaynar, and, after travelling over a very fine country, came at night to another large village, called Meygura, where we lay.

The 3d, I left Meygura. After passing the river Pruth, I arrived, in the evening, at Yassy, where I found good and warm quarters.

Next morning, being the 4th, I was conducted to the palace, and waited on the prince, who is also styled Hospodar of Moldavia. He takes the title of Serene Highness, though he is only promoted to that dignity by the Sultan, or rather by the Grand Visier, and holds it only during pleasure, being trusted with no other power than the administration of civil affairs. His name is Gregory Ducas, of a reputable Grecian family ; he enjoys a general good character. This gentleman treated me with great civility and politeness, regretted that it was not in his power to allow of my going directly to Constantinople, and that I must

must go to Bender first, where I should find the Serafkier, who had the chief command in these parts. I was not willing to go so far out of my road ; but, as there was no remedy, I complied. The prince ordered a Bosniac captain, and two Moldavian soldiers of his guards, to escort me to Bender, which was all he could do for me in the present juncture of affairs.

From Soroka to Yassy the country is somewhat hilly, the soil rich, the pastureage excellent. About the river Pruth are fine woods of various sorts of timber natural to the climate. About Yassy, and in other parts, there are large vineyards, producing grapes in great abundance, whereof are made considerable quantities of wine, of inferior quality, the greatest part of which is consumed in Poland, and other parts adjacent, for which the Moldavians receive considerable sums in ready money.

The city of Yassy stands in a spacious plain, on the rivulet called Bachluy, about thirty-five leagues towards the north-west

from Bender ; it may contain between two and three thousand houses, mostly built of wood. The inhabitants are Christians of the Greek church. The prince's palace is an ancient pile of Gothic building, of stone and brick ; it hath the appearance of a venerable old castle, for which, I suppose, it was intended, as this unhappy country hath been at all times exposed to the ravages of barbarous nations.

The 5th, having taken leave of my companion, Mr Noroff, who returned back to Kioff, I set out from Yassy, accompanied by my Bosniac captain, the two Moldavians, and my own servant. We came, at night, to a village called Voltzinitz, about ten leagues south-east from Yassy, standing in a fruitful valley, where we took up our quarters.

The 6th, we left this village in the morning, and came at night to Kishanoff, another village, where we lodged.

The 7th, we left Kishanoff. On the road we met with many troops of Tartars, going

going to the eastward, on an expedition, notwithstanding the weather was severely cold, with strong frosts. These hardy people accompanied me all the rest of the way to Bender, where we arrived in the evening.

The country from Yassy to Kishanoff is very fine ; but, towards Bender, it grows more dry and barren, and doth not appear of so good soil, nor to have so good pasture, as the countries which I passed through.

The Moldavians are all Christians, and the Sultan indulges them with a governour or prince of their own religion. This privilege they have enjoyed for many years, which may be esteemed no small favour under such an iron government as is that of the Turks. Yet it may be observed, that their yoke is much easier, and their manners much more humanized, than at their first entrance and settlement in Europe, though, I am persuaded, that two-thirds of Moldavia lies waste at this time.

It

It seems to have been an established system in Turkish politics to depopulate all the countries bordering on Christendom, reserving no more than may be sufficient to furnish their garrisons and troops with provisions.

As the plague had raged all the preceding year in the town of Bender, and had almost depopulated the place, about a mile short of the town, we turned off the road, to the right hand, towards the Turkish camp, where the Seraskier, or general in chief, lay in the field, with all his army about him. The general's quarters were strongly fortified, with a deep ditch pallisadoed and mounted with cannon ; but the troops were lodged in cells under ground, laid over with sticks and earth, having a hole at the top to let out the smoke, fenced with a dry hedge about it. In this miserable condition these poor people passed the winter. I and my Bosniac captain were conducted to one of these holes, which at night was crowded with Turkish officers

of

of distinction. Such miseries, and many more, are the frequent attendants on destructive war. The Seraskier's name is Gengy Aly Basha, or Young Aly Basha, though he is now about seventy years of age, and hath the character of a brave and active general.

The 8th, the Seraskier sent his secretary to me, who asked me several questions relating to my journey, and hoped that necessity would be admitted as an excuse for the badness of my quarters. In the evening, the secretary came again, when he told me, that, in two or three days, their feast of Bayram would be over, and then I should proceed on my journey to Constantinople, with a proper convoy. In the mean time, he ordered an officer to furnish me with such necessaries as the place afforded. In this no agreeable situation I was obliged to wait till the feast was over, being five long nights, all the while confined within the precincts of my hut. One alleviation was, the company of my Bosniac captain,

captain, who tarried with me the whole time.

The 12th, in the morning, the secretary came and acquainted me, that the Scrafier had ordered a chivadar, or officer, belonging to the Grand Vifier, and two Tartars, to escort me to Constantinople; at the same time, he told me that I might depart when I pleased. This welcome news was very agreeable; for I had been little better than a prisoner from the time of my arrival at the camp; though, I must own, they were very civil, and made me as easy, as the accommodations, and the circumstances of affairs, would admit of.

I could only see Bender at a distance. But it is well known to be a place of importance, being strongly and regularly fortified, with out-works in proportion. It stands in a plain, near the river Dniester, and is frequently mentioned in the annals of late times, for being the place of refuge of that intrepid, inconsiderate monarch, Charles XII. of Sweden; after the Russians had

had beat him out of the field at Poltova, in the year 1709.

Notwithstanding the contagious distemper was not entirely ceased at Bender, we had our daily provisions from that place.

As soon as the horses were ready, I mounted, and left this plaguy camp, which is so in a literal, as well as in an allegorical sense. Although our horses were in exceeding bad case, from the fatigues of the last campaign, and from the want of due accommodations, of shelter, &c. during the severe weather that followed, yet we made a shift to come, in the evening, to a large rambling town, called Kaushan, inhabited by Budjack Tartars. It stands south-west from Bender. Here I had good quarters; the people were friendly and hospitable. At supper I sat by an old Tartar, who seemed to be a person of distinction among them. This old gentleman asked me many questions about Europe, through an interpreter, particularly about the illustrious family of Lorrain, which surprised me not

a little. The first dish that came before us was pilaw made of barley; then he told me, in French, that it was not dressed after the French fashion. This brought on a conversation between us in that language, which he spoke well, in which he informed me, that, in his youth, being with the Turkish army in Hungary, he was taken prisoner by the Duke of Lorrain, who then commanded the Imperial army. His highness took him into his service, in which he lived many years; and, after treating him with great humanity, at last gave him his freedom, with liberty to return into his own country; which extraordinary favour he acknowledged with great respect and gratitude.

The 13th, having got fresh horses, I left Kaushan, and travelled to the westward, towards the Danube, leaving the rising grounds, and came along the plain called the Stepp of Budjack, which is flat, dry, barren, and uncultivated; yet there is some good pasture, especially for sheep, of which

which the Turkish army have left few remaining. At night, we came to Kongly, where are about a dozen straggling cottages, inhabited by Tartars. We made our quarters that night in the corner of a large shed, along with our horses.

The 14th, as there was nothing tempting to detain us at Kongly, we set forwards very early in the morning, and proceeded along the same barren plain, without seeing a house or tree all that day. In the evening, we came to a Tartar village, called Tartar-Kew, where we were tolerably well lodged and entertained.

The 15th, we left Tartar-Kew, and came in the evening to the town of Ismayl, standing on the north bank of the famous river Danubé, called Dunay in these parts. The place is very pleasant, within sight of the Black Sea. The inhabitants are chiefly Turks. Here I was well lodged, and had good bread and wine. The river here is very broad, and divided into several branches, by islands, considerably large; tho',

when the river falls into the Black Sea, all the branches are united, and form but one mouth, at its entrance into that sea. The north bank consists of rising grounds; the south is fenced with high hills. I think the Danube, at this place, may be compared with the Volga at Astrachan, both for breadth and quantity of water. By what I could observe, all the great rivers, from the Volga to this place, have, for the most part, high lands for their western banks, and low flat lands to the eastward.

The 16th, we passed the north branch of the Danube in a boat, to the next island; but the other branches being fast frozen over, we mounted, and rode and walked by turns, the rest of the way, upon the ice; which was, in many places, very rough and uneven, with great ridges, consisting of pieces of ice driven together; and heaped upon one another, by strong easterly winds, and the rapidity of the current. Some of the ridges of ice were at least seven or eight feet high, which obliged us to walk

walk on foot most part of the way. However, in the evening, we arrived safely at a town called Tultzin, standing on the south bank of the river, four leagues from Ismayl, where we had quarters, and other means of refreshment.

Tultzin is the first town in the ancient kingdom of Thrace, now reduced to a Turkish province, known by the name of Bulgaria. The Bulgarians, who are Christians of the Greek church, live, for the most part, in villages ; the towns, in general, being inhabited by the Turks. This place hath an old abandoned castle, seemingly of European construction ; and, as it stands among hills, on the banks of the river, the situation is very pleasant.

The 17th, we left Tultzin in the morning ; towards noon we arrived at a large town, called Babbadach, standing in a delightful valley, environed by hills. At some distance, from the top of the hills to the eastward, is a most extensive prospect ;

spect ; particularly a full view of the Black Sea.

It is supposed that the Poet Ovid was banished and confined to this place ; which must have been no agreeable situation, to a man who had passed his young days in the court of Augustus, and had entered into all the pleasures and amusements of that court, during the time of its politest and gayest period, in the gallantries of which he was supposed to act no inconsiderable part. This amorous Poet's book, *De Tristibus*, exhibits a melancholy picture of the manner of passing his latter days at this place, so different in climate from the happy temperament of that of Italy.

After changing horses at this place, we set forwards. At night we came to a village called Kaybaly, at a small distance from which we were so bewildered, in a drift of snow, that we lost the road ; and, had it not been that the barking of a dog directed us, we must have lain in the fields all night.

The

The 18th, leaving Kaybaly in deep snow, we proceeded, and came to Danna-Kew, another village; where we passed the night.

The 19th, we travelled through a very fine country, whereon we found very little snow, and came at night to Kabady, where we lodged.

The 20th, we proceeded, and came to a town called Bazar-tzick, and spent the night there. The town is inhabited by Turks, Greeks, and Bulgarians.

The 21st, we came to Provady, a pretty large town, inhabited as the former. We staid there all night.

The 22d, we left Provady; came that evening to Tzengy, where we lodged.

The 23d, we continued our route; halted at a caravansera, four leagues from Tzengy, and after that at a town called Aydoss; where, having changed horses, we proceeded on our journey, and slept that night at Benglyr.

The 24th, we came to Kanara, and lay there. I cannot but take notice of this fine country,

country, adorned with many beautiful woods and coppices, a very rich soil, and excellent pasture ; but a great deal of it lies waste ; and it is but thinly peopled.

The 25th, we came to the town of Kirkglis ; from thence to that of Burgla, where we remained that night.

The 26th, we went on. We lodged that night at Tzorley.

The 27th, we reached the town of Silivry, which stands on the White Sea, or the sea between the Dardanells and the port.

The 28th, we passed through a large town, called Buyk-tzeckmidgy ; from thence the last stage to Constantinople.

I must here take notice, that, at Silivry, I was met by another chevadar, who, instead of conducting me directly to the city, as I expected, turned short to the left hand, out of the high road, carried me through by-paths, over steep and moorish hills, uninhabited, till at last we came to a little village, on the top of the hill called Karamackly,

mackly, where is a neat country-houſe belonging to Mustapha-caſſa Baſha, the chief butcher to the Sultan, a place of great truſt and honour.

I was lodged in the Baſha's house, and met with a friendly reception from his kaya, or ſteward, who furnished me with what neceſſaries I had occaſion for. In the mean time, I waited patiently for the return of a messenger whom they had deſpatched to the Baſha. This place stands very pleasant and airy, within the view of the city, and is a retreat for the Baſha, and his family, in times of the plague

It will be readily imagined, that I did not much like being carried out of the common road. But, without asking queſtions, I followed my conductors.

The 29th, the messenger returned from the city, with orders that I ſhould proceed, which was very welcome news to me. Accordingly, we ſet out about ten of the clock. Towards noon, we arrived at Constantinople. They conducted me directly

directly to the house of Mustapha Basha, who received me with great civility. And, after asking a few questions relating to my journey, he then desired that I would wait till such time as he should acquaint the Viceroy of my arrival. Mustapha Basha did not return till the evening. Upon his return, he sent an officer with me to Sir Everard Fawkener, the British ambassador, to whom I was addressed, and in whose house I lodged during my abode at Constantinople.

I shall say nothing relating to the effects of my commission, farther, than that I punctually conformed to the terms of my instructions.

Here, it may be observed, that, although the Russians under Count Lacy, and under Count Munich, were very successful every campaign, from the commencement of the war in 1734, and made great acquisitions on the Turkish frontier, on that side, by their taking Asoph and Ozakoff, possessing themselves of the Perecop and the Crimea,
and

and carrying their arms, the last campaign, into Moldavia, which was ended by a considerable advantage gained by the Russians at the battle of Chotim ; in consequence of which victory, the Basha of Chotim brought the keys of that important fortress to the General of the Russian army, who sent the Basha, and the principal officers under him, prisoners to St Petersburgh ; yet the Emperor of Germany's arms in Hungary were by no means successful ; the Turks gaining on the Emperor's frontier there, as much as they lost of their own frontiers towards Russia. Elated by their successes in Hungary, during the last campaign, the Ottoman Porte rose in their demands, and insisted on higher terms than Russia thought proper to agree to.

This famous city is so well known, that I need not enter into a minute description, so shall only give a transient view of such remarkable things as occurred to me during my short stay at this place:

VOL. II.

3 U

Con-

Constantinople is situated in forty one and one-half degrees north latitude, twenty-nine degrees east longitude, upon a point of land, on the European shore, in the province of Romania, and is esteemed one of the most delightful situations in the world ; for which reason Constantine the Great chose it for the seat of empire ; by whom it was rebuilt and beautified about the year of our Lord 330.

At a distance, the city makes a very fine appearance, having a great number of gilded spires and domes, or cupolas, which multiply as you approach ; but, when you enter the city, the general irregularity and narrowness of the streets do in no degree correspond with the magnificent appearance it makes at a distance ; which is, indeed, the case of many of the cities and great towns of Europe, seeming to be built at random. I have often thought, that, had a Chinese been consulted, he could have taught both Greeks and Romans how to lay out towns, and that by the simplest rules ;

rules; viz. Let there be space enough, sufficient breadth of street, and the houses on each side built in a straight line; which rules are observed in all the towns I have observed in China, particularly Pekin. This common error, in laying out towns in Europe, must be owing to the remissness of the government of nations; tho' this great inconvenience, in so grand a city as Constantinople, hath no relation to the situation of the place, yet it is thought by many, I think very justly, that, were the streets of this city spacious and regular, it would in some measure prevent the frequent pestilential diseases with which this place is affected, and which prevail here more than in any other place I know; there seldom passing a year without its making a dreadful havock among the populace.

This mortal distemper's being almost always, more or less, in this city, may in part be attributed to a defect in Turkish policy, which suffers all ships to enter the port,

port, without requiring bills of health, at any time; even the ships from infected places are admitted. I do not know but that the belief of predestination, prevailing so universally among the Turks, with whom it is a fundamental article of their creed, may likewise contribute to the continuance of the devastations made, by this terrible disease, among the human species.

A very great nuisance, attending this place, is its being pestered with a great number of nasty dogs which belong to nobody; they kennel in every corner of the streets; it is unlawful to kill them; and they are generally fed, which is looked upon, by many of the Turks, as an act of charity.

It is without dispute a populous city; but far short of the numbers reported by common fame, which seldom keeps within bounds in things of this nature. It is true that many strangers resort hither daily, both from Europe and Asia, and many of them remain here; but then it must be

con-

considered how many are carried off annually by the pestilence and other diseases. I do not think the whole number exceeds four hundred thousand souls. In walking the streets, you often meet with people, who, to avoid conversing with you, walk on the other side of the street, for fear of catching the distemper ; and most people endeavour to get to windward of each other ; which, with many other inconveniences, renders the place not very agreeable to strangers.

From Pera, a district of Constantinople inhabited by Europeans, and by the foreign ministers residing at the Porte, there is a fine prospect of the city, and of the Grand Seignor's seraglio ; which last stands on an eminence, with sloping gardens, down to the edge of the canal, planted with rows of cypresses, and other ever-greens. It hath the appearance of a most delightful place but, though the walks are well shaded, it is not thought good manners, or even safe, to look at them with a spy-glass.

Oppo-

Opposite to the seraglio, on the Asian shore, stands the ancient city of Chrysopolis, or the Golden City, now called Skutary, a pretty little place.

Along the shore of the Propontis, towards the south-west, runs a ridge of very high mountains, called Olympus, which are covered with snow summer and winter. The mountain of that name, mentioned by the Poets, stands in Greece.

February the 3d, there was a great fall of snow, followed by a strong frost, which continued for the space of fourteen days. I thought myself happy in escaping it ; but this weather is very acceptable to the people here, as it tends to stop the contagious distemper.

I shall now take a view of some of the most remarkable structures in and about this ancient city, which are commonly shown to travellers. Indeed there are but few remains of antiquity to be seen at present ; for the Turks, according to their principles, deface and ruin every thing that hath

hath an air of idolatry, as they call it, whether Pagan or Christian. What Christian churches they have spared are converted into mosques.

March 2d, the weather being fine, I made a party with some friends to ride out and see the aqueducts, which are curious fabrics erected in order to supply the city with fresh water. They are said to be built by the Emperor Valens. They are now kept in repair by the Grand Seignor. They stand at unequal distances, from four to seven or more miles to the northward of the city, according to the respective supplies of water from springs and brooks.

The long aqueduct is about seven hundred yards in length, and near thirty in height ; it consists of two stories or ranges of arches, one above the other, having about fifty arches in a range, all of hewn stone, neatly wrought.

The crooked aqueduct, so called from its form of zig-zag, runs in this figure VVVV; the intent of which is to divert and lessen the

the force of the current, and hath a triple range of beautiful arches.

At some distance from this stands the high aqueduct, the most magnificent of all, being near three hundred yards in length, about forty in height, having four stately arches, with the same number over them. Besides, there are several others of lesser note, which I need not mention. They are all built to convey the water, over low vallies and hollows, to the city,

At night we came to Belgrade, a pleasant village, inhabited by Greeks, where most of the foreign ministers have their country-houses, to which they retire in time of the plague.

The next day we remained at this village, and walked through the woods, to a neighbouring hill, to the eastward, from whence there is a full view of the Black Sea. These woods are of fine oak, beech, and other timber, fit for the construction of a royal navy. They are well furnished with wild-fowl, and various sorts of other game.

The

The 4th, we left Belgrade, when, riding to the southward, through pleasant woods and fields, we came about noon to a large village, called Buyuck-terey, standing on the north shore of the canal, or Thracian Bosphorus. This canal is natural, bursting out from the Black Sea, between two high mountains, and runs, in a strong current, about sixteen English miles, to the city, where it discharges itself into the Propontis. The depth is from ten to fifteen fathoms ; the breadth from about one mile to half a mile ; very well stored with most sorts of sea-fish, particularly oysters, of a small kind, but very delicious. The land, on both sides, is very high, with many pleasant villages, along the shore. At the mouth of the canal, where it begins from the Black Sea, the Turks have built two forts to defend the passage, one on the shore of Asia, the other on that of Europe ; they may well serve to prevent sudden incursions, but of little use against a strong

squadron of men of war, and an easterly wind.

I was informed that, in the reign of Sultan Amurath, a strong party of cosacks came, in open boats, before these castles were built, or when they were neglected, entered the canal, and put all the city in great consternation. After they had plundered many villages, they returned again to their own country, with little or no loss.

From the Buyuck-terey we sent our horses home, and returned to the city by water. Some days after this I went to see the Sultan, as he came from his devotions at the mosque called Jeney-Jamey. He was on horseback, attended by a small troop of spahis on horseback, and some janizaries on foot. Mahmuth hath a good aspect, and bears the character of being of a humane peaceable disposition. This Prince succeeded Achmet, who was deposed, about seven years before, by one named Ali-Patrone, or Kallyl, a janizary, and his associates, all people of low degree, the next in

in command to Ali-Patrone, or Kallyll, as he is commonly called, was Mase-luch, a dealer in melons and other fruits ; the third was Emy-Aly. These three chiefs governed the Turkish empire near a month. After they had placed Mahmuth on the throne, they deposed the Grand Visier, and disposed of all offices, civil and military, at pleasure. Ali-Patrone, in the mean time, was very sober, never changing his habit, came every morning to the janizaries hall, where he sat as sovereign judge, and gave sentence on all causes that were brought before him, without delay ; was very charitable to the poor, and rectified many abuses in the state. That magnificent Visier, Ibrahim-Basha, who had introduced printing, fell a sacrifice to the rebels.

One action of the Kallyll's I cannot omit relating, as it evinces, that his high station did not produce forgetfulness of his old friends. There was one Janaky, a Greek, a butcher by trade, who had formerly lent Ali-Patrone half a dollar. He sent for this
butcher,

butcher, and made him Hospodar or Prince of Moldavia. Poor Janaky would willingly have been excused from accepting so high an office ; but his patron insisted on his taking it.

However, these mighty chiefs being intoxicated with power, began to intoxicate themselves with wine also ; and they were at length caught in a snare, laid for them by Sultan Geray, Chan of the Crim Tatars, who had been sent for, by some of the grandees, for that end. Sultan Geray succeeded so well, that the chiefs were cut off, the rest dispersed, and the government re-established on the same footing as heretofore, with very little bloodshed ; the particulars of which being, in general, well known, I say no more of that affair.

The next place I was carried to was the mint, where I saw them coining money of different sorts. It stands in the outer court of the seraglio.

From thence I went to the famous church of Sancta Sophia, now converted into

into a mosque. There being already many descriptions extant of this ancient fabric, I shall only observe, that it was rebuilt and adorned by the Emperor Justinian, about the year of our Lord 500. It is highly esteemed by architects, for the flatness of the dome, or cupola, which, it is said, the moderns cannot imitate.

In time of war, Christians are not permitted to enter the mosque. Nevertheless, we were conducted up a pair of back-stairs to the gallery, from whence we had a full view of the whole. The floor is laid with clean mats and carpets, having no seat, only one pulpit for the Mullah. The gallery is laid with marble, supported by about one hundred marble pillars, of various colours and sizes, most of them, at least, between five and six feet diameter. The whole of the inside hath a noble and grand appearance. At the entry into the gallery, is an old vestry, with the door closed up, of which a Greek, of my acquaintance, told me the following short story, viz. A certain

certain Mullah being in the vestry, saw, or fancied that he saw, a man on horseback, with a sword in his hand, who bid him begone out of that holy place, &c. This, like other tales of the same nature, was not long a secret, and was interpreted to have been no other than Constantine the Great. However fabulous the story appears, the door of the vestry hath been condemned since that time.

From Sancta Sophia I was conducted to the Hippodrome, where the Greeks used formerly to train their horses to the meñage, now called the Att-Maydan, and is still applied to the same use by the Turks. It is a spacious oblong square, having a pretty marble obelisk in the middle. On one side of it is a pillar of brass, with serpents twining round it; this is somewhat defaced, and is about ten feet high.

In the great street, at some distance from the Hippodrome, stands another venerable monument of antiquity; a large and tall pillar, called the Burnt-pillar, because it

bath

hath greatly suffered by fire in the neighbourhood, which hath cracked it in divers places ; this is a misfortune common to narrow streets, and not to be remedied without a well regulated police. This pillar is of porphyry, about twenty yards high.

We went thence to see the grand reservoir, built with intent of supplying the city with water in case of a siege. This must have cost an immense sum of money ; for it is all of it under ground ; above it are streets and houses. It is not far from the Hippodrome. Towards the water-side, the covering of it is supported by a great number of arches, and many hundreds of stone-pillars, of which not a few are fallen down, and the whole of it is going a-pace to decay. There was no water in it.

There is another ancient fabric, known by the name of Edikuly, or seven towers, standing on an eminence to the westward ; which is now a common prison. Near the middle of the city stands a small tower, called

called Belisarius ; whether or not it was the house of that great and unfortunate General, I could not learn.

Opposite to the seraglio, near the middle of the canal, stands a small round tower, upon the summit of a small rock, called Leander's Tower. This, with the foregoing, are the few remains of antiquity commonly shown to strangers.

The haven, which divides the city from that district of it called Pera, for its extent and depth of water, may probably equal, perhaps surpass, the best in the known world, well fenced on all sides by rising grounds. Near the bottom of the haven is a spacious and most convenient yard for building ships and galleys, with suitable magazines and ware-houses for keeping the cordage, guns, ammunition, and for every material requisite for building and fitting men of war and galleys for the sea.

Adjoining is a place called the bagnio, appropriated to the lodging and accommodating galley-slaves ; where, it may be
sup-

supposed they do not pass their time very agreeably.

My next walk was to see the dervises at worship ; they are a religious order of the Mahometans, who have a mosque in Pera, built in a circular form, with a pulpit for the Mullah, and a gallery built in a niche, made in the circle, for the music. The sermon being ended, the musicians began on various instruments, which were like the European flutes and hautboys, upon which five of the dervises stood up, and danced round the mosque, in a frantic manner, turning themselves round, as they advanced, with so quick a motion, that their faces were hardly distinguishable from other parts of their heads. They followed each other at certain distances ; but an old man of fourscore years outdid all the rest in quickness of turning round. Yet, when he left off, he did not seem to be at all discomposed by the violence of the motion. This extravagant sect make vows of poverty and chastity, travel over all the east,

VOL. II. 3 Y where

where the religion of Mahomet prevails, and are held in great esteem by the devout of that profession.

The 9th of March, the army intended for Hungary, under the command of Eggeny-Mahomet-Basha, the Grand Visier, began to file off to the camp assigned for them, about three miles to the northward of the city. The procession continued four days ; and, as usual, when the Sultan himself, or the Grand Visier, take the field in person, the troops are attended by all the different trades and artisans to the place of encampment, each trade having the proper dress and badges of their respective profession, with banners, music, &c.

The first day the janizaries marched, with their Aga, or chief commander, at their head, followed by a numerous multitude of artisans. The first in procession was a plough drawn by painted oxen, with gilded horns. It would be tedious to mention the rest particularly ; I shall only observe, that some of this ragamuffian crew made

made frightful figures, being naked to the waste, with sabres run through the fleshy part of their arms, and besmeared with blood—A shocking spectacle !

The second day's procession was the pioniers and miners, with their different tools and utensils.

The third day, the cannoniers marched.

The fourth day, the Visier marched out, attended by the general officers of the army, a great many Spahis and Janizaries, and all the different trades of the town ; among which rabble, were many such banditti as above described, naked for the most part of the body, all bloody. The Grand Mufti was in the same coach with the Grand Visier, and had the Alcoran carried by a Mullah, who sat likewise in the same coach, opposite to the Mufti ; which was preceded by a number of singers, in their proper habits, singing as they went along. Before the coach was carried the standard of Mahomet, which is a horse's tail, said to be brought from heaven by the Angel Gabriel

briel to Mahomet, and is held in great veneration, seldom appearing but on great solemnities ; after which it is carried back to the seraglio, where it remains till the next occasion.

When war is declared against any prince or state, the horse-tail is set up at the gate of the seraglio, called Alla-Capy, or the Port of God, from whence the Grand Seignor dates all his despatches ; and, on that account, the court of the Grand Seignor is commonly called the Ottoman Porte, and the Sublime Porte. But when the Sultan is in the field, at the head of his army, he dates all his letters and orders from his stirrup. All generals who have three horse-tails, are called Vifier ; but the Grand Vifier, who is always prime minister, governs and directs all affairs relating to the state, both foreign and domestic : Next to him in power is the Kaymacan, who is his lieutenant ; after him Nisangy Basha, keeper of the seals ; then Kap-adgee Basha, chief porter ; Kiflar-agassy, the chief eunuch.

eunuch. These are the principal great officers at court. It happens often, that the Kislar-agassy hath more to say than all the rest put together ; for although the ladies live very retired, yet they are not so ignorant as is generally imagined. And, if I am not misinformed, matters of the greatest consequence are canvassed, and often settled in the seraglio, before they are presented to the ministry. One thing is certain, that whoever wants a favour at court needs no better recommendation than a friend among the ladies.

Soon after my arrival, I had an invitation from the famous Count Bonneval, who then was ill of the gout ; but, in time of war, it was not thought fit that I should visit that gentleman.

March 15th, Sir Everard Fawkener went to the camp to take leave of the Grand Visier, as is usual for all the foreign ministers to do, on the like occasions. We dismounted at some distance from the tent of this great man, were conducted by an offi-

cer

cer to a magnificent tent, near to that of the Visier, and entertained with coffee, &c. for about a quarter of an hour ; after which the ambassador, accompanied by the gentlemen of his retinue, went to the Visier's tent, where a stool was prepared for his Excellency. The gentlemen stood during the time the ambassador remained. The Visier sat, cross-legged, on a sopha raised about half a foot from the floor, which was all laid with rich carpets. Very near him stood a frame, on which were hung some muskets, sabres, &c. of very curious workmanship, ornamented richly with gold, silver, and stones of value, as emeralds, rubies, &c. The Turkish camps are, in general, very regular and clean.

The short ceremony being over, we returned again to the city. After some days the Grand Visier marched to Adrianople, in his way to Hungary.

Being about to leave this city, I shall detain the reader with no more particulars than the following short observations.

In

In Turkey there are few families who have any distinguishing titles or honours appertaining to them which descend to their children. All titles of honour, and places of power and profit in the Sultan's dominions, depend on personal merit, or the Sultan's favour, which dies with the possessor. The only two families who have a just claim to nobility, are those of Dgiggal-Oglu and Kuperly, who, for signal services done to the empire, have peculiar privileges ; one in particular, that the Sultan, as it is said, cannot condemn them to death. It seems that, on a very critical conjuncture, when affairs were in great disorder, the Sultan died, Kupetly kept it a secret for six weeks ; in which time, by his prudent conduct, the government was established on a proper footing. Besides these, there are descendants of their prophet Mahomet's family, of which there are great numbers, who are distinguished by wearing green, and enjoy some privileges.

Having

Having nothing more to do at Constantinople, I am now about to return to St Petersburgh. As I had a commission from Sir Everard Fawkener for the Grand Vizier, who was then at Adrianople, I took that road.

April 8th, after taking leave of my friends, I set out from Constantinople, accompanied by a tzaush, or messenger, a janizary, and my own servant.

The 13th, in the morning, I came to the city of Adrianople, where I lodged, at the house of Mr Damiral, a Greek gentleman, who is agent at this place for our ambassador, where I found a friendly reception.

The city of Adrianople is about forty leagues north-west from Constantinople, in a pleasant country, inhabited by Turks, Greeks, and some Jews. The Capuchins have also a convent here. The town is pretty large, and is remarkable for having a very noble grand mosque, with very high minarets, of excellent workmanship. The architect was a Greek, of whom it is reported,

ported, that the Grand Seignor, being amazed at the extraordinary contrivance and execution which the architect exhibited in those buildings, thought that nothing of mechanism was out of his reach, and ordered him to make himself wings, and to fly off from the top of one of the minorets, which the poor builder was forced to attempt. After flying a considerable distance, he fell among some tombs, and broke his neck. I do not vouch for the truth of the story ; but I was shown the tombs in the neighbourhood, among which it is said that he fell.

The 14th, I had a visit from Monsieur Peisonell, the French agent, and some of the Capuchin Fathers.

The 15th, I went to return the visit at the convent. In coming through the market-place, in the way to my lodgings, I met with a very disagreeable spectacle ; which was two men, lying stark naked, without their heads, which had been just before cut off. They were said to have been spies.

After discharging my commission to the Grand Visier, which I effected through Mr Damiral, and obtaining an order for post-horses, I left Adrianople the 17th, and proceeded on my journey to the northward; in which I need not be particular, having mentioned most of the places in the former part of this relation. I took the nearest way for Yaffy in Moldavia.

The 26th, we passed the Danube in a boat, at a place called Kalafs, a few leagues above Ismayl.

The 29th, we arrived at the city of Yaffy. The next day I waited on the prince, who received me in a most friendly manner. He gave orders for horses, and two of his guards, to conduct me to the frontiers of Poland. He likewise sent an officer to accompany me as far as Nemiroff. I then discharged my tzaush and janizary, who returned back to Constantinople.

May 1st, I left Yaffy, and came the next day to Soroka.

The

The 3d, I left Soroka, passed the Dniefter, and came to Tamas-Poly, where I lodged.

The 5th, I got to Nemiroff, and at this place delivered all my despatches for Europe to General Russotsky, to be forwarded according to address.

The 10th, I arrived at Kioff, and set out again the same day.

On the 17th of May I arrived at St Peterburgh.

It is to be noted, all my dates are old style.

I shall subjoin a list of all the stages and distances from St Peterburgh to Constantinople. As I have, in a former journey, particularized the stages to Mosco, I need not repeat them here.

From

	Versts.
From St Petersburgh to the city of Mosco, - - -	734
From Mosco towards Kioff,	
To Sela Packra	30
The village of Tzeniskoy	35
Lykof-Vrague	40
Dobrichach	35
Town of Caluga	40
town of Lykvyn	30
town of Belof	40
town of Bolshof	40
Selo Glotovo	35
town of Kartzof	35
Selo Samova	30
Selo Tzainaka	30
Village of Lieubush	30
Town of Seyefski	30
Tolsto Dubovo	40
Town of Gluchovo	30
town of Korolevitz	39
town of Batturin	44
Carried over	<hr/> 1367

Versts.

	Brought over	1367
From	Borzna	33
To	Neshina	48
	Nosofka	28
	Koffelitz	38
	Semipologue	25
	Brovary	29
	City of Kioff	18
		—
	From St Petersburgh to Kioff	1586

The verst in Russia consists of 1166 $\frac{2}{3}$ English yards; so that the distance from St Petersburgh to Kioff, being 1586 versts, is 1051 $\frac{3}{5}$ English miles.

From Kioff to Soroka.

Polish miles.

From Kioff

To	Vassilkoff	5
	Belozyrkoff	6
	Shamarayofka	2
	Squeer	1
		—
	Carried over	14

550 A JOURNEY TO 1738.

	Polish miles.	
From	Brought over	14
To	Samgorod	1
	Golochuaſt	1
	Pogrebisha	2
	Spitzinitz	2
	Otzeredno	1
	Lipovitz	1
	Vytofsky	2
	Kavalefka	1
	Nemiroff	1
	Petzery	2
	Spykoff	2
	Lefkovitz	1
	Tamaz-Poly	3
	Kleynbofka	2
	Tzikanofka on the Dnieſter, on the bank opposite is Soroka	3

39

Computing $6\frac{1}{2}$ English miles to a Polish mile, the distance from Kioff to Soroka will be $253\frac{1}{2}$ English miles.

From

1738. CONSTANTINOPLE. 551

From Soroka the frontier, to Yaffy the capital of Moldavia, reckoning the Turkish sahat, or hour, to be three English miles.

English miles.

From Soroka

To		
	Kaynar	12
	Hetsh	12
	Meygura	24
	River Pruth	12
	City of Yaffy	12

From Soroka to Yaffy 72

From Yaffy to Bender.

English miles.

From Yaffy

To		
	Rosinar	12
	Voltzinitz	15
	Koshushna	24
	Kishanoff	6
	Bender	24

From Yaffy to Bender 81

From

From Bender to the Danube, along the desert of Budjack.

English miles.

From Bender

To	Kaushan	12
	Kongley	24
	Tartarken	30
	Town of Ismayl	21

From Bender to Ismayl 87

From Ismayl to Constantinople.

English miles.

From Ismayl, cross the Danube,

To	Tultzin	12
	Babbadach	18
	Kaybaly	18
	Kodjalo	6
	Istere	6
	Daana-Kew	6
	Kara-Su	12
	Kabady	12

Carried over 90

English miles.

	Brought over	90
From	Aly-Beg-Kiew	12
To	Bazartzick	24
	Usheny	6
	Provady	24
	Yeny Kiew	9
	Tzenggy	6
	A Caravansera	12
	Aydos	12
	Benglyr	9
	Kara-Bunar	15
	Faky	12
	Kangry	12
	Kirgliss	24
	Bourgas	24
	Tzorby	30
	Silivry	24
	Buyuck Tzeckmiday	18
	Constantinople	18
<hr/>		
From Ismayl to Constanti-		
nople		381

The whole distance from St Petersburgh to Constantinople, I take to be about 1925 English measured miles, of 1760 yards each mile.

The several distances as follow, viz.

From St Petersburgh to Kioff 1051 measured miles.

From Kioff to Soroka, the frontier of Moldavia, 253 computed miles.

From Soroka to Yassy 72 Ditto.

From Yassy to Bender 81 ditto.

From Bender to Ismayl 87 ditto.

From Ismayl to Constantinople 311 ditto.

1925

Thus I have finished my fourth eastern journey, which, in all probability, will be my last to that quarter of the globe. I would not advise any man to undertake this last, at such a season of the year as I did, or in time of war.

F I N I S.